WORD POWER MADE EASY

The Complete Handbook for Building a Superior Vocabulary

The Most Effective Vocabulary Builder in the English Language

The simple, step-by-step method that will increase your knowledge and mastery of English

NORMAN LEWIS
Norman Lewis

WORD POWER MADE EASY

The Complete Handbook for Building a Superior Vocabulary

Expanded and Completely Revised

Anchor Books
A Division of Random House LLC
New York
TO:

My family and friends, who accepted, without apparent resentment and with barely audible complaint, my complete self-isolation during the many months in which I totally and shamefully neglected them while working on the revision of this book.

Especially: Mary; Margie Baldinger and the kids; Debbie and Allen Hubbert; Milton Lewis; Karen and Bob Kopfstein; Leonard Vogel, one of America’s great painters, and Shirley; gourmet cooks David and Janice Potts; Seymour and Nan Prog; Ruth and Leo; Dave and Jan Hopkins; Carol and Marvin Colter; Bob Finnerty, my chess opponent, who says that winning is all that counts; Doris Garcia; Eleanor and Robert Poitou; Mary El and Dick Gayman—

Walter Garcia, Len Grandy, Don Jenkins; Sally Landsburg; Ted and Margaret Snyder; Jean Bryan; Rhoda and Ralph Duenewald; George and Phyllis Juric; Bob and Monica Myers, Tony and Kathy Garcia, Jean Kachaturian; Margie Lopez and Jo Watson—

Myrtle and Ace, Donny and Estelle, Helen and Ben, Judy and Bob, Doris and Muriel, Danny and Mary; in memoriam, Max and Frances—

Larry Scher, Chuck Nichamin, Sue Sullivan, Rosemary and Debbie Greenman, Alice Hessing, Dave and Lynn Bisset, Danny Hernandez, John Arcadi and Peggy Arcadi, Norm Ashley, Aaron Breitbart—

Lorin and Gloria Warner, Marty and Ros Chodos, Mahlon and Gwen Woirhaye, Leon and Kay East, Marijane and Paul Paulsen, Helen and Russ Hurford, Elior and Sally Kinarthy—

Carolyn Russell, Rod Sciborski, Vera Laushkin, John Hahn, Liz Johnson, Leonora Davila, Jim Hawley, Jerry Lenington, Jay Loughran, Susan Obler, Marilyn Houseman, Rita Scott, Chris Hamilton, Joan Nay, Mary Lewis, Virginia Sandoval, Hazel Haas—

The staff and all my students at Rio Hondo College—

My editor at Doubleday, Jean Anne Vincent, who so patiently and cheerfully goaded, prodded, pushed, wheedled, and cajoled me into finishing on time.

Also: I wish to thank Karen Kopfstein and Peggy Chulack for their promptness and care in typing the manuscript.

Whittier, California
January 1978
How to Use This Book for Maximum Benefit

Why this is not a book to be read; how to learn to pronounce the new words correctly; how the etymological approach works better than any other method for learning words quickly and permanently; how to master nouns, verbs, adjectives, and adverbs in five to ten minutes; how to use the psychological principles of learning to sharpen your verbal skills.

PART ONE
GETTING OFF TO A GOOD START

1. How to Test Your Present Vocabulary

How vocabulary growth of the average adult compares with that of children; a simple test to show you whether your vocabulary is below average, average, above average, excellent, or superior in range, verbal speed, and responsiveness; important evidence of the close relationship between vocabulary and success.

2. How to Start Building Your Vocabulary

How building your vocabulary will enrich your thinking, increase your self-assurance in speaking and writing, and give you a better understanding of the world and of yourself; why it is necessary to recapture the “powerful urge to learn”; why your age makes little difference; how this book is designed to build a college-size vocabulary in two to three months.

3. How to Talk About Personality Types (Sessions 1–3)

Words that describe all kinds and sorts of people, including terms for self-interest, reactions to the world, attitudes to others, skill and awkwardness, marital states, hatred of man, of woman, and of marriage. How one session of pleasant work can add more words to your vocabulary than the average adult learns in an entire year; why it is necessary to develop a comfortable time schedule and then stick to it.

4. How to Talk About Doctors (Sessions 4–6)
Words that relate to medical specialists and specialties. Terms for experts in disorders of the female organs; childhood diseases; skin ailments; skeletal deformities; heart ailments; disorders of the nerves, mind, and personality. How self-discipline and persistence will ultimately lead to complete mastery over words.

5. How to Talk About Various Practitioners (Sessions 7–10)

Words that describe a variety of professions, including those dealing with the human mind; teeth; vision; feet; handwriting; aging; etc. How you are becoming more and more conscious of the new words you meet in your reading.

6. How to Talk About Science and Scientists (Sessions 11–13)

Words that describe students of human development, of the heavens, of the earth, of plant and animal life, of insect forms, of words and language, of social organization. Books on psychology that will add immeasurably both to your store of new words and ideas, and also to your understanding of yourself and of other people.

7. How to Talk About Liars and Lying (Sessions 14–17)

Words that accurately label different types of liars and lying. Terms that relate to fame, artistry, reform, heredity, time, place, suffering, etc. Four lasting benefits you have begun to acquire from your work in vocabulary building.

8. How to Check Your Progress: Comprehensive Test I (Session 18)

A 120-item test of your learning in Part I.

PART TWO
GAINING INCREASED MOMENTUM

9. How to Talk About Actions (Sessions 19–23)

Verbs that accurately describe important human activities. Excursions into expressive terms for good and evil, doing, saying, wishing, and pleasing. Further proof that you can learn, in a few weeks or less, more new words than the average adult learns in an entire year.

10. How to Talk About Various Speech Habits (Sessions 24–27)

Words that explore in depth all degrees and kinds of talk and silence. More books that will increase your alertness to new ideas and new words.

11. How to Insult Your Enemies (Sessions 28–31)

Terms for describing a disciplinarian, toady, dabbler, provocative woman, flag-
waver, possessor of a one-track mind, freethinker, sufferer from imaginary ailments, etc. Excursions into words relating to father and mother, murder of all sorts, sexual desires, and various manias and phobias. Magazines that will help you build your vocabulary.

12. How to Flatter Your Friends (Sessions 32–37)

Terms for describing friendliness, energy, honesty, mental keenness, bravery, charm, sophistication, etc. Excursions into expressive words that refer to ways of eating and drinking, believing and disbelieving, looking and seeing, facing the present, past, and future, and living in the city and country. How the new words you are learning have begun to influence your thinking.

13. How to Check Your Progress: Comprehensive Test II (Session 38)

A 120-item test of your achievement in Part II.

PART THREE
FINISHING WITH A FEELING OF COMPLETE SUCCESS

14. How to Talk About Common Phenomena and Occurrences (Sessions 39–41)

Words for poverty and wealth, direct and indirect emotions, not calling a spade a spade, banter and other light talk, animallike contentment, homesickness, meat-eating, and different kinds of secrecy. Excursions into terms expressive of goodness, of hackneyed phraseology, of human similarity to various animals, of kinds of sound, etc. How to react to the new words you meet in your reading.

15. How to Talk About What Goes On (Sessions 42–44)

Verbs that show exhaustion, criticism, self-sacrifice, repetition, mental stagnation, pretense, hinting, soothing, sympathizing, indecision, etc. How you can increase your vocabulary by picking your friends’ brains.

16. How to Talk About a Variety of Personal Characteristics (Sessions 45–46)

Adjectives that describe insincere humility, dissatisfaction, snobbery, courtesy to women, financial embarrassment, sadness, etc. How increasing your vocabulary has begun to change the intellectual climate of your life.

17. How to Check Your Progress: Comprehensive Test III (Session 47)

A 120-item test of your achievement in Part III.

18. How to Check Your Standing as an Amateur Etymologist
19. How to Keep Building Your Vocabulary

The five simple, but vital, steps to take so that you can keep your vocabulary ever developing, ever increasing. How your vocabulary will continue to grow only if you remain on the search for new ideas. The best means for making this search successful.

Appendix: Some Esoteric Phobias

Other Books by This Author
1. Test Your Grammar
   A thirty-sentence test of your ability to use words correctly. Is your English average, above average, or nearly perfect?

2. Random Notes on Modern Usage
   Grammatical usage is becoming more liberal every day—is your speech neither affected nor illiterate? Simple rules for fifteen important expressions.

3. How Grammar Changes
   Grammar follows the speech habits of educated people—how does your grammar measure up in your use of nine common expressions?

4. How to Avoid Being a Purist
   There is no reason for being overprecise in your speech—but do you also avoid barbarisms and illiterate expressions?

5. How to Speak Naturally
   Nine more expressions of which you must be careful.

6. Do You Always Use the Proper Word?
   A twenty-five sentence check on your increasing linguistic ability.

7. Some Interesting Derivations
   How words come from the names of people and places.

8. How to Spell a Word
   You can eliminate all your spelling difficulties—provided you know the tricks.

9. Take This Spelling Test
   Proof that you are becoming a better speller.

10. Another Check on Your Spelling
    Further tests to nail home the correct spellings of common but difficult words.
HOW TO USE THIS BOOK FOR MAXIMUM BENEFIT

1. this is not a reading book...

   *Don’t read this book!*
   Instead, work with it. **Talk aloud** to it, **talk back** to it—use your voice, not just your eyes and mind.

   **Learning, real learning, goes on only through active participation.**
   When a new word occurs in a chapter, **say it aloud!** (The phonetic respelling will help you pronounce it correctly.)

   When you do the matching exercises, keep track of your responses. (Check the key that immediately follows each exercise.)
   When you do the “Yes-No,” “True-False,” or “Same-Opposite” exercises, keep track of your responses, then check with the key when you have completed the whole exercise.
   When you are asked to fill in words that fit definitions, **write your answers on a piece of paper;** then check the key both to see if you have responded with the right word and also to make sure your spelling is correct.
   When you do the **Review of Etymology** exercises, make sure to fill in the English word containing the prefix, root, or suffix required—use a chapter word, or any other word that comes to mind. (Coin words if you like!)
   Pay special attention to the **Chapter Reviews.** Are the words still fresh in your mind? Do you remember the meaning of each root studied in the previous sessions? In these Reviews, you are not only testing your learning but also tightening up any areas in which you discover lacks, weaknesses, or lapses of memory.

2. master the pronunciation system!

   Saying words **aloud**, and saying them **right**, is half the battle in feeling comfortable and assured with all the new words you are going to learn. Every word taught is respelled to show its pronunciation, so pay close attention to how the phonetic symbols work.

   (a) **First, master the “schwa”!**
   Almost every English word of two or more syllables contains one or several syllables in which the vowel sound is said very quickly. For example:
   “**Linda** spoke to her **mother** about a **different idea** she had.”
   →Read the previous sentence aloud at normal conversational speed.
   Read it again. Listen to how the -a of **Linda**; the -er of **mother**; the a- of **about**; the -er and -ent of **different**; and the -a of **idea** sound.
   Very quick—very short! Right?
   Phonetically respelled, these words are represented as:

   1. **Linda**  LIN′-də
The symbol “ə,” called a schwa, represents the quick, short vowel sound in the five words above.

Now look back at the sentence preceded by an arrow. The italicized words are rewritten as:

1. previous PREE′-vee-əs
2. sentence SEN′-təns
3. aloud ə-LOWD′
4. normal NAWR′-məl
5. conversational kon′-vər-SAY′-shən-əl

You will find ə in almost all words that are phonetically respelled throughout this book. Say the five italicized words aloud and make sure you understand how the schwa (ə) sounds.

(b) Next, understand accent.

Look at word (5) above: conversational: kon′-vər-SAY′-shən-əl. Note that there are two accent marks, one on kon′, another on SAY′. Note also that kon′ is in lower-case letters, SAY′ in capitals. Both syllables are stressed, but the one in capitals (SAY′) sounds stronger (or louder) than the one in lower case (kon′). Say conversational aloud, noting the difference.

Say these three words, taken from Chapter 3, aloud, noticing the variation in stress between the lower-case and the capitalized syllables:

1. egomaniacal ee′-gō-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl
2. altercation awl′-tər-KAY′-shən
3. anthropological an′-thrə-pə-LOJ′-ə-kəl

(c) Be careful of the letter “S” (or “s”) in phonetic respellings. S (or s) is always hissed, as in see, some, such. After an -n, you will be tempted to buzz (or “voice”) the -s, because final -ns is usually pronounced -nz, as in wins, tons, owns, etc. (Say these three words aloud—hear the z at the end?) Resist the temptation! S (or s) is always hissed in phonetic respellings!

Say these words aloud:

1. ambivalence am-BIV′-ə-ləns
2. affluence AF′-lə-əns
3. opulence OP′-yə-ləns
(d) The symbol i or ĩ is pronounced eye, to rhyme with high, sigh, my, etc., no matter where you find it. For example:

1. fights
2. spy
3. malign
4. civilize

[I or i (without the top bar) is pronounced as in it, sit, pitch.]

(e) All consonants have their normal sounds.
Except for G (or g), which is always pronounced as in give, girl, get, go.

1. agree
2. pagan
3. again

(f) The vowel sounds are as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SYMBOL</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A, a</td>
<td>cat (KAT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E, e</td>
<td>wet (WET)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I, i</td>
<td>sit (SIT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O, o</td>
<td>knot (NOT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U, u</td>
<td>nut (NUT)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AH, ah</td>
<td>martenet (mahr′-tə-NET′)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AW, aw</td>
<td>for (FAWR); incorrigible (in-KAWR′-ə-jə-bəl)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AY, ay</td>
<td>ate (AYT); magnate (MAG′-nayt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE, ee</td>
<td>equal (EE′-kwəl); clandestinely (klan-DES′-tən-lee)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ō, ō</td>
<td>toe (TŌ); concerto (kən-CHUR′-tō)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ō, ō</td>
<td>book (BOOK); prurient (PRəR′-ee-ənt)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ō, Ō</td>
<td>doom (DOOM); blue (BLÔ or BLØ)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OW, ow</td>
<td>about (ə-BOWT′)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OY, oy</td>
<td>soil (SOYL)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. a word (or words) on western and eastern pronunciation

In the New York City area, and in parts of New Jersey and other eastern states, the syllables -ar, -er, -or, -off, and -aw are pronounced somewhat differently from the way they are said in the Midwest and in the West.

In New York City, for example, the words below are generally pronounced as follows:

- orange: AHR´-ənj
- talk: TAWK
- coffee: KAW´-fee
- sorority: sə-RAHR´-ə-tee
- incorrigible: in-KAHR´-ə-jə-bəl
- disparage: dis-PAR´-əj (A as in HAT)
- merry: MER´-ee (E as in WET)
- marry: MAR´-ee (A as in HAT)
- astronaut: AS´-trə-nawt´
- Harry: HAR´-ee (A as in HAT)

In the Midwest and West, on the other hand, the same words are usually said approximately as follows:

- orange: AWR´-ənj
- talk: TOK
- coffee: KOF´-ee
- sorority: sə-RAWR´-ə-tee
- incorrigible: in-KAWR´-ə-jə-bəl
- disparage: dis-PAIR´-əj
- merry: MAIR´-ee
- marry: MAIR´-ee
- astronaut: AS´-trə-not´
- Harry: HAIR´-ee
Nothing so radical here that a person brought up in Brooklyn or the Bronx cannot understand a native of Los Angeles or San Francisco—it’s just that each one thinks the other has an accent!

In California, for example, *Mary, merry, and marry* sound almost exactly alike—in New York, they are usually heard as quite different words.

(So, to be sexist for a moment, if the men at a party in Manhattan say, “Let’s all make merry!”, Mary doesn’t feel that she is about to be seduced by the males!)

In the phonetic respellings throughout the book, the western pronunciations of words with the syllables remarked on above are used. This is done largely because I myself have lived in the Los Angeles area for some fourteen years, and have had to retrain my pronunciation (having come from New York City, where I was born, and lived all my life until 1964) so that my friends and students would stop making fun of the way I speak.

*Neither form of pronunciation is any better nor any more euphonious than the other.* Throughout the country, pronunciation varies not only from region to region or state to state, but often from city to city! The changes are slight and subtle, but they do exist, and an expert can easily pinpoint the geographical source of a person’s language patterns almost down to a few square miles in area.

If you are an Easterner, you will have no difficulty translating the pronunciations of words like *sorority, incorrigible, disparage,* and *astronaut* (all words discussed in later chapters) into your own comfortable language patterns.

4. why etymology?

*Etymology* (et′-ə-MOL′-ə-jee) deals with the origin or derivation of words.

When you know the meaning of a root (for example, Latin *ego,* I or self), you can better understand, and more easily remember, *all* the words built on this root.

Learn one root and you have the key that will unlock the meanings of up to ten or twenty words in which the root appears.

Learn *ego* and you can immediately get a handle on *egocentric, egomaniac, egoist, egotist,* and *alter ego.*

Learn *anthropos* (Greek, mankind), and you will quickly understand, and never forget, *anthropology, misanthropy, anthropoid, anthropocentric, anthropomorphic,* *philanthropy,* and *anthropophobia.* Meet any word with *anthropo-* in it, and you will have at least some idea of its meaning.

In the etymological (et′-ə-mə-LOJ′-ə-kəl) approach to vocabulary building:
- You will learn about *prefixes, roots,* and *suffixes*—
- You will be able to figure out unfamiliar words by recognizing their structure, the building blocks from which they are constructed—
- You will be able to construct words correctly by learning to put these building blocks together in the proper way—and
- You will be able to derive verbs from nouns, nouns and verbs from adjectives, adjectives from nouns, etc.—and do all this correctly.
Learn how to deal with etymology and you will feel comfortable with words—you will use new words with self-assurance—you will be able to figure out thousands of words you hear or read even if you have never heard or seen these words before.

That’s why the best approach to new words is through etymology—as you will discover for yourself as soon as you start to work on chapter 3!

5. but what are nouns, verbs, and adjectives?

You probably know.

But if you don’t, you can master these parts of speech (and reference will be made to noun forms, verb forms, and adjective forms throughout the book) within the next five minutes.

(a) A noun is a word that can be preceded by a, an, the, some, such, or my.

An egoist (noun)

Such asceticism (noun)

The misogynist (noun)

(Nouns, you will discover, often end in conventional suffixes: -ness, -ity, -ism, -y, -ion, etc.)

(b) A verb is a word that fits into the pattern, “Let us ___.” A verb has a past tense.

Let us equivocate (verb)—past tense: equivocated.

Let us alternate (verb)—past tense: alternated.

Let us philander (verb)—past tense: philandered.

(Verbs, you will discover, often end in conventional suffixes: -ate, -ize, -fy, etc.)

(c) An adjective is a word that fits into the pattern, “You are very___."

You are very egoistic (adjective).

You are very introverted (adjective).

You are very misogynous (adjective).

(Adjectives, you will discover, often end in conventional suffixes: -ic, -ed, -ous, -al, -ive, etc.)

And adverbs, of course, are generally formed by adding -ly to an adjective: misogynous-misogynously; educational-educationally; etc.

That’s all there is to it! (Did it take more than five minutes? Maybe ten at the most?)

6. how to work for best results

If you intend to work with this book seriously (that is, if your clear intention is to add a thousand or more new words to your present vocabulary—add them permanently, unforgettably—add them so successfully that you will soon find yourself using them in speech and writing), I suggest that you give yourself every advantage by carefully following the laws of learning:

(a) Space your learning.

Beginning with Chapter 3, every chapter will be divided into “sessions.” Each session may take one half hour to an hour and a half, depending on the amount of material and on
your own speed of learning.

Do one or two sessions at a time—three if you’re going strong and are all involved—and always decide when you stop exactly when you will return. (I remind you to do this later in the book, since such a procedure is of crucial importance.)

(b) Do not rush—go at your own comfortable speed.

Everyone learns at a different pace. Fast learners are no better than slow learners—it’s the end result that counts, not the time it takes you to finish.

(c) Review.

When you start a new session, go back to the last exercise of the previous session (usually Can you recall the words? or Chapter Review), cover your answers, and test your retention—do you have quick recall after a day or so has elapsed?

(d) Test yourself.

You are not aiming for a grade, or putting your worth on the line, when you take the three Comprehensive Tests (Chapters 8, 13, and 17)—rather you are discovering your weaknesses, if any; deciding where repairs have to be made; and, especially, experiencing a feeling of success at work well done. (In learning, too, nothing succeeds like success!)

Use these three tests, as well as the abundant drill exercises, as aids to learning. No one is perfect, no one learns in the exact same way or at the same rate as anyone else. Find the optimum technique and speed for your unique learning patterns—and then give yourself every opportunity to exploit your actual, latent, and potential abilities.

But most important (as I will remind you several times throughout the book)—develop a routine and stick to it!

---

1 The system of pronunciation symbols will be thoroughly explained in Section 2 of this chapter.

2 All unusual words in this chapter are taught in later chapters of the book.

3 Incidentally, Latin scholars will notice that I present a Latin verb in the first person singular, present tense (verto, I turn), but call it an infinitive (verto, to turn). I do this for two reasons: 1) verto is easier for a non-Latin scholar to pronounce (the actual infinitive, vertere, is pronounced WAIR′-tə-ray); and 2) when I studied Latin fifty years ago, the convention was to refer to a verb by using the first person singular, present tense.

If you are not a Latin scholar, you need not bother to read this footnote—if you’ve already done so, forget it!
Disclaimer:

Occasionally in these pages, owing to the deficiency of the English language, I have used *he/him/his* meaning *he or she/him or her/his or her* in order to avoid awkwardness of style. *He, him, and his* are *not* intended as exclusively masculine pronouns—they may refer to either sex or to both sexes.
HOW TO TEST YOUR PRESENT VOCABULARY

Once—as a child—you were an expert, an accomplished virtuoso, at learning new words. Today, by comparison, you are a rank and bumbling amateur.

Does this statement sound insulting? It may be—but if you are the average adult, it is a statement that is, unfortunately, only too true.

Educational testing indicates that children of ten who have grown up in families in which English is the native language have recognition vocabularies of over twenty thousand words—

And that these same ten-year-olds have been learning new words at a rate of many hundreds a year since the age of four.

In astonishing contrast, studies show that adults who are no longer attending school increase their vocabularies at a pace slower than twenty-five to fifty words annually.

How do you assess your own vocabulary?
Is it quantitatively healthy?
Rich in over-all range?
Responsive to any situation in which you may find yourself?
Truly indicative of your intellectual potential?
More important, is it still growing at the same rapid clip as when you were a child?
Or, as with most adults, has your rate of increase dropped drastically since you left school? And if so, do you now feel that your vocabulary is somewhat limited, your verbal skills not as sharp as you would like them to be?
Let us check it out.
I challenge you to a series of tests that will measure your vocabulary range, as well as your verbal speed and responsiveness.
A TEST OF VOCABULARY RANGE

Here are sixty brief phrases, each containing one italicized word; it is up to you to check the closest definition of each such word. To keep your score valid, refrain, as far as possible, from wild guessing. The key will be found at the end of the test.

1. *disheveled* appearance:
   (a) untidy; (b) fierce, (c) foolish, (d) peculiar, (e) unhappy

2. a *baffling* problem:
   (a) difficult, (b) simple, (c) puzzling, (d) long, (e) new

3. *lenient* parent:
   (a) tall, (b) not strict, (c) wise, (d) foolish, (e) severe

4. *repulsive* personality:
   (a) disgusting, (b) attractive, (c) normal, (d) confused, (e) conceited

5. *audacious* attempt:
   (a) useless, (b) bold, (c) foolish, (d) crazy, (e) necessary

6. *parry* a blow:
   (a) ward off, (b) fear, (c) expect, (d) invite, (e) ignore

7. *prevalent* disease:
   (a) dangerous, (b) catching, (c) childhood, (d) fatal, (e) widespread

8. *ominous* report:
   (a) loud, (b) threatening, (c) untrue, (d) serious, (e) unpleasant

9. an *incredible* story:
   (a) true, (b) interesting, (c) well-known, (d) unbelievable, (e) unknown

10. an *ophthalmologist*:
    (a) eye doctor, (b) skin doctor, (c) foot doctor, (d) heart doctor, (e) cancer specialist

11. will *supersede* the old law:
    (a) enforce, (b) specify penalties for, (c) take the place of, (d) repeal, (e) continue

12. an *anonymous* donor:
    (a) generous, (b) stingy, (c) well-known, (d) one whose name is not known, (e) reluctant

13. performed an *autopsy*:
    (a) examination of living tissue, (b) examination of a corpse to determine the cause of death, (c) process in the manufacture of optical lenses, (d) operation to cure an organic disease, (e) series of questions to determine the causes of delinquent behavior

14. an *indefatigable* worker:
    (a) well-paid, (b) tired, (c) skillful, (d) tireless, (e) pleasant

15. a confirmed *atheist*:
    (a) bachelor, (b) disbeliever in God, (c) believer in religion, (d) believer in science, (e) priest

16. endless *loquacity*:
    (a) misery, (b) fantasy, (c) repetitiousness, (d) ill health, (e) talkativeness
17. a *glib* talker:
   (a) smooth, (b) awkward, (c) loud, (d) friendly, (e) boring
18. an *incorrigible* optimist:
   (a) happy, (b) beyond correction or reform, (c) foolish, (d) hopeful, (e) unreasonable
19. an *ocular* problem:
   (a) unexpected, (b) insoluble, (c) visual, (d) continual, (e) imaginary
20. a notorious *demagogue*:
   (a) rabble-rouser, (b) gambler, (c) perpetrator of financial frauds, (d) liar, (e) spendthrift
21. a *naïve* attitude:
   (a) unwise, (b) hostile, (c) unsophisticated, (d) friendly, (e) contemptuous
22. living in *affluence*:
   (a) difficult circumstances, (b) countrified surroundings, (c) fear, (d) wealth, (e) poverty
23. in *retrospect*:
   (a) view of the past, (b) artistic balance, (c) anticipation, (d) admiration, (e) second thoughts
24. a *gourmet*:
   (a) seasoned traveler, (b) greedy eater, (c) vegetarian, (d) connoisseur of good food, (e) skillful chef
25. to *simulate* interest:
   (a) pretend, (b) feel, (c) lose, (d) stir up, (e) ask for
26. a *magnanimous* action:
   (a) puzzling, (b) generous, (c) foolish, (d) unnecessary, (e) wise
27. a *clandestine* meeting:
   (a) prearranged, (b) hurried, (c) important, (d) secret, (e) public
28. the *apathetic* citizens:
   (a) made up of separate ethnic groups, (b) keenly vigilant of their rights, (c) politically conservative, (d) indifferent, uninterested, uninvolved, (e) terrified
29. to *placate* his son:
   (a) please, (b) help, (c) find a job for, (d) make arrangements for, (e) change a feeling of hostility to one of friendliness
30. to *vacillate* continually:
   (a) avoid, (b) swing back and forth in indecision, (c) inject, (d) treat, (e) scold
31. a *nostalgic* feeling:
   (a) nauseated, (b) homesick, (c) sharp, (d) painful, (e) delighted
32. feel *antipathy*:
   (a) bashfulness, (b) stage fright, (c) friendliness, (d) hostility, (e) suspense
33. be more *circumspect*:
   (a) restrained, (b) confident, (c) cautious, (d) honest, (e) intelligent
34. an *intrepid* fighter for human rights:
   (a) fearless, (b) eloquent, (c) popular, (d) experienced, (e) famous
35. *diaphanous* material:
   (a) strong, (b) sheer and gauzy, (c) colorful, (d) expensive, (e) synthetic
36. a taciturn host:
   (a) stingy, (b) generous, (c) disinclined to conversation, (d) charming, (e) gloomy
37. to malign his friend:
   (a) accuse, (b) help, (c) disbelieve, (d) slander, (e) introduce
38. a congenital deformity:
   (a) hereditary, (b) crippling, (c) slight, (d) incurable, (e) occurring at or during birth
39. a definite neurosis:
   (a) plan, (b) emotional disturbance, (c) physical disease, (d) feeling of fear, (e) allergic reaction
40. made an unequivocal statement:
   (a) hard to understand, (b) lengthy, (c) politically motivated, (d) clear and forthright, (e) supporting
41. vicarious enjoyment:
   (a) complete, (b) unspoiled, (c) occurring from a feeling of identification with another, (d) long-continuing, (e) temporary
42. psychogenic ailment:
   (a) incurable, (b) contagious, (c) originating in the mind, (d) intestinal, (e) imaginary
43. an anachronous attitude:
   (a) unexplainable, (b) unreasonable, (c) belonging to a different time, (d) out of place, (e) unusual
44. her iconoclastic phase:
   (a) artistic, (b) sneering at tradition, (c) troubled, (d) difficult, (e) religious
45. a tyro:
   (a) dominating personality, (b) beginner, (c) accomplished musician, (d) dabbler, (e) serious student
46. a laconic reply:
   (a) immediate, (b) assured, (c) terse and meaningful, (d) unintelligible, (e) angry
47. semantic confusion:
   (a) relating to the meaning of words, (b) pertaining to money, (c) having to do with the emotions, (d) relating to mathematics, (e) caused by inner turmoil
48. cavalier treatment:
   (a) courteous, (b) haughty and highhanded, (c) negligent, (d) affectionate, (e) expensive
49. an anomalous situation:
   (a) dangerous, (b) intriguing, (c) unusual, (d) pleasant (e) unhappy
50. posthumous child:
   (a) cranky, (b) brilliant, (c) physically weak, (d) illegitimate, (e) born after the death of the father
51. feels enervated:
   (a) full of ambition, (b) full of strength, (c) completely exhausted, (d) troubled, (e) full of renewed energy
52. shows perspicacity:
   (a) sincerity, (b) mental keenness, (c) love, (d) faithfulness, (e) longing
53. an unpopular *martinet*:
   (a) candidate, (b) supervisor, (c) strict disciplinarian, (d) military leader, (e) discourteous snob

54. *gregarious* person:
   (a) outwardly calm, (b) very sociable, (c) completely untrustworthy, (d) vicious, (e) self-effacing and timid

55. generally *phlegmatic*:
   (a) smug, self-satisfied, (b) easily pleased, (c) nervous, high-strung, (d) emotionally unresponsive, (e) lacking in social graces

56. an *inveterate* gambler:
   (a) impoverished, (b) successful, (c) habitual, (d) occasional, (e) superstitious

57. an *egregious* error:
   (a) outstandingly bad, (b) slight, (c) irreparable, (d) unnecessary, (e) deliberate

58. *cacophony* of a large city:
   (a) political administration, (b) crowded living conditions, (c) cultural advantages, (d) unpleasant noises, harsh sounds, (e) busy traffic

59. a *prurient* adolescent:
   (a) tall and gangling, (b) sexually longing, (c) clumsy, awkward, (d) sexually attractive, (e) soft-spoken

60. *uxorious* husband:
   (a) henpecked, (b) suspicious, (c) guilty of infidelity, (d) fondly and foolishly doting on his wife, (e) tightfisted, penny-pinching
Your score (one point for each correct choice): ____________

The Meaning of Your Score:

0–11: below average
12–35: average
36–48: above average
49–54: excellent
55–60: superior
**A TEST OF VERBAL SPEED**

**PART 1**

This is a timed test. 

In no more than three minutes (time yourself, or have someone time you), decide whether the word in column B is the same (or approximately the same) in meaning as the word in column A; opposite (or approximately opposite) in meaning; or whether the two words are merely different. 

Circle S for same, O for opposite, and D for different. 

You will not have time to dawdle or think too long, so go as fast as you can.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>COLUMN A</th>
<th>COLUMN B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sweet</td>
<td>sour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. crazy</td>
<td>insane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. stout</td>
<td>fat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. big</td>
<td>angry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. danger</td>
<td>peril</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. help</td>
<td>hinder</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. splendid</td>
<td>magnificent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. love</td>
<td>hate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. stand</td>
<td>rise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. furious</td>
<td>violent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. tree</td>
<td>apple</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. doubtful</td>
<td>certain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. handsome</td>
<td>ugly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. begin</td>
<td>start</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. strange</td>
<td>familiar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. male</td>
<td>female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. powerful</td>
<td>weak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. beyond</td>
<td>under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. live</td>
<td>die</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. go</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. return</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. growl</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. open</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. nest</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. chair</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26. want</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27. can</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28. idle</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29. rich</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30. building</td>
<td>S</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART 2**

*This is also a timed test.*

*In no more than three minutes* (again, time yourself or have someone time you), write down as many *different* words as you can think of that start with the letter *D*.

*Do not* use various forms of a word, such as *do, doing, does, done, doer*, etc.

Space is provided for 125 words. You are not expected to reach that number, but write as fast as you can and see how many blanks you can fill in before your time is up.

Part 2: Any English word starting with D is correct unless it is merely another form of a previous word on the list.

Scoring:

PART 1

If you have up to 10 correct answers, credit your score with 25 points.
If you have 11–20 correct answers, credit your score with 50 points.
21–25 correct answers—75 points.
26–30 correct answers—100 points.

Your Score on Part 1: ___

PART 2

Up to 30 words: 25 points
31–50 words: 50 points
51–70 words: 75 points
71–125 words: 100 points

Your Score on Part 2: ___

TOTAL SCORE

On Verbal Speed: ___

The meaning of your verbal speed score:

50: below average
75: average
100: above average
125–150: excellent
175–200: superior
A TEST OF VERBAL RESPONSIVENESS

PART 1

Write in the blank in column **B** a word starting with the letter **P** that is the *same*, or *approximately the same*, in meaning as the word given in column **A**.

Example:  look     peer_____________________________

*Warning*: Every answer *must* start with the letter **P**.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bucket</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. trousers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. maybe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. forgive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. separate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. likely</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. annoy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. good-looking</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. picture</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. choose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. ugly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. go</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. dish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. location</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. stone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. inactive</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. fussy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. suffering</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. castle</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. gasp</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. fear</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Write in the blank in column B a word starting with the letter G that is opposite, approximately opposite, or in contrast to the word given in column A.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>A</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. lose</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. midget</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. special</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. lady</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. take</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. moron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. sad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. boy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. happy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. plain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. hello</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. here</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. bad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. ugly</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. stingy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. awkward</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. little</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. rough</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Warning: Every answer must start with the letter G.*
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>19. bride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. ripe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. unwanting</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. unprotected</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23. experienced</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24. scarcity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25. unappreciative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KEY, Part 1: If more than one answer is given, count as correct any word you have written that is the same as any one of the answers.


Part 2: If more than one answer is given, count as correct any word you have written that is the same as any one of the answers.


Scoring:

Score Parts 1 and 2 together. Write in the blank the total number of correct responses you made: __________

The meaning of your verbal responsiveness score:

0–10: below average
11–20: average
21–30: above average
31–40: excellent
41–50: superior
VOCABULARY AND SUCCESS

Now you know where you stand. If you are in the below average or average group, you must consider, seriously, whether an inadequate vocabulary may be holding you back. (If you tested out on the above average, excellent, or superior level, you have doubtless already discovered the unique and far-reaching value of a rich vocabulary, and you are eager to add still further to your knowledge of words.)

Let us examine, briefly, some of the evidence that points to the close relationship between vocabulary and personal, professional, and intellectual growth.

The Human Engineering Laboratory found that the only common characteristic of successful people in this country is an unusual grasp of the meanings of words. The Laboratory tested the vocabularies of thousands of people in all age groups and in all walks of life—and discovered that those people drawing down the highest salaries made the highest scores. Consider very thoughtfully the explanation that the director of the Laboratory offered for the relationship between vocabulary and success:

“Why do large vocabularies characterize executives and possibly outstanding men and women in other fields? The final answer seems to be that words are the instruments by means of which men and women grasp the thoughts of others and with which they do much of their own thinking. They are the tools of thought.”

There is other evidence.

At many universities, groups of freshmen were put into experimental classes for the sole purpose of increasing their knowledge of English words. These groups did better in their sophomore, junior, and senior years than control groups of similarly endowed students who did not receive such training.

And still more evidence:

At the University of Illinois, entering students were given a simple twenty-nine-word vocabulary test. The results of this test could be used, according to Professor William D. Templeman, to make an accurate prediction of future academic success—or lack of success—over the entire four year college course. “If a student has a superior vocabulary,” states Professor Templeman, “it will probably follow that he will do better work academically.”

And finally:

Educational research has discovered that your I.Q. is intimately related to your vocabulary. Take a standard vocabulary test and then an intelligence test—the results in both will be substantially the same.
YOU CAN INCREASE YOUR VOCABULARY

The more extensive your vocabulary, the better your chances for success, other things being equal—success in attaining your educational goals, success in moving ahead in your business or professional career, success in achieving your intellectual potential.

And you can increase your vocabulary—faster and easier than you may realize.

You can, in fact, accomplish a tremendous gain in less than two to three months of concentrated effort, even if you do only one session a day—in less time if you do two or more sessions a day.

Furthermore—

You can start improving your vocabulary immediately—and within a few days you can be cruising along at such a rapid rate that there will be an actual change in your thinking, in your ability to express your thoughts, and in your powers of understanding.

Does this sound as if I am promising you the whole world in a neat package with a pretty pink ribbon tied around it? I am. And I am willing to make such an unqualified promise because I have seen what happens to those of my students at New York University and at Rio Hondo College in Whittier, California, who make sincere, methodical efforts to learn more, many more, words.
When you have finished working with this book, you will no longer be the same person.

You can’t be.

If you honestly read every page, if you do every exercise, if you take every test, if you follow every principle, you will go through an intellectual experience that will effect a radical change in you.

For if you systematically increase your vocabulary, you will also sharpen and enrich your thinking; push back your intellectual horizons; build your self-assurance; improve your facility in handling the English language and thereby your ability to express your thoughts effectively; and acquire a deeper understanding of the world in general and of yourself in particular.

Increasing your vocabulary does not mean merely learning the definitions of large numbers of obscure words; it does not mean memorizing scores of unrelated terms. What it means—what it can only mean—is becoming acquainted with the multitudinous and fascinating phenomena of human existence for which words are, obviously, only the verbal descriptions.

Increasing your vocabulary—properly, intelligently, and systematically—means treating yourself to an all-round, liberal education.

And surely you cannot deny that such an experience will change you intellectually—Will have a discernible effect on your methods of thinking—on your store of information—on your ability to express your ideas—on your understanding of human problems.
The typical ten-year-old, you will recall, has a recognition vocabulary of over twenty thousand words—and has been learning many hundreds of new words every year since the age of four.

You were once that typical child.
You were once an accomplished virtuoso at vocabulary building.
What was your secret?
Did you spend hours every day poring over a dictionary?
Did you lull yourself to sleep at night with Webster’s Unabridged?
Did you keep notebooks full of all the new words you ever heard or read?
Did you immediately look up the meaning of any new word that your parents or older members of your family used?
Such procedures would have struck you as absurd then, as absurd as they would be for you today.
You had a much better, much more effective, and considerably less self-conscious method.
Your method was the essence of simplicity: day in and day out you kept learning; you kept squeezing every possible ounce of learning out of every waking moment; you were an eternal question box, for you had a constant and insatiable desire to know and understand.
Then, eventually, at some point in your adult life (unless you are the rare exception), you gradually lost your compulsive drive to discover, to figure out, to understand, to know.

Eventually, therefore, you gradually lost your need to increase your vocabulary—your need to learn the words that could verbalize your new discoveries, your new understanding, your new knowledge.

Roland Gelatt, in a review of Caroline Pratt’s book *I Learn from Children*, describes this phenomenon as follows:

All normal human beings are born with a powerful urge to learn. Almost all of them lose this urge, even before they have reached maturity. It is only the few ... who are so constituted that lack of learning becomes a nuisance. This is perhaps the most insidious of human tragedies.

Children are wonders at increasing their vocabularies because of their “powerful urge to learn.” They do not learn solely by means of words, but as their knowledge increases, so does their vocabulary—for words are the symbols of ideas and understanding.

(If you are a parent, you perhaps remember that crucial and trying period in which your child constantly asked “Why?” The “Why?” is the child’s method of finding out. How many adults that you know go about asking and thinking “Why?” How often do you yourself do it?)

The adults who “lose this urge,” who no longer feel that “lack of learning becomes a nuisance,” stop building their vocabularies. They stop learning, they stop growing intellectually, they stop changing. When and if such a time comes, then, as Mr. Gelatt so truly says, “This is perhaps the most insidious of human tragedies.” But fortunately the process is far from irreversible.

If you have lost the “powerful urge to learn,” you can regain it—you can regain your need to discover, to figure out, to understand, to know.

And thus you can start increasing your vocabulary at the same rate as when you were a child.

I am not spouting airy theory. For over thirty-five years I have worked with thousands of adults in my college courses in vocabulary improvement, and I can state as a fact, and without qualification, that:

*If you can recapture the “powerful urge to learn” with which you were born, you can go on increasing your vocabulary at a prodigious rate—*

*No matter what your present age.*
WHY AGE MAKES LITTLE DIFFERENCE IN VOCABULARY BUILDING

I repeat, no matter what your present age.
You may be laboring under a delusion common to many older people.
You may think that after you pass your twenties you rapidly and inevitably lose your
ability to learn.
That is simply not true.
There is no doubt that the years up to eighteen or twenty are the best period for
learning. Your own experience no doubt bears that out. And of course for most people
more learning goes on faster up to the age of eighteen or twenty than ever after, even if they
live to be older than Methuselah. (That is why vocabulary increases so rapidly for the first
twenty years of life and comparatively at a snail’s pace thereafter.)
But (and follow me closely)—
The fact that most learning is accomplished before the age of twenty does not mean that
very little learning can be achieved beyond that age.
What is done by most people and what can be done under proper guidance and
motivation are two very, very different things—as scientific experiments have conclusively
shown.
Furthermore—
The fact that your learning ability may be best up to age twenty does not mean that it is
absolutely useless as soon as your twentieth birthday is passed.
Quite the contrary.
Edward Thorndike, the famous educational psychologist, found in experiments with
people of all ages that although the learning curve rises spectacularly up to twenty, it
remains steady for at least another five years. After that, ability to learn (according to
Professor Thorndike) drops very, very slowly up to the age of thirty-five, and drops a bit
more but still slowly beyond that age.
And—
Right up to senility the total decrease in learning ability after age twenty is never more
than 15 per cent!
That does not sound, I submit, as if no one can ever learn anything new after the age of
twenty.
Believe me, the old saw that claims you cannot teach an old dog new tricks is a baseless,
if popular, superstition.
So I repeat: no matter what your age, you can go on learning efficiently, or start learning
once again if perhaps you have stopped.
You can be thirty, or forty, or fifty, or sixty, or seventy—or older.
No matter what your age, you can once again increase your vocabulary at a prodigious
rate—providing you recapture the “powerful urge to learn” that is the key to vocabulary
improvement.
Not the urge to learn “words”—words are only symbols of ideas.
But the urge to learn facts, theories, concepts, information, knowledge, understanding—
call it what you will.
Words are the symbols of knowledge, the keys to accurate thinking. Is it any wonder then that the most successful and intelligent people in this country have the biggest vocabularies?

It was not their large vocabularies that made these people successful and intelligent, but their knowledge.

Knowledge, however, is gained largely through words.

In the process of increasing their knowledge, these successful people increased their vocabularies.

Just as children increase their vocabulary at a tremendous, phenomenal rate during those years when their knowledge is increasing most rapidly.

Knowledge is chiefly in the form of words, and from now on, in this book, you will be thinking about, and thinking with, new words and new ideas.
WHAT THIS BOOK CAN DO FOR YOU

This book is designed to get you started building your vocabulary—effectively and at jet-propelled speed—by helping you regain the intellectual atmosphere, the keen, insatiable curiosity, the “powerful urge to learn” of your childhood.

The organization of the book is based on two simple principles: 1) words are the verbal symbols of ideas, and 2) the more ideas you are familiar with, the more words you know.

So, chapter by chapter, we will start with some central idea—personality types, doctors, science, unusual occupations, liars, actions, speech habits, insults, compliments, etc.—and examine ten basic words that express various aspects of the idea. Then, using each word as a springboard, we will explore any others which are related to it in meaning or derivation, so that it is not unlikely that a single chapter may discuss, teach, and test close to one hundred important words.

Always, however, the approach will be from the idea. First there will be a “teaser preview” in which the ideas are briefly hinted at; then a “headline,” in which each idea is examined somewhat more closely; next a clear, detailed paragraph or more will analyze the idea in all its ramifications; finally the word itself, which you will meet only after you are completely familiar with the idea.

In the etymology (derivation of words) section, you will learn what Greek or Latin root gives the word its unique meaning and what other words contain the same, or related, roots. You will thus be continually working in related fields, and there will never be any possibility of confusion from “too muchness,” despite the great number of words taken up and tested in each chapter.

Successful people have superior vocabularies. People who are intellectually alive and successful in the professional or business worlds are accustomed to dealing with ideas, are constantly on the search for new ideas, build their lives and their careers on the ideas they have learned. And it is to readers whose goal is successful living (in the broadest meaning of the word successful) that this book is addressed.
A NOTE ON TIME SCHEDULES

From my experience over many years in teaching, I have become a firm believer in setting a goal for all learning and a schedule for reaching that goal.

You will discover that each chapter is divided into approximately equal sessions, and that each session will take from thirty to forty-five minutes of your time, depending on how rapidly or slowly you enjoy working—and bear in mind that everyone has an optimum rate of learning.

For best results, do one or two sessions at a time—spaced studying, with time between sessions so that you can assimilate what you have learned, is far more efficient, far more productive, than gobbling up great amounts in indigestible chunks.

Come back to the book every day, or as close to every day as the circumstances of your life permit.

*Find a schedule that is comfortable for you, and then stick to it.*

Avoid interrupting your work until you have completed a full session, and always decide, before you stop, *exactly when* you will plan to pick up the book again.

Working at your own comfortable rate, you will likely finish the material in two to three months, give or take a few weeks either way.

*However long you take, you will end with a solid feeling of accomplishment, a new understanding of how English words work, and—most important—how to make words work for you.*
How to talk about personality types

(Sessions 1–3)

Teaser preview

What word best describes your personality if you:
are interested solely in your own welfare?
constantly talk about yourself?
dedicate your life to helping others?
turn your mind inward?
turn your mind outward?
hate humanity?
hate women?
hate marriage?
lead a lonely, austere existence?
SESSION 1

Every human being is, in one way or another, unique.
Everyone’s personality is determined by a combination of genetic and environmental factors.
Let us examine ten personality types (one of which might by chance be your very own) that result from the way culture, growth, family background, and environment interact with heredity.
And, of course, we begin not with the words, but with the ideas.

IDEAS

1. me first

   Your attitude to life is simple, direct, and aboveboard—every decision you make is based on the answer to one question: “What’s in it for me?” If your selfishness, greed, and ruthless desire for self-advancement hurt other people, that’s too bad. “This is a tough world, pal, dog eat dog and all that, and I, for one, am not going to be left behind!”

   An egoist

2. the height of conceit

   “Now, let’s see. Have you heard about all the money I’m making? Did I tell you about my latest amorous conquest? Let me give you my opinion—I know, because I’m an expert at practically everything!” You are boastful to the point of being obnoxious—you have only one string to your conversational violin, namely, yourself; and on it you play a number of monotonous variations: what you think, what you have done, how good you are, how you would solve the problems of the world, etc. ad nauseam.

   An egotist

3. let me help you

   You have discovered the secret of true happiness—concerning yourself with the welfare of others. Never mind your own interests, how’s the next fellow getting along?

   An altruist

4. leave me alone
Like a biochemist studying a colony of bacteria under the microscope, you minutely examine your every thought, feeling, and action. Probing, futile questions like “What do other people think of me?”, “How do I look?”, and “Maybe I shouldn’t have said that?” are your constant nagging companions, for you are unable to realize that other people do not spend as much time and energy analyzing you as you think.

You may seem unsocial, yet your greatest desire is to be liked and accepted. You may be shy and quiet, you are often moody and unhappy, and you prefer solitude or at most the company of one person to a crowd. You have an aptitude for creative work and are uncomfortable engaging in activities that require cooperation with other people. You may even be a genius, or eventually turn into one.

**An introvert**

5. let’s do it together

You would be great as a teacher, counselor, administrator, insurance agent. You can always become interested—sincerely, vitally interested—in other people’s problems. You’re the life of the party, because you never worry about the effect of your actions, never inhibit yourself with doubts about dignity or propriety. You are usually happy, generally full of high spirits; you love to be with people—lots of people. Your thoughts, your interests, your whole personality are turned outward.

**An extrovert**

6. neither extreme

You have both introverted and extroverted tendencies—at different times and on different occasions. Your interests are turned, in about equal proportions, both inward and outward. Indeed, you’re quite normal—in the sense that your personality is like that of most people.

**An ambivert**

7. people are no damn good

Cynical, embittered, suspicious, you hate everyone. (Especially, but never to be admitted, *yourself*)? The perfectibility of the human race? “Nonsense! No way!” The stupidity, the meanness, and the crookedness of most mortals (“Most? Probably all!”)—that is your favorite theme.

**A misanthrope**

8. women are no damn good
Sometime in your dim past, you were crossed, scorned, or deeply wounded by a woman (a mother, or mother figure, perhaps?). So now you have a carefully constructed defense against further hurt—you hate all women.

A misogynist

9. “marriage is an institution—and who wants to live in an institution?”

You will not make the ultimate legal commitment. Members of the opposite sex are great as lovers, roommates, apartment- or house-sharers, but not as lawfully wedded spouses. The ties that bind are too binding for you. You may possibly believe, and possibly, for yourself, be right, that a commitment is deeper and more meaningful if freedom is available without judicial proceedings.

A misogynist

10. “… that the flesh is heir to …”

Self-denial, austerity, lonely contemplation—these are the characteristics of the good life, so you claim. The simplest food and the least amount of it that will keep body and soul together, combined with abstinence from fleshly, earthly pleasures, will eventually lead to spiritual perfection—that is your philosophy.

An ascetic

USING THE WORDS

You have been introduced to ten valuable words—but in each case, as you have noticed, you have first considered the ideas that these words represent. Now say the words—each one is respelled phonetically so that you will be sure to pronounce it correctly.

Say each word aloud. This is the first important step to complete mastery. As you hear a word in your own voice, think of its meaning. Are you quite clear about it? If not, reinforce your learning by rereading the explanatory paragraph or paragraphs.

Can you pronounce the words?

1. egoist EE′-gō-ist
2. egotist EE′-gō-tist
3. altruist AL′-trə-ist
4. introvert IN′-trə-vurt′
5. extrovert EKS′-trə-vurt′
Can you work with the words?

You have taken two long steps toward mastery of the expressive words in this chapter—you have thought about the ideas behind them, and you have said them aloud.

For your third step, match each personality with the appropriate characteristic, action, or attitude.

1. egoist  
   - a. turns thoughts inward
2. egotist  
   - b. hates marriage
3. altruist  
   - c. talks about accomplishments
4. introvert  
   - d. hates people
5. extrovert  
   - e. does not pursue pleasures of the flesh
6. ambivert  
   - f. is interested in the welfare of others
7. misanthrope  
   - g. believes in self-advancement
8. misogynist  
   - h. turns thoughts both inward and outward
9. misogamist  
   - i. hates women
10. ascetic  
    - j. turns thoughts outward
Do you understand the words?

Now that you are becoming more and more involved in these ten words, find out if they can make an immediate appeal to your understanding. Here are ten questions—can you indicate, quickly, and without reference to any previous definitions, whether the correct answer to each of these questions is yes or no?

1. Is an egoist selfish?  
   YES  NO

2. Is modesty one of the characteristics of the egotist?  
   YES  NO

3. Is an altruist selfish?  
   YES  NO

4. Does an introvert pay much attention to himself?  
   YES  NO

5. Does an extrovert prefer solitude to companionship?  
   YES  NO

6. Are most normal people ambiverts?  
   YES  NO

7. Does a misanthrope like people?  
   YES  NO

8. Does a misogynist enjoy the company of women?  
   YES  NO

9. Does an ascetic lead a life of luxury?  
   YES  NO

10. Does a misogynist try to avoid marriage?  
    YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

You have thus far reinforced your learning by saying the words aloud, by matching them to their definitions, and by responding to meaning when they were used in context.

Can you recall each word, now, without further reference to previous material? And can you spell it correctly?

Who lives a lonely, austere life?
1. A_____________

Whose interests are turned outward?
2. E_____________

Who is supremely selfish?
3. E_____________

Who hates people?
4. M_____________

Whose interests are turned both inward and outward?
5. A_____________

Who is incredibly conceited?
6. E_____________

Who is more interested in the welfare of others than in his own?
7. A_____________

Who hates women?
8. M_____________

Whose interests are turned inward?
9. I_____________

Who hates marriage?
10. M_____________
KEY: 1–ascetic, 2–extrovert, 3–egoist, 4–misanthrope, 5–ambivert, 6–egotist, 7–altruist, 8–misogynist, 9–introvert, 10–misogamist

(End of Session 1)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

Every word in the English language has a history—and these ten are no exception. In this section you will learn a good deal more about the words you have been working with; in addition, you will make excursions into many other words allied either in meaning, form, or history to our basic ten.

1. the ego

_Egoist_ and _egotist_ are built on the same Latin root—the pronoun _ego_, meaning _I_. _I_ is the greatest concern in the _egoist_’s mind, the most overused word in the _egotist_’s vocabulary. (Keep the words differentiated in your own mind by thinking of the _t_ in _talk_, and the additional _t_ in _egotist_.) _Ego_ itself has been taken over from Latin as an important English word and is commonly used to denote one’s concept of oneself, as in, “What do you think your constant criticisms do to my _ego_?” _Ego_ has also a special meaning in psychology—but for the moment you have enough problems without going into _that._

If you are an _egocentric_ (ee′-gō-SEN′-trik), you consider yourself the _center_ of the universe—you are an extreme form of the _egoist_. And if you are an _egomaniac_ (ee′-gō-MAY′-nee-ak), you carry _egoism_ to such an extreme that your needs, desires, and interests have become a morbid obsession, a _mania_. The _egoist_ or _egotist_ is obnoxious, the _egocentric_ is intolerable, and the _egomaniac_ is dangerous and slightly mad. _Egocentric_ is both a noun (“What an _egocentric_ her new roommate is!”) and an adjective (“He is the most _egocentric_ person I have ever met!”).

To derive the adjective form of _egomaniac_, add _-al_, a common adjective suffix. Say the adjective aloud:

\[
\text{egomaniacal} \quad \text{ee′-gō-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl}
\]

2. others

In Latin, the word for _other_ is _alter_, and a number of valuable English words are built on this root. _Altruism_ (AL′-trō-iz-əm), the philosophy practiced by _altruists_, comes from one of the variant spellings of Latin _alter_, other. _Altruistic_ (al-trō-IS′-tik) actions look toward the benefit of _others_. If you _alternate_ (AWL′-tər-nayt′), you skip one and take the _other_, so to speak, as when you play golf on _alternate_ (AWL′-tər-nət) Saturdays.

An _alternate_ (AWL′-tər-nət) in a debate, contest, or convention is the _other_ person who will take over if the original choice is unable to attend. And if you have no _alternative_ (awl-TUR′-nə-tiv), you have no _other_ choice.
You see how easy it is to understand the meanings of these words once you realize that they all come from the same source. And keeping in mind that *alter* means *other*, you can quickly understand words like *alter ego*, *altercation*, and *alteration*.

An *alteration* (awl′-tə-RAY′-shən) is of course a change—a making into something *other*. When you *alter* (AWL′-tər) your plans, you make *other* plans.

An *altercation* (awl′-tər-KAY′-shən) is a verbal dispute. When you have an *altercation* with someone, you have a violent disagreement, a “fight” with words. And why? Because you have *other* ideas, plans, or opinions than those of the person on the *other* side of the argument. *Altercation*, by the way, is stronger than *quarrel* or *dispute*—the sentiment is more heated, the disagreement is likely to be angry or even hot-tempered, there may be recourse, if the disputants are human, to profanity or obscenity. You have *altercations*, in short, over pretty important issues, and the word implies that you get quite excited.

*Alter ego* (AWL′-tər EE′-gō), which combines *alter*, other, with *ego*, I, self, generally refers to someone with whom you are so close that you both do the same things, think alike, react similarly, and are, in temperament, almost mirror images of each other. Any such friend is your *other I*, your *other self*, your *alter ego*.

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words?**

Digging a little into the derivation of three of our basic words, *egoist*, *egotist*, and *altruist*, has put us in touch with two important Latin roots, *ego*, I, self, and *alter*, other, and has made it possible for us to explore, with little difficulty, many other words derived from these roots. Pause now, for a moment, to digest these new acquisitions, and to say them aloud.

1. *ego*  
   EE′-gō

2. *egocentric*  
   ee-gō-SEN′-trik

3. *egomaniac*  
   ee-gō-MAY′-nee-ak

4. *egomaniacal*  
   ee′-gō-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl

5. *altruism*  
   AL′-troo-iz-əm

6. *altruistic*  
   al-troo-IS′-tik

7. to *alternate* (v.)  
   AWL′-tər-nət

8. *alternate* (adj. or noun)  
   AWL′-tər-nət

9. *alternative*  
   awl-TUR′-nə-tiv

10. *alteration*  
   awl′-tər-AY′-shən

11. to *alter*  
   AWL′-tər
Can you work with the words? (I)

You have seen how these thirteen words derive from the two Latin roots *ego*, I, self, and *alter*, other, and you have pronounced them aloud and thereby begun to make them part of your active vocabulary.

Are you ready to match definitions to words?

1. ego
   a. one who is excessively fixated on his own desires, needs, etc.

2. egocentric
   b. to change

3. altruism
   c. argument

4. to alternate
   d. one’s concept of oneself

5. to alter
   e. to take one, skip one, etc.

6. altercation
   f. philosophy of putting another’s welfare above one’s own
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. egomaniacal  
2. altruistic  
3. alternative  
4. alteration  
5. alter ego  
6. alternate (*adj.*)

1. a. a change  
2. b. other possible  
3. c. interested in the welfare of others  
4. d. one’s other self  
5. e. a choice  
6. f. morbidly, obsessively wrapped up in oneself
Do you understand the words?

If you have begun to understand these thirteen words, you will be able to respond to the following questions.

Is rejection usually a blow to one’s ego?
YES  NO

Are egocentric people easy to get along with?
YES  NO

Does an egomaniac have a normal personality?
YES  NO

Are egomaniacal tendencies a sign of maturity?
YES  NO

Is altruism a characteristic of selfish people?
YES  NO

Are altruistic tendencies common to egoists?
YES  NO

Is an alternate plan necessarily inferior?
YES  NO

Does an alternative allow you some freedom of choice?
YES  NO

Does alteration imply keeping things the same?
YES  NO

Do excitable people often engage in altercations?
YES  NO

Is your alter ego usually quite similar to yourself?
YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

Have you learned these words so well that you can summon each one from your mind when a brief definition is offered? Review first if necessary; then, without further reference to previous pages, write the correct word in each blank. Make sure to check your spelling when you refer to the Key.

1. one’s other self
   A_________________
2. to change
   A_________________
3. a heated dispute
   A_________________
4. excessively, morbidly obsessed with one’s own needs, desires, or ambitions
   E_________________
5. unselfish; more interested in the welfare of others than in one’s own
   A_________________
6. utterly involved with oneself; self-centered
   E_________________
7. a choice
   A_________________
8. one who substitutes for another
   A_________________
(End of Session 2)
SESSION 3

ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. depends how you turn

Introvert, extrovert, and ambivert are built on the Latin verb *verto*, to turn. If your thoughts are constantly turned inward (*intro-*), you are an introvert; outward (*extro-*), an extrovert; and in both directions (*ambi-*), an ambivert. The prefix *ambi-* is also found in *ambidextrous* (*am′-bi-DEKS′-trəs*), able to use both hands with equal skill. The noun is *ambidexterity* (*am′-bi-deks-TAIR′-ə-tee*).

*Dexterous* (*DEKS′-trəs*) means skillful, the noun *dexterity* (*deks-TAIR′-ə-tee*) is skill. The ending -ous is a common adjective suffix (*famous, dangerous, perilous*, etc.); -ity is a common noun suffix (*vanity, quality, simplicity*, etc.).

(Spelling caution: Note that the letter following the *t-* in *ambidextrous* is *-r*, but that in dexterous the next letter is *-e*.)

*Dexter* is actually the Latin word for *right hand*—in the *ambidextrous* person, both hands are *right hands*, so to speak.

The right hand is traditionally the more skillful one; it is only within recent decades that we have come to accept that “lefties” or “southpaws” are just as normal as anyone else—and the term *left-handed* is still used as a synonym of awkward.

The Latin word for the *left hand* is *sinister*. This same word, in English, means threatening, evil, or dangerous, a further commentary on our early suspiciousness of left-handed persons. There may still be some parents who insist on forcing left-handed children to change (though left-handedness is inherited, and as much an integral part of its possessor as eye color or nose shape), with various unfortunate results to the child—sometimes stuttering or an inability to read with normal skill.

The French word for the *left hand* is *gauche*, and, as you would suspect, when we took this word over into English we invested it with an uncomplimentary meaning. Call someone *gauche* (*GOŠ*) and you imply clumsiness, generally social rather than physical. (We’re right back to our age-old misconception that left-handed people are less skillful than right-handed ones.) A *gauche* remark is tactless; a *gauche* offer of sympathy is so bumbling as to be embarrassing; *gaucherie* (*GŌ′-shə-ree* is an awkward, clumsy, tactless, embarrassing way of saying things or of handling situations. The *gauche* person is totally without finesse.

And the French word for the *right hand* is *droit*, which we have used in building our English word *adroit* (*ə-DRoyT′*). Needless to say, *adroit*, like *dexterous*, means skillful, but especially in the exercise of the mental facilities. Like *gauche*, *adroit*, or its noun *adroitness*, usually is used figuratively. The *adroit* person is quickwitted, can get out of difficult spots cleverly, can handle situations ingeniously. *Adroitness* is, then, quite the opposite of *gaucherie*. 
2. love, hate, and marriage

Misanthrope, misogynist, and misogynist are built on the Greek root *misein*, to hate. The misanthrope hates mankind (Greek *anthropos*, mankind); the misogynist hates women (Greek *gyne*, woman); the misogamist hates marriage (Greek *gamos*, marriage).

Anthropos, mankind, is also found in *anthropology* (an-thrə-POL′-ə-jee), the study of the development of the human race; and in *philanthropist* (fə-LAN′-thrə-pist), one who loves mankind and shows such love by making substantial financial contributions to charitable organizations or by donating time and energy to helping those in need.

The root *gyne*, woman, is also found in *gynecologist* (gīn-ə-KOL′-ə-jist or jīn-KOL′-ə-jist), the medical specialist who treats female disorders. And the root *gamos*, marriage, occurs also in *monogamy* (mə-NOG′-ə-mee), *bigamy* (BIG′-ə-mee), and *polygamy* (pə-LIG′-ə-mee).

(As we will discover later, *monos* means one, *bi-* means two, *polys* means many.)

So *monogamy* is the custom of only one marriage (at a time).

*Bigamy*, by etymology, is two marriages—in actuality, the unlawful act of contracting another marriage without divorcing one’s current legal spouse.

And *polygamy*, by derivation many marriages, and therefore etymologically denoting plural marriage for either males or females, in current usage generally refers to the custom practiced in earlier times by the Mormons, and before them by King Solomon, in which the man has as many wives as he can afford financially and/or emotionally. The correct, but rarely used, term for this custom is *polygyny* (pə-LIJ′-ə-nee)—*polys*, many, plus *gyne*, woman.

What if a woman has two or more husbands, a form of marriage practiced in the Himalaya Mountains of Tibet? That custom is called *polyandry* (pol-ee-AN′-dree), from *polys* plus Greek *andros*, male.

3. making friends with suffixes

English words have various forms, using certain suffixes for nouns referring to persons, other suffixes for practices, attitudes, philosophies, etc, and still others for adjectives.

Consider:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Person</th>
<th>Practice, etc.</th>
<th>Adjective</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. misanthrope or misanthropist</td>
<td>misanthropy</td>
<td>misanthropic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. misogynist</td>
<td>misogyny</td>
<td>misogynous or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. gynecologist</td>
<td>gynecology</td>
<td>misogynistic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. monogamist</td>
<td>monogamy</td>
<td>monogamous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. bigamist</td>
<td>bigamy</td>
<td>bigamous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. polygamist</td>
<td>polygamy</td>
<td>polygamous</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
You will note, then, that -ist is a common suffix for a person; -y for a practice, attitude, etc.; and -ic or -ous for an adjective.

4. living alone and liking it

Ascetic is from the Greek word asketes, monk or hermit.

A monk lives a lonely life—not for him the pleasures of the fleshpots, the laughter and merriment of convivial gatherings, the dissipation of high living. Rather, days of contemplation, study, and rough toil, nights on a hard bed in a simple cell, and the kind of self-denial that leads to a purification of the soul.

That person is an ascetic who leads an existence, voluntarily of course, that compares in austerity, simplicity, and rigorous hardship with the life of a monk.

The practice is asceticism (ə-SET′-ə-siz-əm), the adjective ascetic.

REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

Notice how efficiently you can master words by understanding their etymological structure. Stop for a moment to review the roots, prefixes, and suffixes you have studied. Can you recall a word we have discussed in this chapter that is built on the indicated prefix, root, or suffix?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ego</td>
<td>self, I</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. alter</td>
<td>other</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. intro-</td>
<td>inside</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. extro-</td>
<td>outside</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. verto</td>
<td>turn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ambi-</td>
<td>both</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. misein</td>
<td>hate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. anthropos</td>
<td>mankind</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. gyne</td>
<td>woman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
<td>---</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>gamos</td>
<td>marriage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>asketes</td>
<td>monk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>centrum</td>
<td>center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>mania</td>
<td>madness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>dexter</td>
<td>right hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>sinister</td>
<td>left hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>gauche</td>
<td>left hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>droit</td>
<td>right hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>monos</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>bi-</td>
<td>two</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>polys</td>
<td>many</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>andros</td>
<td>male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>person who (noun suffix)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>-y</td>
<td>Practice, custom, etc. (noun suffix)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>-ous</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>quality, condition, etc. (noun suffix)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words? (I)**

Say each word aloud! Hear it in your own voice! *Say it often enough so that you feel comfortable with it, noting carefully from the phonetic respelling exactly how it should sound.*

Remember that the first crucial step in mastering a word is to be able to say it with ease and assurance.

1. ambidextrous \(\text{am-bə-DEKS′-trəs}\)
2. ambidexterity \(\text{am′-bə-deks-TAIR′-ə-tee}\)
3. dexterous \(\text{DEKS′-trəs}\)
4. dexterity \(\text{deks-TAIR′-ə-tee}\)
5. sinister  SİN′-ə-stər
6. gauche  GŌSH (Say the English word go, then quickly add -sh.)
7. gaucherie  GŌ′-shə-ree
8. adroit  ə-DROYT′
9. adroitness  ə-DROYT′-nəss
10. anthropology  an-tbrə-POL′-ə-jeε
11. anthropologist  an-thrə-POL′-ə-jist
12. anthropological  an′-thrə-pə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
13. philanthropist  fə-LAN′-thrə-pist
14. philanthropy  fə-LAN′-thrə-pee
15. philanthropic  fil-ən-THROJ′-ik
16. gynecologist  gīn (or jin or jīn)-ə-KOL′-ə-jist
17. gynecology  gīn (or jin or jīn)-ə-KOL′-ə-jeε
18. gynecological  gīn (or jin or jīn)-ə-kə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
19. monogamist  mə-NOG′-ə-mist
20. monogamy  mə-NOG′-ə-mee
21. monogamous  mə-NOG′-ə-məs

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. bigamist  BIG′-ə-mist
2. bigamy  BIG′-ə-mee
3. bigamous  BIG′-ə-məs
4. polygamist  pə-LIG′-ə-mist
5. polygamy  pə-LIG′-ə-mee
6. polygamous  pə-LIG′-ə-məs
7. polygynist  pə-LIJ′-ə-nist
8. polygyny  pə-LIJ′-ə-nee
9. polygynous  pə-LIJ′-ə-nəs
10. polyandrist  
11. polyandry  
12. polyandrous  
13. misanthropist  
14. misanthropy  
15. misanthropic  
16. misogyny  
17. misogynous  
18. misogynistic  
19. misogamy  
20. misogynous  
21. asceticism  

Can you work with the words? (I)

Check on your comprehension! See how successfully you can match words and meanings!

1. ambidextrous  
2. dexterous  
3. sinister  
4. gauche  
5. misanthropic  

a. evil, threatening  
b. hating mankind  
c. skillful  
d. awkward  
e. capable of using both hands with equal skill
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. anthropology  a. system of only one marriage
2. gynecology  b. hatred of women
3. monogamy  c. illegal plurality of marriages
4. bigamy  d. study of human development
5. misogyny  e. study of female ailments
Can you work with the words? (III)

1. polygamy  a. devotion to a lonely and austere life
2. misogamy  b. skill, cleverness
3. asceticism  c. custom in which one man has many wives
4. philanthropy  d. love of mankind
5. adroitness  e. hatred of marriage
Can you work with the words? (IV)

1. polygynist  a. student of the development of mankind
2. polyandrist  b. one who engages in charitable works
3. anthropologist  c. male with a plurality of wives
4. gynecologist  d. women’s doctor
5. philanthropist  e. female with a plurality of husbands
Do you understand the words?

Can ambidextrous people use either the left or right hand equally well?

YES NO

Should a surgeon be manually dexterous?

YES NO

Is a sinister-looking person frightening?

YES NO

Is gaucherie a social asset?

YES NO

Is an adroit speaker likely to be a successful lawyer?

YES NO

Is a student of anthropology interested in primitive tribes?

YES NO

Does a gynecologist have more male than female patients?

YES NO

Is monogamy the custom in Western countries?

YES NO

Is a misogynist likely to show tendencies toward polygamy?

YES NO

Is a bigamist breaking the law?

YES NO

Is a philanthropist generally altruistic?

YES NO

Does a misanthropist enjoy human relationships?

YES NO

Does a misogynist enjoy female companionship?

YES NO

Are unmarried people necessarily misogynous?

YES NO

Are bachelors necessarily misogynous?

YES NO

Is asceticism compatible with luxurious living and the pursuit of pleasure?

YES NO

Does a polyandrist have more than one husband?
Can you recall the words?

philosophy of living austerely
1. A____________
hatred of women
2. M____________
hatred of marriage
3. M____________
hatred of mankind
4. M____________
skillful
5. D____________
akward
6. G____________
evil, threatening
7. S____________
describing hatred of women (adj.)
8. M____________
or M____________
skill
9. A____________
pertaining to hatred of marriage. (adj.)
10. M____________
pertaining to hatred of mankind (adj.)
11. M____________
social custom of plural marriage
12. P____________
or P____________
or P____________
unlawful state of having more than one spouse
13. B____________
doctor specializing in female disorders
14. G____________
custom of one marriage at a time
15. M____________
one who hates the human race
16. M__________
or M__________
able to use both hands with equal skill
17. A__________
study of mankind
18. A__________
one who loves mankind
19. P__________
skill in the use of both hands
20. A__________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

1. Puts selfish desires first: (a) egoist, (b) egotist, (c) altruist
2. Is self-analytical: (a) extrovert, (b) introvert, (c) ambivert
3. Hates women: (a) misogynist, (b) misanthrope, (c) misogynist
4. One’s other self: (a) altercation, (b) alter ego, (c) alteration
5. Awkward, clumsy: (a) adroit, (b) dexterous, (c) gauche
6. Plural marriage as a custom: (a) bigamy, (b) polygamy, (c) monogamy
7. Study of human development: (a) asceticism, (b) philanthropy, (c) anthropology
8. Plurality of husbands as a custom: (a) misogyny, (b) polygyny, (c) polyandry
B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. ego</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>egoist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. alter</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>alternative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. verto</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>introvert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. misein</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>misogynist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. anthropos</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>anthropologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. gyne</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>gynecologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. gamos</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>bigamy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. centrum</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>egocentric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. dexter</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>dexterous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. droit</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>adroit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. monos</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>monogamy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. andros</td>
<td>________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE  polyandry
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

Suppose you met the following words in your reading. Recognizing the roots on which they are constructed, could you figure out the meanings? Write your answers on the blank lines.

1. **anthropocentric:** ________________
2. **andromania:** ________________
3. **gynandrous:** ________________
4. **monomania:** ________________
5. **misandrist:** ________________

*(Answers in Chapter 18.)*

STICK TO YOUR TIME SCHEDULE!

In three sessions, you have become acquainted with scores of new, vital, exciting words. You understand the ideas behind these words, their various forms and spellings, their pronunciation, their derivation, how they can be used, and exactly what they mean. I do not wish to press a point unduly, but it is possible that you have learned more new words in the short time it took you to cover this chapter than the average adult learns in an entire year. This realization should make you feel both gratified and excited.

Funny thing about time. Aside from the fact that we all, rich or poor, sick or well, have the same amount of time, exactly twenty-four hours every day (that is looking at time from a static point of view), it is also true that we can always find time for the things we enjoy doing, almost never for the things we find unpleasant (and that is looking at time from the dynamic point of view). I am not merely being philosophical—I am sure you will agree with this concept if you give it a little thought.

If you have enjoyed learning new words, accepting new challenges, gaining new understanding, and discovering the thrill of successful accomplishment, then make sure to stay with the time schedule you have set up for yourself.

*A crucial factor in successful, ongoing learning is routine.*

Develop a comfortable time routine, persevere against all distractions, and you will learn anything you sincerely want to learn.

So, to give yourself an edge, write here the day and hour you plan to return to your work:
See Introduction, Section 2, *Master the pronunciation system.*
How good is your English? Have you ever said *me* and then wondered if it shouldn’t have been *I*—or vice versa? Do you sometimes get a little confused about *lay* and *lie* or *who* and *whom*? Perhaps you are often a little less than certain about the distinction between *effect* and *affect, principal* and *principle, childish* and *childlike*?

Here is a series of quick tests that will show you how skillful you are in using the right word in the right place, that will give you a reliable indication of how your language ability compares with the average.
TEST I—EASY

If your English is every bit as good as average, you will have no difficulty making a proper choice in at least eight of the following ten sentences.

1. There is a beautiful moon out tonight and Estelle and I are going for a stroll—would you like to come along with (she and I, her and me?)
2. Your husband doesn’t believe that you are older than (I, me).
3. Maybe we’re not as rich as (they, them), but I bet we’re a lot happier.
4. Does your child still (lay, lie) down for a nap after lunch?
5. When we saw Mary openly flirting with Nellie’s husband, we (could, couldn’t) hardly believe our eyes.
6. You should (of, have) put more vermouth into the martini.
7. Does your company (leave, let) you have as long a lunch break as you would like?
8. Harriet feels that her (brothers-in-law, brother-in-laws) are impossible to get along with.
9. “What (kind of, kind of a) car are you looking for?” asked the salesman.
10. Mrs. White was delighted that the Fennells had invited John and (she, her) to their party.

Is your English up to par? HEre are the correct answers

1–her and me, 2–I, 3–they, 4–lie, 5–could, 6–have, 7–let, 8–brothers-in-law, 9–kind of, 10–her
TEST II—HARDER

Choose correctly in at least seven of the following problems to consider that your skill is distinctly above average—get all ten right to conclude that you rarely, if ever, make an error in grammar.

1. What (effect, affect) has the new administration’s policies had on investor confidence?
2. A feeling of one’s worth is one of the (principle, principal) goals of psychological therapy.
3. There’s no sense (in, of) carrying on that way.
4. I can’t remember (who, whom) it was.
5. The infant (lay, laid) quietly sucking its thumb.
6. No one but (she, her) ever made a perfect score on the test.
7. In the early days of frontier history, horse thieves were (hanged, hung).
8. Neither of your responses (are, is) satisfactory.
9. Either of these two small cars, if properly maintained, (is, are) sure to give over thirty miles per gallon in highway driving.
10. Tell (whoever, whomever) is waiting to come in.

Is your English above average? HERE ARE THE CORRECT ANSWERS

1–effect, 2–principal, 3–in, 4–who, 5–lay, 6–her, 7–hanged, 8–is, 9–is, 10–whoever
TEST III—HARDEST

Now you can discover how close you are to being an expert in English. The next ten sentences are no cinch—you will be acquitting yourself creditably if you check the correct word five times out of ten. And you have every right to consider yourself an expert if you get nine or ten right.

1. We have just interviewed an applicant (who, whom) the committee believes is best qualified for the position.
2. She is one of those gifted writers who (turns, turn) out one best seller after another.
3. Don’t sound so (incredulous, incredible); what I am saying is absolutely true.
4. We were totally (disinterested, uninterested) in the offer.
5. This recipe calls for two (cupsful, cupfuls) of sugar.
6. Are you trying to (infer, imply) by those words that he is not to be trusted?
7. We thought the actress to be (she, her), but we weren’t sure.
8. Was it (she, her) you were talking about?
9. Your criteria (is, are) not valid.
10. “It is I who (is, am) the only friend you’ve got,” she told him pointedly.

Are you an expert? HERE ARE THE CORRECT ANSWERS

1–who, 2–turn, 3–incredulous, 4–uninterested, 5–cupfuls, 6–imply, 7–her, 8–she, 9–are, 10–am
HOW TO TALK ABOUT DOCTORS

(Sessions 4–6)

TEASER PREVIEW

What is the title of the doctor who specializes in:
- internal medicine?
- female ailments?
- pregnancy and childbirth?
- the treatment and care of infants and young children?
- skin disorders?
- diseases of the eye?
- heart problems?
- the brain and nervous system?
- mental and emotional disturbances?
SESSION 4

In this chapter we discuss ten medical specialists—what they do, how they do it, what they are called.

IDEAS

1. what's wrong with you?

To find out what ails you and why, this specialist gives you a thorough physical examination, using an impressive array of tests: X ray, blood chemistry, urinalysis, cardiogram, and so on.

An internist

2. female troubles?

This specialist treats the female reproductive and sexual organs.

A gynecologist

3. having a baby?

This specialist delivers babies and takes care of the mother during and immediately after the period of her pregnancy.

An obstetrician

4. is your baby ill?

You know the common childhood maladies—mumps, whooping cough, chicken pox, measles. This specialist limits his practice to youngsters, taking care of babies directly after birth, supervising their diet and watching over their growth and development, giving them the series of inoculations that has done so much to decrease infant mortality, and soothing their anxious parents.

A pediatrician

5. skin clear?
You have heard the classic riddle: “What is the best use for pigskin?” Answer: “To keep the pig together.” Human skin has a similar purpose: it is, if we get down to fundamentals, what keeps us all in one piece. And our outer covering, like so many of our internal organs, is subject to diseases and infections of various kinds, running the gamut from simple acne and eczemas through impetigo, psoriasis, and cancer. There is a specialist who treats all such skin diseases.

A dermatologist

6. eyes okay?

The physician whose specialty is disorders of vision (myopia, astigmatism, cataracts, glaucoma, etc.) may prescribe glasses, administer drugs, or perform surgery.

An ophthalmologist

7. how are your bones?

This specialist deals with the skeletal structure of the body, treating bone fractures, slipped discs, clubfoot, curvature of the spine, dislocations of the hip, etc., and may correct a condition either by surgery or by the use of braces or other appliances.

An orthopedist

8. does your heart go pitter-patter?

This specialist treats diseases of the heart and circulatory system.

A cardiologist

9. is your brain working?

This physician specializes in the treatment of disorders of the brain, spinal cord, and the rest of the nervous system.

A neurologist

10. are you neurotic?

This specialist attempts to alleviate mental and emotional disturbances by means of various techniques, occasionally drugs or electroshock, more often private or group psychotherapy.

A psychiatrist
USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

Words take on a new color if you hear them in your own voice; they begin to belong to you more personally, more intimately, than if you merely hear or read them. As always, therefore, say the words aloud to take the first, crucial step toward complete mastery.

1. internist    in-TURN′-ist
2. gynecologist  gīn (or jin or jīn)-ə-KOL′-ə-jist
3. obstetrician  ob-stə-TRISH′-ən
4. pediatrician  pee′-dee-ə-TRISH′-ən
5. dermatologist dur-mə-TOL′-ə-jist
6. ophthalmologist off-thal-MOL′-ə-jist
7. orthopedist   awr-thə-PEE′-dist
8. cardiologist  kahr-dee-OL′-ə-jist
9. neurologist   noor-OL′-ə-jist
10. psychiatrist sī (or sə)-KĪ′-ə-trist

Can you work with the words?

Match each doctor to the field.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIELDS</th>
<th>DOCTORS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mental or emotional disturbances</td>
<td>a. internist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. nervous system</td>
<td>b. gynecologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. skin</td>
<td>c. obstetrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. diagnosis; internal organs</td>
<td>d. pediatrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. infants</td>
<td>e. dermatologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. female reproductive organs</td>
<td>f. ophthalmologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. eyes</td>
<td>g. orthopedist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. heart</td>
<td>h. cardiologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. pregnancy, childbirth</td>
<td>i. neurologist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10. skeletal system  

j. psychiatrist
Do you understand the words?

Is an internist an expert in diagnosis?
YES NO

Is a gynecologist familiar with the female reproductive organs?
YES NO

Does an obstetrician specialize in diseases of childhood?
YES NO

Does a pediatrician deliver babies?
YES NO

If you had a skin disease, would you visit a dermatologist?
YES NO

If you had trouble with your vision would you visit an orthopedist?
YES NO

Is an ophthalmologist an eye specialist?
YES NO

Does a cardiologist treat bone fractures?
YES NO

Is a neurologist a nerve specialist?
YES NO

If you were nervous, tense, overly anxious, constantly fearful for no apparent reasons, would a psychiatrist be the specialist to see?
YES NO
Can you recall the words?

Write the name of the specialist you might visit or be referred to:

for a suspected brain disorder
1. N_________

for a thorough internal checkup
2. I_________

if you have a skin disease
3. D_________

if you have a heart problem
4. C_________

if you are tense, fearful, insecure
5. P_________

if you are pregnant
6. O_________

for some disorder of the female reproductive organs
7. G_________

for a checkup for your two-month-old child
8. P_________

for faulty vision
9. O_________

for curvature of the spine
10. O_________
(End of session 4)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. inside you

*Internist* and *internal* derive from the same Latin root, *internus*, inside. The *internist* is a specialist in *internal* medicine, in the exploration of your *insides*. This physician determines the state of your internal organs in order to discover what’s happening *within* your body to cause the troubles you’re complaining of.

Do not confuse the *internist* with the *intern* (also spelled *interne*), who is a medical graduate serving an apprenticeship *inside* a hospital.

2. doctors for women

The word *gynecologist* is built on Greek *gyne*, woman, plus *logos*, science; etymologically, *gynecology* is the science (in actual use, the medical science) of women. Adjective: *gynecological* (gīn [or jin or jīn]-ə-kə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

*Obstetrician* derives from Latin *obstetrix*, midwife, which in turn has its source in a Latin verb meaning *to stand*—midwives stand in front of the woman in labor to aid in the delivery of the infant.

The suffix *-ician*, as in *obstetrician, physician, musician, magician, electrician*, etc., means expert.

*Obstetrics* (ob-STET′-riks) has only within the last 150 years become a respectable specialty. No further back than 1834, Professor William P. Dewees assumed the first chair of *obstetrics* at the University of Pennsylvania and had to brave considerable medical contempt and ridicule as a result—the delivery of children was then considered beneath the dignity of the medical profession.

Adjective: *obstetric* (ob-STET′-rik) or *obstetrical* (ob-STET′-rə-kəl).

3. children

*Pediatrician* is a combination of Greek *paidos*, child; *iatreia*, medical healing; and *-ician*, expert.

*Pediatrics* (pee-dee-AT′-riks), then, is by etymology the medical healing of a child. Adjective: *pediatric* (pee-dee-AT′-rik).

(The *ped-* you see in words like *pedestal, pedal,* and *pedestrian* is from the Latin *pedis*, foot, and despite the identical spelling in English has no relationship to Greek *paidos.*

*Pedagogy* (PED-ə-gō′-jee), which combines *paidos* with *agogos*, leading, is, etymologically, the leading of children. And to what do you lead them? To learning, to development, to
growth, to maturity. From the moment of birth, infants are led by adults—they are taught, first by parents and then by teachers, to be self-sufficient, to fit into the culture in which they are born. Hence, *pedagogy*, which by derivation means *the leading of a child*, refers actually to the principles and methods of teaching. College students majoring in education take certain standard *pedagogy* courses—the history of education; educational psychology; the psychology of adolescents; principles of teaching; etc. Adjective: *pedagogical* (ped-ə-GOJ′-ə-kəl).

A *pedagogue* (PED′-ə-gog) is versed in *pedagogy*. But *pedagogue* has an unhappy history. From its original, neutral meaning of *teacher*, it has deteriorated to the point where it refers, today, to a narrow-minded, strait-laced, old-fashioned, dogmatic teacher. It is a word of contempt and should be used with caution.

Like *pedagogue*, *demagogue* (DEM′-ə-gog) has also deteriorated in meaning. By derivation a leader (*agogos*) of the people (*demos*), a *demagogue* today is actually one who attempts, in essence, to *mislead* the people, a politician who foments discontent among the masses, rousing them to fever pitch by wild oratory, in an attempt to be voted into office.

Once elected, *demagogues* use political power to further their own personal ambitions or fortunes.

Many “leaders” of the past and present, in countries around the world, have been accused of *demagoguery* (dem-ə-GOG′-ə-ree). Adjective: *demagogic* (dem-ə-GOJ′-ik).

4. skin-deep

The *dermatologist*, whose specialty is *dermatology* (dur-mə-TOL′-ə-jee), is so named from Greek *derma*, skin. Adjective: *dermatological* (dur′-mə-tə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

See the syllables derma in any English word and you will know there is some reference to skin—for example, a *hypodermic* (hī-pə-DUR′-mik) needle penetrates *under* (Greek, hypos) the skin; the *epidermis* (ep-ə-DUR′-mis) is the outermost layer of skin; a *taxidermist* (TAKS′-ə-dur-mist), whose business is *taxidermy* (TAKS′-ə-dur-mee), prepares, stuffs, and mounts the skins of animals; a *pachyderm* (PAK′-ə-durm) is an animal with an unusually thick skin, like an elephant, hippopotamus, or rhinoceros; and *dermatitis* (dur-mə-TĪ′-tis) is the general name for any skin inflammation, irritation, or infection.

5. the eyes have it

*Ophthalmologist*—note the *ph* preceding *th*—is from Greek *ophthalmos*, eye, plus *logos*, science or study. The specialty is *ophthalmology* (off′-thal-MOL′-ə-jee), the adjective *ophthalmological* (off′-thal-mə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

An earlier title for this physician, still occasionally used, is *oculist* (OK′-yə-list), from Latin *culus*, eye, a root on which the following English words are also built:

1. *ocular* (OK′-yə-lər)—an adjective that refers to the eye
2. *monocle* (MON′-ə-kəl)—a lens for one (monos) eye, sported by characters in old movies
as a symbol of the British so-called upper class

3. binoculars (bə-NOK'-yə-lərz)—field glasses that increase the range of two (bi-) eyes

4. And, strangely enough, inoculate (in-OK'-yə-layt'), a word commonly misspelled with two n’s. When you are inoculated against a disease, an “eye,” puncture, or hole is made in your skin, through which serum is injected.

Do not confuse the ophthalmologist or oculist, a medical specialist, with two other practitioners who deal with the eye—the optometrist (op-TOM'-ə-trist) and optician (op-TISH'-ən).

Optometrists are not physicians, and do not perform surgery or administer drugs; they measure vision, test for glaucoma, and prescribe and fit glasses.

Opticians fill an optometrist’s or ophthalmologist’s prescription, grinding lenses according to specifications; they do not examine patients.

Optometrist combines Greek opsis, optikos, sight or vision, with metron, measurement—the optometrist, by etymology, is one who measures vision. The specialty is optometry (op-TOM'-ə-tree).

Optician is built on opsis, optikos, plus -ician, expert. The specialty is optics (OP'-tiks).

Adjectives: optometric (op-tə-MET'-rik) or optometrical (op-tə-MET'-rə-kəl), optical (OP'-tə-kəl).

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. internus</td>
<td>inside</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>_______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. gyne</td>
<td>woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>_______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. obstetrix</td>
<td>midwife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>_______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. paidos</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>_______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. pedis</td>
<td>foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>_______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. agogos</td>
<td>leading, leader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>_______</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. demos</td>
<td>people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. *derma*  skin
9. *hypos*  under
10. *ophthalmos*  eye
11. *oculus*  eye
12. *monos*  one
13. *bi-*  two
14. *-ician*  expert
15. *opsis, optikos*  vision, sight
16. *metron*  measurement

### USING THE WORDS

**Can you pronounce the words? (I)**

1. *intern (e)*  IN'-turn  
   - gīn-ə-KOL'-ə-jee, jin-ə-KOL'-ə-jee, or jīn-ə-KOL'-ə-jee
2. *gynecology*  
   - gīn-ə-kə-LOJ'-ə-kəl, jin-ə-kə-LOJ'-ə-kəl or jīn-ə-kə-LOJ'-ə-kəl
3. *gynecological*  
4. *obstetrics*  ob-STET'-riks
5. obstetric  ob-STET′-rik
6. obstetrical  ob-STET′-rə-kəl
7. pediatrics  pee-dee-AT′-riks
8. pediatric  pee-dee-AT′-rik
9. pedagogy  PED′-ə-gō-jeε
10. pedagogical  ped-ə-GOJ′-ə-kəl
11. pedagogue  PED′-ə-gog
12. demagogue  DEM′-ə-gog
13. demagoguery  dem-ə-GOJ′-ə-ree
14. demagogic  dem-ə-GOJ′-ik

**Can you pronounce the words? (II)**

1. dermatology  dur-mə-TOL′-ə-jeε
2. dermatological  dur′-mə-tə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
3. hypodermic  hī-pə-DURM′-ik
4. epidermis  ep-ə-DUR′-mis
5. taxidermist  TAKS′-ə-dur-mist
6. taxidermy  TAKS′-ə-dur-mee
7. pachyderm  PAK′-ə-durm
8. dermatitis  dur-mə-TĪ′-tis
9. ophthalmology  off-thal-MOL′-ə-jeε
10. ophthalmological  off′-thal-mə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
11. oculist  OK′-yə-list
12. ocular  OK′-yə-lər
13. monocle  MON′-ə-kəl
14. binoculars  bə-NOK′-yə-lərz
15. inoculate  in-OK′-yə-layt′
16. optometrist  op-TOM′-ə-trist
17. optometry  op-TOM′-ə-tree
18. optometric  op-tə-METˈrik
19. optometrical  op-tə-METˈr-ə-kəl
20. optician  op-TISHˈ-ən
21. optics  OPˈ-tiks
22. optical  OP-tə-kəl

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. gynecology  a. principles of teaching
2. obstetrics  b. stuffing of skins of animals
3. pediatrics  c. specialty dealing with the delivery of newborn infants
4. pedagogy  d. stirring up discontent among the masses
5. demagoguery  e. treatment of skin diseases
6. dermatology  f. specialty dealing with women’s diseases
7. taxidermy  g. specialty dealing with the treatment of children
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. hypodermic  a. elephant
2. epidermis  b. eye doctor
3. pachyderm  c. under the skin
4. dermatitis  d. one who measures vision
5. ophthalmologist  e. lens grinder
6. optometrist  f. outer layer of skin
7. optician  g. inflammation of the skin
Do you understand the words?

Does a treatise on *obstetrics* deal with childbirth?  
YES   NO

Does *gynecology* deal with the female reproductive organs?  
YES   NO

Is *pediatrics* concerned with the diseases of old age?  
YES   NO

Does *pedagogy* refer to teaching?  
YES   NO

Is a *pedagogue* an expert teacher?  
YES   NO

Is a *demagogue* interested in the welfare of the people?  
YES   NO

Is a lion a *pachyderm*?  
YES   NO

Is the *epidermis* one of the layers of the skin?  
YES   NO

Is *dermatitis* an inflammation of one of the limbs?  
YES   NO

Is a *taxidermist* a medical practitioner?  
YES   NO

Is an *ophthalmologist* a medical doctor?  
YES   NO

Is an *optometrist* a medical doctor?  
YES   NO

Does an *optician* prescribe glasses?  
YES   NO
Can you recall the words?

specialty of child delivery
  1. O_________________
outer layer of skin
  2. E_________________
principles of teaching
  3. P_________________
thick-skinned animal
  4. P_________________
skin inflammation
  5. D_________________
one who foments political discontent
  6. D_________________
one who sells optical equipment
  7. O_________________
medical graduate serving his apprenticeship
  8. I_________________
treatment of childhood diseases
  9. P_________________
practice of stirring up political dissatisfaction for purely personal gain
10. D_________________
one who stuffs the skins of animals
11. T_________________
another title for ophthalmologist
12. O_________________
treatment of female ailments
13. G_________________
medical specialty relating to diseases of the eye
14. O_________________
one-lens eyeglass
15. M_________________
pertaining to the eye
16. O_________________
one who measures vision

(End of Session 5)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. the straighteners

The orthopedist is so called from the Greek roots orthos, straight or correct, and paidos, child. The orthopedist, by etymology, straightens children. The term was coined in 1741 by the author of a textbook on the prevention of childhood diseases—at that time the correction of spinal curvature in children was a main concern of practitioners of orthopedics (awr-thə-PEE′-diks).

Today the specialty treats deformities, injuries, and diseases of the bones and joints (of adults as well as children, of course), often by surgical procedures.

Adjective: orthopedic (awr-thə-PEE′-dik).

Orthodontia (awr-thə-DON′-shə), the straightening of teeth, is built on orthos plus odontos, tooth. The orthodontist (awr-thə-DON′-tist) specializes in improving your “bite,” retracting “buck teeth,” and by means of braces and other techniques seeing to it that every molar, incisor, bicuspid, etc. is exactly where it belongs in your mouth.

Adjective: orthodontic (awr-thə-DON′-tik).

2. the heart

Cardiologist combines Greek kardia, heart, and logos, science.

The specialty is cardiology (kahr-dee-OL′-ə-jee), the adjective cardiological (kahr′-dee-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

So a cardiac (KAHR′-dee-ak) condition refers to some malfunctioning of the heart; a cardiogram (KAHR′-dee-ə-gram′) is an electrically produced record of the heartbeat. The instrument that produces this record is called a cardiograph (KAHR′-dee-ə-graf′).

3. the nervous system

Neurologist derives from Greek neuron, nerve, plus logos, science.

Specialty: neurology (noo-OL′-ə-jee); adjective: neurological (noo-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

Neuralgia (noo-AL′-ja) is acute pain along the nerves and their branches; the word comes from neuron plus algos, pain.

Neuritis (noo-Ī-tis), is inflammation of the nerves.

Neurosis (noo-Ō′-sis), combining neuron with -osis, a suffix meaning abnormal or diseased condition, is not, despite its etymology, a disorder of the nerves, but rather, as described by the late Eric Berne, a psychiatrist, “… an illness characterized by excessive use of energy
for unproductive purposes so that personality development is hindered or stopped. A man who spends most of his time worrying about his health, counting his money, plotting revenge, or washing his hands, can hope for little emotional growth.”

Neurotic (nôr-OT′-ik) is both the adjective form and the term for a person suffering from neurosis.

4. the mind

A neurosis is not a form of mental unbalance. A full-blown mental disorder is called a psychosis (sî-KÔ′-sis), a word built on Greek psyche, spirit, soul, or mind, plus -osis.

A true psychotic (sî-KOT′-ik) has lost contact with reality—at least with reality as most of us perceive it, though no doubt psychotic (note that this word, like neurotic, is both a noun and an adjective) people have their own form of reality.

Built on psyche plus iatreia, medical healing, a psychiatrist by etymology is a mind-healer. The specialty is psychiatry (sî- or sê-KÎ-ə-tree); the adjective is psychiatric (sî-kee-AT′-rik).

Pediatrics, as you know, is also built on iatreia, as is podiatry (pê-DÎ′-ə-tree), discussed in the next chapter, and geriatrics (jair′-ee-AT′-riks), the specialty dealing with the particular medical needs of the elderly. (This word combines iatreia with Greek geras, old age.)

The specialist is a geriatrician (jair′-ee-ə-TRISH′-ən), the adjective is geriatric (jair′-ee-AT′-rik).

REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. orthos</td>
<td>straight, correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. paidos (ped-)</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. odontos</td>
<td>tooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. kardia</td>
<td>heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. logos</td>
<td>science; study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. neuron</td>
<td>nerve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. algos
EXAMPLE __________
pain

8. -osis
EXAMPLE __________
abnormal or diseased condition

9. -itis
EXAMPLE __________
inflammation

10. psyche
EXAMPLE __________
spirit, soul, mind

11. iatreia
EXAMPLE __________
medical healing

12. geras
EXAMPLE __________
old age

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words (I)

1. orthopedics awr-thə-PEE′-diks
2. orthopedic awr-thə-PEE′-dik
3. orthodontia awr-thə-DON′-shə
4. orthodontist awr-thə-DON′-tist
5. orthodontic awr-thə-DON′-tik
6. cardiology kahr-dee-OL′-ə-jee
7. cardiological kahr′-dee-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
8. cardiac KAHR′-dee-ak
9. cardiogram KAHR′-dee-ə-gram′
10. cardiograph KAHR′-dee-ə-graf′

Can you pronounce the words? (II)
1.  neurology  nər-OLˈ-ə-jee
2.  neurological  nər-ə-LOJˈ-ə-kəl
3.  neuralgia  nər-ALˈ-jə
4.  neuritis  nər-Īˈ-tis
5.  neurosis  nər-Ōˈ-sis
6.  neurotic  nər-OTˈ-ik
7.  psychosis  sī-KŌˈ-sis
8.  psychotic  sī-KOTˈ-ik
9.  psychiatry  sī- or sə-KĬˈ-ə-tree
10. psychiatric  sī-kee-ATˈ-rik
11. geriatrics  jairˈ-ee-ATˈ-riks
12. geriatrician  jairˈ-ee-ə-TRISHˈ-ən
13. geriatric  jairˈ-ee-ATˈ-rik

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. orthopedics a. nerve pain
2. orthodontia b. specialty dealing with medical problems of the elderly
3. neuralgia c. straightening of teeth
4. neuritis d. inflammation of the nerves
5. geriatrics e. treatment of skeletal deformities
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. cardiogram  a. record of heart beats
2. cardiograph  b. mental unbalance
3. neurosis       c. emotional disturbance
4. psychosis     d. treatment of personality disorders
5. psychiatry    e. instrument for recording heartbeats
Do you understand the words?

A gynecologist’s patients are mostly men.
TRUE   FALSE

Ophthalmology is the study of eye diseases.
TRUE   FALSE

Orthopedics is the specialty dealing with the bones and joints.
TRUE   FALSE

A cardiac patient has a heart ailment.
TRUE   FALSE

A person with a bad “bite” may profit from orthodontia.
TRUE   FALSE

Neuralgia is a disease of the bones.
TRUE   FALSE

A neurosis is the same as a psychosis.
TRUE   FALSE

Neuritis is inflammation of the nerves.
TRUE   FALSE

Psychiatry is a medical specialty that deals with mental, emotional, and personality disturbances.
TRUE   FALSE

A cardiograph is a device for recording heartbeats.
TRUE   FALSE

Psychiatric treatment is designed to relieve tensions, fears, and insecurities.
TRUE   FALSE

A doctor who specializes in pediatrics has very old patients.
TRUE   FALSE

A geriatrician has very young patients.
TRUE   FALSE
Can you recall the words?

specialist who straightens teeth
  1. O_________

nerve pain
  2. N_________

medical specialty dealing with bones and joints
  3. O_________

medical specialty dealing with emotional disturbances and mental illness
  4. P_________

inflammation of the nerves
  5. N_________

emotional or personality disorder
  6. N_________

mentally unbalanced
  7. P_________

government
  8. C_________

specialty dealing with medical problems of the elderly
  9. G_________

instrument that records heart action
 10. C_________

record produced by such an instrument
 11. C_________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

1. Specialist in female ailments:
   (a) obstetrician, (b) gynecologist, (c) dermatologist
2. Specialist in children’s diseases:
   (a) orthopedist, (b) pediatrician, (c) internist
3. Specialist in eye diseases:
   (a) cardiologist, (b) ophthalmologist, (c) optician
4. Specialist in emotional disorders:
   (a) neurologist, (b) demagogue, (c) psychiatrist
5. Pertaining to medical treatment of the elderly:
   (a) neurological, (b) obstetric, (c) geriatric
6. Straightening of teeth:
   (a) orthodontia, (b) orthopedic, (c) optometry
7. Personality disorder:
   (a) neuritis, (b) neuralgia, (c) neurosis
8. Mentally unbalanced:
   (a) neurotic, (b) psychotic, (c) cardiac
9. Principles of teaching:
   (a) demagoguery, (b) pedagogy, (c) psychosis
B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. internus</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>internist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. paidos (ped-)</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>pediatrician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pedis</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>pedestrian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. agogos</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>pedagogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. demos</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>demagogue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. derma</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>dermatologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. hypos</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>hypodermic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. ophthalmos</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>ophthalmologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. oculus</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>monocle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. opsis, optikos</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>optician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. metron</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>optometrist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. orthos</td>
<td>___________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. odontos
EXAMPLE orthodontist

14. kardia
EXAMPLE cardiologist

15. logos
EXAMPLE anthropologist

16. neuron
EXAMPLE neurologist

17. algos
EXAMPLE neuralgia

18. psyche
EXAMPLE psychiatrist

19. iatreia
EXAMPLE psychiatry

20. geras
EXAMPLE geriatrics
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. Thinking of the roots odontos and paidos (spelled ped- in English), figure out the meaning of pedodontia: ____________________

2. Recall the roots kardia and algos. What is the meaning of cardialgia? ____________________

3. Of odontalgia? ____________________

4. Nostos is the Greek word for a return (home). Can you combine this root with algos, pain, to construct the English word meaning homesickness? ____________________

(Answers in Chapter 18)

TWO KEYS TO SUCCESS: SELF-DISCIPLINE AND PERSISTENCE

You can achieve a superior vocabulary in a phenomenally short time—given self-discipline and persistence.

The greatest aid in building self-discipline is, as I have said, a matter of devising a practical and comfortable schedule for yourself and then keeping to that schedule.

Make sure to complete at least one session each time you pick up the book, and always decide exactly when you will continue with your work before you put the book down.

There may be periods of difficulty—then is the time to exert the greatest self-discipline, the most determined persistence.

For every page that you study will help you attain a mastery over words; every day that you work will add to your skill in understanding and using words.

(End of Session 6)
RANDOM NOTES ON MODERN USAGE

English grammar is confusing enough as it is—what makes it doubly confounding is that it is slowly but continually changing.

This means that some of the strict rules you memorized so painfully in your high school or college English courses may no longer be completely valid.

Following such outmoded principles, you may think you are speaking “perfect” English, and instead you may sound stuffy and pedantic.

The problem boils down to this: If grammatical usage is gradually becoming more liberal, where does educated, unaffected, informal speech end? And where does illiterate, ungrammatical speech begin?

The following notes on current trends in modern usage are intended to help you come to a decision about certain controversial expressions. As you read each sentence, pay particular attention to the italicized word or words. Does the usage square with your own language patterns? Would you be willing to phrase your thought in just terms? Decide whether the sentence is right or wrong, then compare your conclusion with the opinion given in the explanatory paragraphs that follow the test.

TEST YOURSELF

If you drink too many vodka martinis, you will surely get sick.

RIGHT   WRONG

Have you got a dollar?

RIGHT   WRONG

No one loves you except I.

RIGHT   WRONG

Please lay down.

RIGHT   WRONG

Who do you love?

RIGHT   WRONG

Neither of these cars are worth the money.

RIGHT   WRONG

The judge sentenced the murderer to be hung.

RIGHT   WRONG

Mother, can I go out to play?
Take two spoonsful of this medicine every three hours.

Your words seem to infer that Jack is a liar.

I will be happy to go to the concert with you.

It is me.

Peggy and Karen are alumni of the same high school.

I would like to ask you a question.

1. If you drink too many vodka martinis, you will surely get sick.
   RIGHT. The puristic objection is that get has only one meaning—namely, obtain. However, as any modern dictionary will attest, get has scores of different meanings, one of the most respectable of which is become. You can get tired, get dizzy, get drunk, or get sick—and your choice of words will offend no one but a pedant.

2. Have you got a dollar?
   RIGHT. If purists get a little pale at the sound of “get sick,” they turn chalk white when they hear have got as a substitute for have. But the fact is that have got is an established American form of expression. Jacques Barzun, noted author and literary critic, says: “Have you got is good idiomatic English—I use it in speech without thinking about it and would write it if colloquialism seemed appropriate to the passage.”

3. No ones loves you except I.
   WRONG. In educated speech, me follows the preposition except. This problem is troublesome because, to the unsophisticated, the sentence sounds as if it can be completed to “No one loves you, except I do,” but current educated usage adheres to the technical rule that a preposition requires an objective pronoun (me).

4. Please lay down.
   WRONG. Liberal as grammar has become, there is still no sanction for using lay with the meaning of recline. Lay means to place, as in “Lay your hand on mine.” Lie is the correct choice.

5. Who do you love?
   RIGHT. “The English language shows some disposition to get rid of whom altogether, and unquestionably it would be a better language with whom gone.” So wrote Janet Rankin Aiken, of Columbia University, way back in 1936. Today, many decades later, the “disposition” has become a full-fledged force.

   The rules for who and whom are complicated, and few educated speakers have the time,
patience, or expertise to bother with them. Use the democratic *who* in your everyday speech whenever it sounds right.

6. Neither of these cars *are* worth the money.

**Wrong.** The temptation to use *are* in this sentence is, I admit, practically irresistible. However, “neither of” means “neither *one* of” and *is*, therefore, is the preferable verb.

7. The judge sentenced the murderer to be *hung*.

**Wrong.** A distinction is made, in educated speech, between *hung* and *hanged*. A picture is *hung*, but a person is *hanged*—that is, if such action is intended to bring about an untimely demise.

8. Mother, *can* I go out to play?

**Right.** If you insist that your child say *may*, and nothing but *may*, when asking for permission, you may be considered puristic. *Can* is not discourteous, incorrect, or vulgar—and the newest editions of the authoritative dictionaries fully sanction the use of *can* in requesting rights, privileges, or permission.

9. Take two *spoonsful* of this medicine every three hours.

**Wrong.** There is a strange affection, on the part of some people, for *spoonsful* and *cupsful*, even though *spoonsful* and *cupsful* do not exist as acceptable words. The plurals are *spoonfuls* and *cupfuls*.

I am taking for granted, of course, that you are using one spoon and filling it twice. If, for secret reasons of your own, you prefer to take your medicine in two separate spoons, you may then properly speak of “two *spoons full* (not *spoonsful*) of medicine.”

10. Your words seem to *infer* that Jack is a liar.

**Wrong.** *Infer* does not mean *hint* or *suggest*. *Imply* is the proper word; to *infer* is to draw a conclusion from another’s words.

11. I *will* be happy to go to the concert with you.

**Right.** In informal speech, you need no longer worry about the technical and unrealistic distinctions between *shall* and *will*. The theory of modern grammarians is that *shall-will* differences were simply invented out of whole cloth by the textbook writers of the 1800s. As the editor of the scholarly *Modern Language Forum* at the University of California has stated, “The artificial distinction between *shall* and *will* to designate futurity is a superstition that has neither a basis in historical grammar nor the sound sanction of universal usage.”

12. It is *me*.

**Right.** This “violation” of grammatical “law” has been completely sanctioned by current usage. When the late Winston Churchill made a nationwide radio address from New Haven, Connecticut, many, many years ago, his opening sentence was: “This is *me*, Winston Churchill.” I imagine that the purists who were listening fell into a deep state of shock at these words, but of course Churchill was simply using the kind of down-to-earth English that had long since become standard in informal educated speech.

13. Go *slow*.

**Right.** “Go *slow*” is not, and never has been, incorrect English—every authority concedes that *slow* is an adverb as well as an adjective. Rex Stout, well-known writer of mystery novels and creator of Detective Nero Wolfe, remarked: “Not only do I use and approve of the idiom Go *slow*, but if I find myself with people who do not, I leave quick.”

14. Peggy and Karen are *alumni* of the same high school.
As Peggy and Karen are obviously women, we call them *alumnae* (ə-LUM′-nee); only male graduates are *alumni* (ə-LUM′-nī).

15. *I would* like to ask you a question.

**RIGHT.** In current American usage, *would* may be used with *I*, though old-fashioned rules demand *I should*.

Indeed, in modern speech, *should* is almost entirely restricted to expressing probability, duty, or responsibility.

As in the case of the charitable-looking dowager who was approached by a seedy character seeking a handout.

“Madam,” he whined, “I haven’t eaten in five days.”

“My good man,” the matron answered with great concern, “you should force yourself!”
TEASER PREVIEW

What practitioner:
is a student of human behavior?
follows the techniques devised by Sigmund Freud?
straightens teeth?
measures vision?
grinds lenses?
treats minor ailments of the feet?
analyzes handwriting?
deals with the problems of aging?
uses manipulation and massage as curative techniques?
An ancient Greek mused about the meaning of life, and philosophy was born. The first Roman decided to build a road instead of cutting a path through the jungle, and engineering came into existence. One day in primitive times, a human being lent to another whatever then passed for money and got back his original investment plus a little more—and banking had started.

Most people spend part of every workday at some gainful employment, honest or otherwise, and in so doing often contribute their little mite to the progress of the world.

We explore in this chapter the ideas behind people’s occupations—and the words that translate these ideas into verbal symbols.

**IDEAS**

1. **behavior**

   By education and training, this practitioner is an expert in the dark mysteries of human behavior—what makes people act as they do, why they have certain feelings, how their personalities were formed—in short, what makes them tick. Such a professional is often employed by industries, schools, and institutions to devise means for keeping workers productive and happy, students well-adjusted, and inmates contented. With a state license, this person may also do private or group therapy.

   *A psychologist*

2. **worries, fears, conflicts**

   This practitioner is a physician, psychiatrist, or psychologist who has been specially trained in the techniques devised by Sigmund Freud, encouraging you to delve into that part of your mind called “the unconscious.” By reviewing the experiences, traumas, feelings, and thoughts of your earlier years, you come to a better understanding of your present worries, fears, conflicts, repressions, insecurities, and nervous tensions—thus taking the first step in coping with them. Treatment, consisting largely in listening to, and helping you to interpret the meaning of, your free-flowing ideas, is usually given in frequent sessions that may well go on for a year or more.

   *A psychoanalyst*

3. **teeth**
This practitioner is a dentist who has taken postgraduate work in the straightening of teeth.

An orthodontist

4. eyes

This practitioner measures your vision and prescribes the type of glasses that will give you a new and more accurate view of the world.

An optometrist

5. glasses

This practitioner grinds lenses according to the specifications prescribed by your optometrist or ophthalmologist, and may also deal in other kinds of optical goods.

An optician

6. bones and blood vessels

This practitioner is a member of the profession that originated in 1874, when Andrew T. Still devised a drugless technique of curing diseases by massage and other manipulative procedures, a technique based on the theory that illness may be caused by the undue pressure of displaced bones on nerves and blood vessels.

Training is equal to that of physicians, and in most states these practitioners may also use the same methods as, and have the full rights and privileges of, medical doctors.

An osteopath

7. joints and articulations

The basic principle of this practitioner’s work is the maintenance of the structural and functional integrity of the nervous system. Treatment consists of manipulating most of the articulations of the body, especially those connected to the spinal column. Licensed and legally recognized in forty-five states, this professional has pursued academic studies and training that parallel those of the major healing professions.

A chiropractor

8. feet

This practitioner treats minor foot ailments—corns, calluses, bunions, fallen arches, etc., and may perform minor surgery.
9. writing

This practitioner analyzes handwriting to determine character, personality, or aptitudes, and is often called upon to verify the authenticity of signatures, written documents, etc.

A graphologist

10. getting old

This social scientist deals with the financial, economic, sexual, social, retirement, and other non-medical problems of the elderly.

A gerontologist

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. psychologist  si-KOL′-ə-jist
2. psychoanalyst  si-kō-AN′-ə-list
3. orthodontist  awr-thə-DON′-tist
4. optometrist  op-TOM′-ə-trist
5. optician  op-TISH′-ən
6. osteopath  OS′-tee-ə-path
7. chiropractor  KĪ′-rə-prək′-tər
8. podiatrist  pə-DĪ′-ə-trist
9. graphologist  graf-OL′-ə-jist
10. gerontologist  jair′-ən-TOL′-ə-jist

Can you work with the words?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PRACTITIONERS</th>
<th>INTERESTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. psychologist</td>
<td>a. vision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. psychoanalyst</td>
<td>b. “the unconscious”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Medical Professional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>orthodontist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>optometrist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>optician</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>osteopath</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>chiropractor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>podiatrist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>graphologist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>gerontologist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

A psychologist must also be a physician.
TRUE FALSE
A psychoanalyst follows Freudian techniques.
TRUE FALSE
An orthodontist specializes in straightening teeth.
TRUE FALSE
An optometrist prescribes and fits glasses.
TRUE FALSE
An optician may prescribe glasses.
TRUE FALSE
An osteopath may use massage and other manipulative techniques.
TRUE FALSE
A chiropractor has a medical degree.
TRUE FALSE
A podiatrist may perform major surgery.
TRUE FALSE
A graphologist analyzes character from handwriting.
TRUE FALSE
A gerontologist is interested in the non-medical problems of adolescence.
TRUE FALSE
Can you recall the words?

delves into the unconscious
1. P__________

uses either massage and manipulation or other standard medical procedures to treat illness
2. O__________

takes care of minor ailments of the feet
3. P__________

straightens teeth
4. O__________

analyzes handwriting
5. G__________
grinds lenses and sells optical goods
6. O__________
deals with the non-medical problems of aging
7. G__________

manipulates articulations connected to the spinal column
8. C__________

studies and explains human behavior
9. P__________

measures vision and prescribes glasses
10. O__________
(End of Session 7)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. the mental life

*Psychologist* is built upon the same Greek root as *psychiatrist*—*psyche*, spirit, soul, or mind. In *psychiatrist*, the combining form is *iatreia*, medical healing. In *psychologist*, the combining form is *logos*, science or study; a *psychologist*, by etymology, is one who studies the mind.

The field is *psychology* (si-KOL′-ə-jee), the adjective *psychological* (si′-kə-LOJ′-ə-kal).

*Psyche* (SĪ′-kee) is also an English word in its own right—it designates the mental life, the spiritual or non-physical aspect of one’s existence. The adjective *psychic* (SĪ′-kik) refers to phenomena or qualities that cannot be explained in purely physical terms. People may be called *psychic* if they seem to possess a sixth sense, a special gift of mind reading, or any mysterious aptitudes that cannot be accounted for logically. A person’s disturbance is *psychic* if it is emotional or mental, rather than physical.

*Psyche* combines with the Greek *pathos*, suffering or disease, to form *psychopathic* (si-kə-PATH′-ik), an adjective that describes someone suffering from a severe mental or emotional disorder. The noun is *psychopathy* (si′-KOP′-ə-thee).

The root *psyche* combines with Greek *soma*, body, to form *psychosomatic* (si′-kō-sə-MAT′-ik), an adjective that delineates the powerful influence that the mind, especially the unconscious, has on bodily diseases. Thus, a person who fears the consequence of being present at a certain meeting will suddenly develop a bad cold or backache, or even be injured in a traffic accident, so that his appearance at this meeting is made impossible. It’s a real cold, it’s far from an imaginary backache, and of course one cannot in any sense doubt the reality of the automobile that injured him. Yet, according to the *psychosomatic* theory of medicine, his unconscious made him susceptible to the cold germs, caused the backache, or forced him into the path of the car.

A *psychosomatic* disorder actually exists insofar as symptoms are concerned (headache, excessive urination, pains, paralysis, heart palpitations), yet there is no organic cause within the body. The cause is within the *psyche*, the mind. Dr. Flanders Dunbar, in *Mind and Body*, gives a clear and exciting account of the interrelationship between emotions and diseases.

*Psychoanalysis* (si′-kō-ə-NAL′-ə-sis) relies on the technique of deeply, exhaustively probing into the unconscious, a technique developed by Sigmund Freud. In oversimplified terms, the general principle of *psychoanalysis* is to guide the patient to an awareness of the deep-seated, unconscious causes of anxieties, fears, conflicts, and tension. Once found, exposed to the light of day, and thoroughly understood, claim the *psychoanalysts*, these causes may vanish like a light snow that is exposed to strong sunlight.

Consider an example: You have asthma, let us say, and your doctor can find no physical basis for your ailment. So you are referred to a *psychoanalyst* (or *psychiatrist* or clinical
psychologist who practices psychoanalytically oriented therapy).

With your therapist you explore your past life, dig into your unconscious, and discover, let us say for the sake of argument, that your mother or father always used to set for you impossibly high goals. No matter what you accomplished in school, it was not good enough—in your mother’s or father’s opinion (and such opinions were always made painfully clear to you), you could do better if you were not so lazy. As a child you built up certain resentments and anxieties because you seemed unable to please your parent—and (this will sound farfetched, but it is perfectly possible) as a result you became asthmatic. How else were you going to get the parental love, the approbation, the attention you needed and that you felt you were not receiving?

In your sessions with your therapist, you discover that your asthma is emotionally, rather than organically, based—your ailment is psychogenic (sī’-kō-JEN’-ik), of psychic origin, or (the terms are used more or less interchangeably although they differ somewhat in definition) psychosomatic, resulting from the interaction of mind and body. (Psychogenic is built on psyche plus Greek genesis, birth or origin.)

And your treatment? No drugs, no surgery—these may help the body, not the emotions. Instead, you “work out” (this is the term used in psychoanalytic parlance) early trauma in talk, in remembering, in exploring, in interpreting, in reliving childhood experiences. And if your asthma is indeed psychogenic (or psychosomatic), therapy will very likely help you; your attacks may cease, either gradually or suddenly.

Freudian therapy is less popular today than formerly; many newer therapies—Gestalt, bioenergetics, transactional analysis, to name only a few—claim to produce quicker results.

In any case, psychotherapy (sī-kō-THAIR’-ə-pee) of one sort or another is the indicated treatment for psychogenic (or psychosomatic) disorders, or for any personality disturbances. The practitioner is a psychotherapist (sī-kō-THAIR’-ə-pist) or therapist, for short; the adjective is psychotherapeutic (sī-kō-thair′-ə-PYθ′-tik).

**REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. psyche</td>
<td>spirit, soul, mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. iatreia</td>
<td>medical healing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ic</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. soma</td>
<td>body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. *genesis*  
**ENGLISH WORD**  
birth, origin

6. *pathos*  
**ENGLISH WORD**  
suffering, disease

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words?**

1. *psychology*  
   **si-KOL′-ə-jee**

2. *psychological*  
   **si′-kə-LOJ′-ə-kəl**

3. *psyche*  
   **SĪ′-kee**

4. *psychic*  
   **SĪ′-kik**

5. *psychopathic*  
   **si′-kə-PATH′-ik**

6. *psychopathy*  
   **si-KOP′-ə-thee**

7. *psychopath*  
   **SĪ′-kə-path**

8. *psychosomatic*  
   **si′-kə-sə-MAT′-ik**

9. *psychoanalysis*  
   **si′-kə-NAL′-ə-sis**

10. *psychoanalytic*  
    **si-kə-an′-ə-LIT′-ik**

11. *psychogenic*  
    **si-kə-JEN′-ik**

12. *psychotherapy*  
    **si-kə-THAIR′-ə-pee**

13. *psychotherapist*  
    **si-kə-THAIR′-ə-pist**

14. *psychotherapeutic*  
    **si-kə-thair′-ə-PYOO′-tik**

**Can you work with the words?**

1. *psychology*  
   a. mental or emotional disturbance

2. *psyche*  
   b. psychological treatment based on Freudian techniques

3. *psychic*  
   c. general term for psychological treatment

4. *psychopathy*  
   d. originating in the mind or emotions
5. psychosomatic e. one’s inner or mental life, or self-image
6. psychoanalysis f. study of the human mind and behavior
7. psychogenic g. describing the interaction of mind and body
8. psychotherapy h. pertaining to the mind; extrasensory
9. psychopath i. person lacking in social conscience or inner censor
Do you understand the words?

*Psychological* treatment aims at sharpening the intellect.
TRUE   FALSE

*Psychic* phenomena can be explained on rational or physical grounds
TRUE   FALSE

*Psychopathic* personalities are normal and healthy.
TRUE   FALSE

A *psychosomatic* symptom is caused by organic disease.
TRUE   FALSE

Every therapist uses *psychoanalysis*.
TRUE   FALSE

A *psychogenic* illness originates in the mind or emotions.
TRUE   FALSE

A *psychotherapist* must have a medical degree.
TRUE   FALSE

*Psychoanalytically* oriented therapy uses Freudian techniques.
TRUE   FALSE

A *psychopath* is often a criminal.
TRUE   FALSE
Can you recall the words?

one’s inner or mental life, or self-image
 1. P________

the adjective that denotes the interactions, especially in illness, between mind and body
 2. P________

mentally or emotionally disturbed
 3. P________

study of behavior
 4. P________

extrasensory
 5. P________

treatment by Freudian techniques
 6. P________

pertaining to the study of behavior (adj.)
 7. P________
of mental or emotional origin
 8. P________

general term for treatment of emotional disorders
 9. P________

antisocial person
10. P________
(End of Session 8)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. the whole tooth

*Orthodontist*, as we discovered in Chapter 4, is built on *orthos*, straight, correct, plus *odontos*, tooth.

A *pedodontist* (pee′-dō-DON′-tist) specializes in the care of children’s teeth—the title is constructed from *paidos*, child, plus *odontos*. The specialty: *pedodontia* (pee′-dō-DON′-sha); the adjective: *pedodontic* (pee′-dō-DON′-tik).

A *periodontist* (pair′-ee-ō-DON′-tist) is a gum specialist—the term combines *odontos* with the prefix peri-, around, surrounding. (As a quick glance in the mirror will tell you, the gums surround the teeth, more or less.)

Can you figure out the word for the specialty? ____________
For the adjective? ____________.

An *endodontist* (en′-dō-DON′-tist) specializes in work on the pulp of the tooth and in root-canal therapy—the prefix in this term is *endo-*, from Greek *endon*, inner, within.

Try your hand again at constructing words. What is the specialty? ____________.
For the adjective? ____________.

The prefix ex-, out, combines with *odontos* to form *exodontist* (eks′-ō-DON′-tist). What do you suppose, therefore, is the work in which this practitioner specializes? ____________.
For the term for the specialty? ____________.
For the adjective? ____________.

2. measurement

The *optometrist*, by etymology, measures vision—the term is built on *opsis*, optikos, view, vision, plus *metron*, measurement.

*Metron* is the root in many other words:
1. *thermometer* (thәr-MOM′-ə-tәr)—an instrument to measure heat (Greek *therme*, heat).
2. *barometer* (bә-ROM′-ə-ter)—an instrument to measure atmospheric pressure (Greek *baros*, weight); the adjective is *barometric* (bair′-ә-MET′-rik).
3. *sphygmomanometer* (sfıg′-mә-mә-NOM′-ə-tәr)—a device for measuring blood pressure (Greek *sphygmos*, pulse).
4. *metric* system—a decimal system of weights and measures, long used in other countries and now gradually being adopted in the United States.

3. bones, feet, and hands
Osteopath combines Greek osteon, bone, with pathos, suffering, disease. Osteopathy (os′-tee-OP′-ə-thee), you will recall, was originally based on the theory that disease is caused by pressure of the bones on blood vessels and nerves. An osteopathic (os′-tee-ə-PATH′-ik) physician is not a bone specialist, despite the misleading etymology—and should not be confused with the orthopedist, who is.

The podiatrist (Greek pous, podos, foot, plus iatreia, medical healing) practices podiatry (pə-DĪ′-ə-tree). The adjective is podiatric (pō′-dee-AT′-rik).

The root pous, podos is found also in:
1. octopus (OK′-tə-pəs), the eight-armed (or, as the etymology has it, eight-footed) sea creature (Greek okto, eight).
2. platypus (PLAT′-ə-pəs), the strange water mammal with a duck’s bill, webbed feet, and a beaver-like tail that reproduces by laying eggs (Greek platys, broad, flat—hence, by etymology, a flatfoot!).
3. podium (PŌ′-dee-əm), a speaker’s platform, etymologically a place for the feet. (The suffix -ium often signifies “place where,” as in gymnasium, stadium, auditorium, etc.)
4. tripod (TRĪ′-pod), a three-legged (or “footed”) stand for a camera or other device (tri-, three).
5. chiropodist (kə-ROP′-ə-dist), earlier title for a podiatrist, and still often used. The specialty is chiropody (kə-ROP′-ə-dee).

Chiropody combines podos with Greek cheir, hand, spelled chiro- in English words. The term was coined in the days before labor-saving machinery and push-button devices, when people worked with their hands and developed calluses on their upper extremities as well as on their feet. Today most of us earn a livelihood in more sedentary occupations, and so we may develop calluses on less visible portions of our anatomy.

Chiropractors heal with their hands—the specialty is chiropractic (kī′-rō-PRAK′-tik).

Chir (chiro-), hand, is the root in chirography (kī-ROG′-rə-fee). Recalling the graph- in graphologist, can you figure out by etymology what chirography is? ______________

An expert in writing by hand, or in penmanship (a lost art in these days of electronic word-processing), would be a chirographer (kī-ROG′-rə-fər); the adjective is chirographic (kī′-rō-GRAF′-ik).

If the suffix -mancy comes from a Greek word meaning foretelling or prediction, can you decide what chiromancy (KĪ′-rō-man′-see) must be? ______________.

The person who practices chiromancy is a chiromancer (KĪ′-rō-man′-sər); the adjective is chiromantic (kī′-rō-MAN′-tik).

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. orthos</td>
<td>straight, correct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. odontos</td>
<td>tooth</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. paidos (ped-)
   child

4. -ic
   adjective suffix

5. peri-
   around, surrounding

6. endo-
   inner, within

7. ex-
   out

8. opsis, optikos
   vision

9. metron
   measurement

10. therme
    heat

11. baros
    weight

12. sphygmos
    pulse

13. osteon
    bone

14. pathos
    suffering, disease

15. pous, podos
    foot

16. okto
    eight
17. *platys*  
ENGLISH WORD: broad, flat

18. *-ium*  
ENGLISH WORD: place where

19. *tri-*  
ENGLISH WORD: three

20. *cheir* (chiro-)  
ENGLISH WORD: hand

21. *mancy*  
ENGLISH WORD: prediction

22. *iatreia*  
ENGLISH WORD: medical healing

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words? (I)**

1. *pedodontist*  
   pee′-dō-DON′-tist

2. *pedodontia*  
   pee′-dō-DON′-shə

3. *pedodontic*  
   pee′-dō-DON′-tik

4. *periodontist*  
   pair′-ee-ō-DON′-tist

5. *periodontia*  
   pair′-ee-ō-DON′-shə

6. *periodontic*  
   pair′-ee-ō-DON′-tik

7. *endodontist*  
   en′-dō-DON′-tist

8. *endodontia*  
   en′-dō-DON′-shə

9. *endodontic*  
   en′-dō-DON′-tik

10. *exodontist*  
    eks′-ō-DON′-tist

11. *exodontia*  
    eks′-ō-DON′-shə

12. *exodontic*  
    eks′-ō-DON′-tik

13. *thermometer*  
    thər-MOM′-ə-tər
Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. osteopathy  
   os′-tee-OP′-ə-thee
2. osteopathic  
   os′-tee-ə-PATH′-ik
3. podiatry  
   pə-DĪ′-ə-tree
4. podiatric  
   pō′-dee-AT′-rik
5. octopus  
   OK′-tə-pəs
6. platypus  
   PLAT′-ə-pəs
7. podium  
   PŌ′-dee-əm
8. tripod  
   TRĪ′-pod
9. chiropodist  
   kə-ROM′-ə-dist
10. chiropody  
    kə-ROM′-ə-dee
11. chiropractic  
    ki′-rō-PRAK′-tik
12. chirography  
    kī-ROG′-rə-fee
13. chirographer  
    kī-ROG′-rə-fər
14. chirographic  
    ki′-rə-GRAF′-ik
15. chiromancy  
    KĪ′-rə-man′-see
16. chiromancer  
    KĪ′-rə-man′-sər
17. chiromantic  
    ki′-rə-MAN′-tik

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. orthodontia  
   a. dental specialty involving the pulp and root canal
2. pedodontia  
   b. instrument that measures atmospheric pressure
3. periodontia  c. specialty arising from the theory that pressure of the bones on nerves and blood vessels may cause disease
4. endodontia  d. specialty of child dentistry
5. exodontia  e. blood-pressure apparatus
6. barometer  f. treatment of minor ailments of the foot
7. sphygmomanometer  g. instrument to measure heat
8. osteopathy  h. specialty of tooth extraction
9. podiatry  i. specialty of tooth straightening
10. thermometer  j. specialty of the gums
Can you work with the words? (II)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. octopus</td>
<td>a. speaker’s platform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. platypus</td>
<td>b. maintenance of integrity of the nervous system by manipulation and massage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. podium</td>
<td>c. palm reading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. chiropody</td>
<td>d. eight-armed sea creature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. chiropractic</td>
<td>e. handwriting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. chirography</td>
<td>f. treatment of minor ailments of the foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. chiromancy</td>
<td>g. egg-laying mammal with webbed feet</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

Orthodontia is a branch of dentistry.
TRUE    FALSE

Doctors use sphygmomanometers to check blood pressure.
TRUE    FALSE

Osteopathic physicians may use standard medical procedures.
TRUE    FALSE

Chiropractic deals with handwriting.
TRUE    FALSE

Chiropody and podiatry are synonymous terms.
TRUE    FALSE

A podium is a place from which a lecture might be delivered.
TRUE    FALSE

A pedodontist is a foot doctor.
TRUE    FALSE

A periodontist is a gum specialist.
TRUE    FALSE

A endodontist does root-canal therapy.
TRUE    FALSE

An exodontist extracts teeth.
TRUE    FALSE

A barometer measures heat.
TRUE    FALSE

An octopus has eight arms.
TRUE    FALSE

A platypus is a land mammal.
TRUE    FALSE

A tripod has four legs.
TRUE    FALSE

A chirographer is an expert at penmanship.
TRUE    FALSE

A chiromancer reads palms.
TRUE    FALSE
Do you recall the words? (I)

pertaining to child dentistry (adj.)
  1. P__________________
pertaining to treatment of the foot (adj.)
  2. P__________________
blood-pressure apparatus
  3. S__________________
three-legged stand
  4. T__________________
pertaining to the treatment of diseases by manipulation to relieve pressure of the bones on nerves and blood vessels (adj.)
  5. O__________________
pertaining to handwriting (adj.)
  6. C__________________
gum specialist
  7. P__________________
treatment of ailments of the foot
  8. P__________________ or C_______________
stand for a speaker
  9. P__________________
dentist specializing in treating the pulp of the tooth or in doing root-canal therapy
  10. E_______________
Can you recall the words? (II)

1. pertaining to the specialty of tooth extraction (adj.)
   1. E______________

2. pertaining to the measurement of atmospheric pressure (adj.)
   2. B______________

3. palm reading (noun)
   3. C______________

4. handwriting
   4. C______________

5. the practice of manipulating bodily articulations to relieve ailments
   5. C______________

6. egg-laying mammal
   6. P______________

7. eight-armed sea creature
   7. O______________

8. instrument to measure heat
   8. T______________
KEY:  1–exodontic,  2–barometric,  3–chiromancy,  4–chirography,  5–chiropractic,  6–platypus,  7–octopus,  8–thermometer

(End of Session 9)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. writing and writers

The Greek verb *graphein*, to write, is the source of a great many English words. We know that the *graphologist* analyzes handwriting, the term combining *graphein* with *logos*, science, study. The specialty is *graphology* (grə-FOL′-ə-jee), the adjective *graphological* (graf′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

*Chirographer* is built on *graphein* plus *cheir* (chiro-), hand. Though *chirography* may be a lost art, *calligraphy* (kə-LIG′-rə-fee) is enjoying a revival. For centuries before the advent of printing, *calligraphy*, or penmanship as an artistic expression, was practiced by monks.

A *calligrapher* (kə-LIG′-rə-fər) is called upon to design and write announcements, place cards, etc., as a touch of elegance. The adjective is *calligraphic* (kal′-ə-GRAF′-ik).

*Calligraphy* combines *graphein* with Greek *kallos*, beauty, and so, by etymology, means *beautiful writing*.

If a word exists for artistic handwriting, there must be one for the opposite—bad, scrawly, or illegible handwriting. And indeed there is—*cacography* (kə-KOG′-rə-fee), combining *graphein* with Greek *kakos*, bad, harsh.

By analogy with the forms of *calligraphy*, can you write the word for:
One who uses bad or illegible handwriting?
__________________________.

Pertaining to, or marked by, bad handwriting (adjective)?
__________________________.

*Graphein* is found in other English words:
1. *cardiograph* (discussed in *Chapter 4*)—etymologically a “heart writer” (*kardia*, heart).
2. *photograph*—etymologically, “written by light” (Greek *photos*, light).
3. *phonograph*—etymologically, a “sound writer” (Greek *phone*, sound).
4. *telegraph*—etymologically a “distance writer” (Greek tele-, distance).
5. *biography*—etymologically “life writing” (Greek, bios, life). (Many of these new roots will be discussed in greater detail in later chapters.)

2. aging and the old

We know that a *geriatrician* specializes in the medical care of the elderly. The Greek word *geras*, old age, has a derived form, *geron*, old man, the root in *gerontologist*. The specialty is *gerontology* (jair′-ən-TOL′-ə-jee), the adjective is *gerontological* (jair′-ən-tə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

The Latin word for *old* is *senex*, the base on which *senile*, *senescent*, *senior*, and *senate* are built.
1. **senile** (SEE′-nil)—showing signs of the physical and/or mental deterioration that generally marks very old age. The noun is **senility** (sə-NIL′-ə-tee).

2. **senescent** (sə-NES′-ənt)—aging, growing old. (Note the same suffix in this word as in *adolescent*, growing into an adult, *convalescent*, growing healthy again, and *obsolescent*, growing or becoming obsolete.) The noun is **senescence** (sə-NES′-əns).


4. **senate** (SEN′-ət)—originally a council of older, and presumably wiser, citizens.

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. graphein</td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cheir (chiro-)</td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. kallos</td>
<td>beauty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. -er</td>
<td>one who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. -ic</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. pyge</td>
<td>buttocks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. kakos</td>
<td>bad, harsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. kardia</td>
<td>heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. photos</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. tele-</td>
<td>distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. bios</td>
<td>life</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. geras  
   old age

13. geron  
   old man

14. senex  
   old

15. -escent  
   growing, becoming

---

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words?**

1. graphology  
   grə-FOL′-ə-jee

2. graphological  
   graf′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl

3. calligraphy  
   kə-LIG′-rēe

4. calligrapher  
   kə-LIG′-rə-fər

5. calligraphic  
   kal′-ə-GRAF′-ik

6. callipygian  
   kal′-ə-PIJ′-ee-ən

7. cacography  
   kə-KOG′-rēe

8. cacographer  
   kə-KOG′-rə-fər

9. cacographic  
   kak′-ə-GRAF′-ik

10. gerontology  
    jair′-ən-TOL′-ə-jee

11. gerontological  
    jair′-ən-tə-LOJ′-ə-kəl

12. senile  
    SEE′-nil

13. senility  
    sə-NIL′-ə-tee

14. senescent  
    sə-NES′-ənt

15. senescence  
    sə-NES′-əns
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>graphology</td>
<td>a. possessed of beautiful buttocks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>calligraphy</td>
<td>b. science of the social, economic, etc. problems of the aged</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>callipygian</td>
<td>c. condition of aging or growing old</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cacography</td>
<td>d. deteriorated old age</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gerontology</td>
<td>e. analysis of handwriting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senility</td>
<td>f. ugly, bad, illegible handwriting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>senescence</td>
<td>g. beautiful handwriting; handwriting as an artistic expression</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

*Graphology* analyzes the grammar, spelling, and sentence structure of written material.

TRUE  FALSE

A *calligrapher* creates artistic forms out of alphabetical symbols.

TRUE  FALSE

Tight slacks are best worn by those of *callipygian* anatomy.

TRUE  FALSE

*Cacographic* writing is easy to read.

TRUE  FALSE

*Gerontology* aims to help old people live more comfortably.

TRUE  FALSE

*Senile* people are old but still vigorous and mentally alert.

TRUE  FALSE

In a society dedicated to the worship of youth, *senescence* is not an attractive prospect.

TRUE  FALSE
Can you recall the words?

pertaining to the study of the non-medical problems of the aged \textit{(adj.)}
1. G __________

growing old \textit{(adj.)}
2. S __________

pertaining to handwriting as an artistic expression \textit{(adj.)}
3. C __________

one who uses ugly, illegible handwriting
4. C __________

mentally and physically deteriorated from old age
5. S __________

pertaining to the analysis of handwriting \textit{(adj.)}
6. G __________

possessed of beautiful or shapely buttocks
7. C __________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

1. Practitioner trained in Freudian techniques: (a) psychologist, (b) psychoanalyst, (c) psychotherapist
2. Foot doctor: (a) podiatrist, (b) osteopath, (c) chiropractor
3. Handwriting analyst: (a) graphologist, (b) chirographer, (c) cacographer
4. Mentally or emotionally disturbed: (a) psychological, (b) psychopathic, (c) psychic
5. Originating in the emotions: (a) psychic, (b) psychogenic, (c) psychoanalytic
6. Describing bodily ailments tied up with the emotions: (a) psychosomatic, (b) psychopathic, (c) psychiatric
7. Gum specialist: (a) periodontist, (b) pedodontist, (c) endodontist
8. Specialist in tooth extraction: (a) orthodontist, (b) exodontist, (c) endodontist
9. Blood-pressure apparatus: (a) barometer, (b) thermometer, (c) sphygmomanometer
10. Prediction by palm reading: (a) chirography, (b) chiropody, (c) chiromancy
11. Possessed of a shapely posterior: (a) calligraphic, (b) callipygian, (c) adolescent
12. Artistic handwriting: (a) calligraphy, (b) chirography, (c) graphology
13. Growing old: (a) senile, (b) geriatric, (c) senescent
14. Medical specialty dealing with the aged: (a) gerontology, (b) geriatrics, (c) chiropractic
15. Antisocial person who may commit criminal acts: (a) psychopath, (b) sociopath, (c) osteopath
### B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. psyche</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE psychiatry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. iatreia</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE podiatry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. soma</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE psychosomatic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pathos</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE osteopath</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. orthos</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE orthodontia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. paidos (ped-)</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE pedodontist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. odontos</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE exodontist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. poss, podos</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE platypus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. cheir (chiro-)</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE chiropodist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. okto</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE octopus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. graphein</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE graphology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. kallos</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE  calligraphy
13. pyge
EXAMPLE  callipygian
14. kakos
EXAMPLE  cacography
15. photos
EXAMPLE  photography
16. tele-
EXAMPLE  telegraph
17. bios
EXAMPLE  biography
18. geras
EXAMPLE  geriatrics
19. geron
EXAMPLE  gerontology
20. senex
EXAMPLE  senate
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. Latin *octoginta* is a root related to Greek *okto*, eight. How old is an *octogenarian* (ok′-tə-jə-NAIR′-ee-ən)? ____________

2. You are familiar with *kakos*, bad, harsh, as in *cacography*, and with *phone*, sound, as in *phonograph*. Can you construct a word ending in the letter *y* that means harsh, unpleasant sound? ____________. (Can you pronounce it?)

3. Using *callipygian* as a model, can you construct a word to describe an ugly, unshapely rear end? ____________. (Can you pronounce it?)

4. Using the prefix *tele-*, distance, can you think of the word for a field glass that permits the viewer to see great distances? ____________. How about a word for the instrument that transmits sound over a distance? ____________. Finally, what is it that makes it possible for you to view happenings that occur a great distance away? ____________. 

*(Answers in Chapter 18)*

BECOMING WORD-CONSCIOUS

Perhaps, if you have been working as assiduously with this book as I have repeatedly counseled, you have noticed an interesting phenomenon.

This phenomenon is as follows: You read a magazine article and suddenly you see one or more of the words you have recently learned. Or you open a book and there again are some of the words you have been working with. In short, all your reading seems to call to your attention the very words you've been studying.

Why? Have I, with uncanny foresight, picked words which have suddenly and inexplicably become popular among writers? Obviously, that’s nonsense.

The change is in you. You have now begun to be alert to words, you have developed what is known in psychology as a “mind-set” toward certain words. Therefore, whenever these words occur in your reading you take special notice of them.

The same words occurred before—and just as plentifully—but since they presented little communication to you, you reacted to them with an unseeing eye, with an ungrasping mind. You were figuratively, and almost literally, blind to them.

Do you remember when you bought, or contemplated buying, a new car? Let’s say it was a Toyota. Suddenly you began to see Toyotas all around you—you had a Toyota “mind-set.”

It is thus with anything new in your life. Development of a “mind-set” means that the new experience has become very real, very important, almost vital.
If you have become suddenly alert to the new words you have been learning, you’re well along toward your goal of building a superior vocabulary. You are beginning to live in a new and different intellectual atmosphere—nothing less!

On the other hand, if the phenomenon I have been describing has not yet occurred, do not despair. It will. I am alerting you to its possibilities—recognize it and welcome it when it happens.

(End of Session 10)

---

1 Psychopathy is usually characterized by antisocial and extremely egocentric behavior. A psychopath (Sī’-kə-path’), sometimes called a psychopathic personality, appears to be lacking an inner moral censor, and often commits criminal acts, without anxiety or guilt, in order to obtain immediate gratification of desires. Such a person may be utterly lacking in sexual restraint, or addicted to hard drugs. Some psychologists prefer the label sociopath (SŌ’-shee-ə-path’ or SŌ’-see-ə-path’) for this type of personality to indicate the absence of a social conscience.

2 But see calligrapher in the next session.

3 An entrancing word that also derives from kallos is callipygian (kal’-ə-pi-jə-n), an adjective describing a shapely or attractive rear end, or a person so endowed—the combining root is pyge, buttocks.
If you think that grammar is an exact science, get ready for a shock. Grammar is a science, all right—but it is most inexact. There are no inflexible laws, no absolutely hard and fast rules, no unchanging principles. Correctness varies with the times and depends much more on geography, on social class, and on collective human caprice than on the restrictions found in textbooks.

In mathematics, which is an exact science, five and five make ten the country over—in the North, in the South, in the West; in Los Angeles and Coral Gables and New York. There are no two opinions on the matter—we are dealing, so far as we know, with a universal and indisputable fact.

In grammar, however, since the facts are highly susceptible to change, we have to keep an eye peeled for trends. What are educated people saying these days? Which expressions are generally used and accepted on educated levels, which others are more or less restricted to the less educated levels of speech? The answers to these questions indicate the trend of usage in the United States, and if such trends come in conflict with academic rules, then the rules are no longer of any great importance.

Grammar follows the speech habits of the majority of educated people—not the other way around. That is the important point to keep in mind.

The following notes on current trends in modern usage are intended to help you come to a decision about certain controversial expressions. As you read each sentence, pay particular attention to the italicized word or words. Does the usage square with your own language patterns? Would you be willing to phrase your thoughts in just such terms? Decide whether the sentence is right or wrong, then compare your conclusion with the opinions given following the test.

TEST YOURSELF

Let’s keep this between you and I.
RIGHT  WRONG

I’m your best friend, ain’t I?
RIGHT  WRONG

Five and five is ten.
RIGHT  WRONG

I never saw a man get so mad.
RIGHT  WRONG
Every one of his sisters are unmarried.

He visited an optometrist for an eye operation.

Do you prophecy another world war?

Leave us not mention it.

If you expect to eventually succeed, you must keep trying.

1. Let's keep this between you and I.

Wrong. Children are so frequently corrected by parents and teachers when they say me that they cannot be blamed if they begin to think that this simple syllable is probably a naughty word. Dialogues such as the following are certainly typical of many households.

“Mother, can me and Johnnie go out and play?”
“No, dear, not until you say it correctly. You mean ‘May Johnnie and I go out to play?’ ”
“Who wants a jelly apple?”
“Me!”
“Then use the proper word.”
(The child becomes a little confused at this point—there seem to be so many “proper” and “improper” words.)
“Me, please!”
“No, dear, not me.”
“Oh. I, please?”
(This sounds terrible to a child’s ear. It completely violates his sense of language, but he does want the jelly apple, so he grudgingly conforms.)
“Who broke my best vase?”
“It wasn’t me!”
“Is that good English, Johnnie?”
“Okay, it wasn’t I. But honest, Mom, it wasn’t me—I didn’t even touch it!”

And so, if the child is strong enough to survive such constant corrections, he decides that whenever there is room for doubt, it is safer to say I.

Some adults, conditioned in childhood by the kind of misguided censorship detailed here, are likely to believe that “between you and I” is the more elegant form of expression, but most educated speakers, obeying the rule that a preposition governs the objective pronoun, say “between you and me.”

2. I'm your best friend, ain't I?

Wrong. As linguistic scholars have frequently pointed out, it is unfortunate that ain’t I? is unpopular in educated speech, for the phrase fills a long-felt need. Am I not? is too prissy for down-to-earth people; amn’t I? is ridiculous; and aren’t I, though popular in England, has never really caught on in America. With a sentence like the one under discussion you are
practically in a linguistic trap—there is no way out unless you are willing to choose between appearing illiterate, sounding prissy, or feeling ridiculous.

“What is the matter with ain’t I? for am I not?” language scholar Wallace Rice once wrote. “Nothing whatever, save that a number of minor grammarians object to it. Ain’t I? has a pleasant sound once the ears are unstopped of prejudice.” Mr. Rice has a valid point there, yet educated people avoid ain’t I? as if it were catching. In all honesty, therefore, I must say to you: don’t use ain’t I?, except humorously. What is a safe substitute? Apparently none exists, so I suggest that you manage, by some linguistic calisthenics, to avoid having to make a choice. Otherwise you may find yourself in the position of being damned if you do and damned if you don’t.

3. Five and five is ten.
   RIGHT. But don’t jump to the conclusion that “five and five are ten” is wrong—both verbs are equally acceptable in this or any similar construction. If you prefer to think of “five-and-five” as a single mathematical concept, say is. If you find it more reasonable to consider “five and five” a plural idea, say are. The teachers I’ve polled on this point are about evenly divided in preference, and so, I imagine, are the rest of us. Use whichever verb has the greater appeal to your sense of logic.

4. I never saw a man get so mad.
   RIGHT. When I questioned a number of authors and editors about their opinion of the acceptability of mad as a synonym for angry, the typical reaction was: “Yes, I say mad, but I always feel a little guilty when I do.”
   Most people do say mad when they are sure there is no English teacher listening; it’s a good sharp word, everybody understands exactly what it means, and it’s a lot stronger than angry, though not quite as violent as furious or enraged. In short, mad has a special implication offered by no other word in the English language; as a consequence, educated people use it as the occasion demands and it is perfectly correct. So correct, in fact, that every authoritative dictionary lists it as a completely acceptable usage. If you feel guilty when you say mad, even though you don’t mean insane, it’s time you stopped plaguing your conscience with trivialities.

5. Every one of his sisters are unmarried.
   WRONG. Are is perhaps the more logical word, since the sentence implies that he has more than one sister and they are all unmarried. In educated speech, however, the tendency is to make the verb agree with the subject, even if logic is violated in the process—and the better choice here would be is, agreeing with the singular subject, every one.

6. He visited an optometrist for an eye operation.
   WRONG. If the gentleman in question did indeed need an operation, he went to the wrong doctor. In most states, optometrists are forbidden by law to perform surgery or administer drugs—they may only prescribe and fit glasses. And they are not medical doctors. The M.D. who specializes in the treatment of eye diseases, and who may operate when necessary, is an ophthalmologist. (See Chapter 4.)
7. Do you *prophecy* another world war?

_WRONG_. Use *prophecy* only when you mean *prediction*, a noun. When you mean *predict*, a verb, as in this sentence, use *prophesy*. This distinction is simple and foolproof. Therefore we properly say: “His *prophecy* (*prediction*) turned out to be true,” but “He really seems able to *prophesy* (*predict*) political trends.” There is a distinction also in the pronunciation of these two words. *Prophecy* is pronounced PROF′-ə-see; *prophesy* is pronounced PROF′-ə-si′.

8. *Leave* us not mention it.

_WRONG_. On the less sophisticated levels of American speech, *leave* is a popular substitute for *let*. On educated levels, the following distinction is carefully observed: *let* means *allow*; *leave* means *depart*. (There are a few idiomatic exceptions to this rule, but they present no problem.) “Let me go” is preferable to “*Leave* me go” even on the most informal of occasions, and a sentence like “*Leave* us not mention it” is not considered standard English.

9. If you expect to *eventually succeed*, you must keep trying.

_RIGHT_. We have here, in case you’re puzzled, an example of that notorious bugbear of academic grammar, the “split infinitive.” (An infinitive is a verb preceded by to: to succeed, to fail, to remember.)

Splitting an infinitive is not at all difficult—you need only insert a word between the to and the verb: to *eventually succeed*, to *completely fail*, to *quickly remember*.

Now that you know how to split an infinitive, the important question is, is it legal to do so? I am happy to be able to report to you that it is not only legal, it is also ethical, moral, and sometimes more effective than to not split it. Benjamin Franklin, Washington Irving, Nathaniel Hawthorne, Theodore Roosevelt, and Woodrow Wilson, among many others, were unconscionable infinitive splitters. And modern writers are equally partial to the construction.

To bring this report up to the minute, I asked a number of editors about their attitude toward the split infinitive. Here are two typical reactions.

An editor at Doubleday and Company: “The restriction against the split infinitive is, to my mind, the most artificial of all grammatical rules. I find that most educated people split infinitives regularly in their speech, and only eliminate them from their writing when they rewrite and polish their material.”

An editor at *Reader’s Digest*: “I want to defend the split infinitive. The construction adds to the strength of the sentence—it’s compact and clear. This is to loudly say that I split an infinitive whenever I can catch one.”

And here, finally, is the opinion of humorist James Thurber, as quoted by Rudolf Flesch in *The Art of Plain Talk*: “Word has somehow got around that the split infinitive is always wrong. This is of a piece with the outworn notion that it is always wrong to strike a lady.”

I think the evidence is conclusive enough—it is perfectly correct to consciously split an infinitive whenever such an act increases the strength or clarity of your sentence.
HOW TO TALK ABOUT SCIENCE AND SCIENTISTS

(Sessions 11–13)

TEASER PREVIEW

What scientist:
is interested in the development of the human race?
is a student of the heavens?
explores the physical qualities of the earth?
studies all living matter?
is a student of plant life?
is a student of animal life?
is professionally involved in insects?
is a student of language?
is a student of the psychological effects of words?
studies the culture, structure, and customs of different societies?
SESSION 11

A true scientist lives up to the etymological meaning of his title “one who knows.” Anything scientific is based on facts—observable facts that can be recorded, tested, checked, and verified.

Science, then, deals with human knowledge—as far as it has gone. It has gone very far indeed since the last century or two, when we stopped basing our thinking on guesses, wishes, theories that had no foundation in reality, and concepts of how the world ought to be; and instead began to explore the world as it was, and not only the world but the whole universe. From Galileo, who looked through the first telescope atop a tower in Pisa, Italy, through Pasteur, who watched microbes through a microscope, to Einstein, who deciphered riddles of the universe by means of mathematics, we have at last begun to fill in a few areas of ignorance.

Who are some of the more important explorers of knowledge—and by what terms are they known?

IDEAS

1. whither mankind?

The field is all mankind—how we developed in mind and body from primitive cultures and early forms.

   An anthropologist

2. what’s above?

The field is the heavens and all that’s in them—planets, galaxies, stars, and other universes.

   An astronomer

3. and what’s below?

The field is the comparatively little and insignificant whirling ball on which we live—the earth. How did our planet come into being, what is it made of, how were its mountains, oceans, rivers, plains, and valleys formed, and what’s down deep if you start digging?

   A geologist
4. what is life?

The field is all living organisms—from the simplest one-celled amoeba to the amazingly complex and mystifying structure we call a human being. Plant or animal, flesh or vegetable, denizen of water, earth, or air—if it lives and grows, this scientist wants to know more about it.

A biologist

5. flora

Biology classifies life into two great divisions—plant and animal. This scientist’s province is the former category—flowers, trees, shrubs, mosses, marine vegetation, blossoms, fruits, seeds, grasses, and all the rest that make up the plant kingdom.

A botanist

6. and fauna

Animals of every description, kind, and condition, from birds to bees, fish to fowl, reptiles to humans, are the special area of exploration of this scientist.

A zoologist

7. and all the little bugs

There are over 650,000 different species of insects, and millions of individuals of every species—and this scientist is interested in every one of them.

An entomologist

8. tower of Babel

This linguistic scientist explores the subtle, intangible, elusive uses of that unique tool that distinguishes human beings from all other forms of life—to wit: language. This person is, in short, a student of linguistics, ancient and modern, primitive and cultured, Chinese, Hebrew, Icelandic, Slavic, Teutonic, and every other kind spoken now or in the past by human beings, not excluding that delightful hodgepodge known as “pidgin English,” in which a piano is described as “big box, you hit ’um in teeth, he cry,” and in which Hamlet’s famous quandary, “To be or not to be, that is the question...,” is translated into “Can do, no can do—how fashion?”

A philologist

9. what do you really mean?
This linguistic scientist explored the subtle, intangible, elusive relationship between language and thinking, between meaning and words; and is interested in determining the psychological causes and effects of what people say and write.

A semanticist

10. who are your friends and neighbors?

This scientist is a student of the ways in which people live together, their family and community structures and customs, their housing, their social relationships, their forms of government, and their layers of caste and class.

A sociologist

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. anthropologist an′-thrə-POL′-ə-jist
2. astronomer ə-STRON′-ə-mər
3. geologist jee-OL′-ə-jist
4. biologist bī-OL′-ə-jist
5. botanist BOT′-ə-nist
6. zoologist zō-OL′-ə-jist
7. entomologist en′-tə-MOL′-ə-jist
8. philologist fə-LOL′-ə-jist
9. semanticist sə-MAN′-tə-sist
10. sociologist sō-shee-OL′-ə-jist or sō′-see-OL′-ə-jist

Can you work with the words?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SCIENTIST</th>
<th>PROFESSIONAL FIELD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. anthropologist</td>
<td>a. community and family life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. astronomer</td>
<td>b. meanings and psychological effects of words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. geologist</td>
<td>c. development of the human race</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. biologist</td>
<td>d. celestial phenomena</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. botanist</td>
<td>e. language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. zoologist</td>
<td>f. insect forms</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. entomologist</td>
<td>g. the earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. philologist</td>
<td>h. all forms of living matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. semanticist</td>
<td>i. animal life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. sociologist</td>
<td>j. plant life</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you recall the words?

insects
  1. E ____________
language
  2. P ____________
social conditions
  3. S ____________
history of development of mankind
  4. A ____________
meanings of words
  5. S ____________
plants
  6. B ____________
the earth
  7. G ____________
the heavenly bodies
  8. A ____________
all living things
  9. B ____________
animals
10. Z ____________
KEY: 1–entomologist, 2–philologist, 3–sociologist, 4–anthropologist, 5–semanticist, 6–botanist, 7–geologist, 8–astronomer, 9–biologist, 10–zoologist

(End of Session 11)
1. people and the stars

*Anthropologist* is constructed from roots we are familiar with—*anthropos*, mankind, and *logos*, science, study.

The science is *anthropology* (an′-thrə-POL′-ə-jee). Can you write the adjective form of this word? ______________. (Can you pronounce it?)

*Astronomer* is built on Greek *astron*, star, and *nomos*, arrangement, law, or order. The *astronomer* is interested in the arrangement of stars and other celestial bodies. The science is *astronomy* (ə-STRON′-ə-mee), the adjective is *astronomical* (as′-trə-NOM′-ə-kəl), a word often used in a non-heavenly sense, as in “the *astronomical* size of the national debt.” *Astronomy* deals in such enormous distances (the sun, for example, is 93,000,000 miles from the earth, and light from stars travels toward the earth at 186,000 miles per second) that the adjective *astronomical* is applied to any tremendously large figure.

*Astron*, star, combines with *logos* to form *astrology* (ə-STROL′-ə-jee), which assesses the influence of planets and stars on human events. The practitioner is an *astrologer* (ə-STROL′-ə-jər). Can you form the adjective? ______________. (Can you pronounce it?)

By etymology, an *astronaut* (AS′-trə-not′) is a sailor among the stars (Greek *nautes*, sailor). This person is termed with somewhat less exaggeration a *cosmonaut* (KOZ′-mə-not′) by the Russians (Greek, *kosmos*, universe). *Nautical* (NOT′-ə-kəl), relating to sailors, sailing, ships, or navigation, derives also from *nautes*, and *nautes* in turn is from Greek *naus*, ship—a root used in *nausea* (etymologically, ship-sickness or seasickness!).

*Aster* (AS′-tər) is a star shaped flower. *Asterisk* (AS′-tə-risk), a star-shaped symbol (*), is generally used in writing or printing to direct the reader to look for a footnote. *Astrophysics* (as′-trə-FIZ′-iks) is that branch of physics dealing with heavenly bodies.

*Disaster* (də-ZAS′-tər) and *disastrous* (də-ZAS′-trəs) also come from *astron*, star. In ancient times it was believed that the stars ruled human destiny; any misfortune or calamity, therefore, happened to someone because the stars were in opposition. (*Dis-*, a prefix of many meanings, in this word signifies *against*.)

*Nomos*, arrangement, law, or order, is found in two other interesting English words.

For example, if you can make your own laws for yourself, if you needn’t answer to anyone else for what you do, in short, if you are independent, then you enjoy *autonomy* (aw-TON′-ə-mee), a word that combines *nomos*, law, with *autos*, self. *Autonomy*, then, is self-law, self-government. The fifty states in our nation are fairly *autonomous* (aw-TON′-ə-məs), but not completely so. On the other hand, in most colleges each separate department is pretty much *autonomous*. And of course, one of the big reasons for the revolution of 1776 was that America wanted *autonomy*, rather than control by England.
You know the instrument that beginners at the piano use to guide their timing? A pendulum swings back and forth, making an audible click at each swing, and in that way governs or orders the measure (or timing) of the player. Hence it is called a metronome (MET′-rə-nōm′), a word that combines nomos with metron, measurement.

2. the earth and its life

Geologist derives from Greek ge (geo-), earth. The science is geology (jee-OL′-ə-jee). Can you write the adjective? __________________. (Can you pronounce it?)

Geometry (jee-OM′-ə-tree)—ge plus metron—by etymology “measurement of the earth,” is that branch of mathematics treating of the measurement and properties of solid and plane figures, such as angles, triangles, squares, spheres, prisms, etc. (The etymology of the word shows that this ancient science was originally concerned with the measurement of land and spaces on the earth.)

The mathematician is a geometrician (jee′-ə-mə-TRISH′-ən), the adjective is geometric (jee′-ə-MET′-rik).

Geography (jee-OG′-rə-fee) is writing about (graphein, to write), or mapping, the earth. A practitioner of the science is a geographer (jee-OG′-rə-fər), the adjective is geographic (jee-ə-GRAF′-ik).

(The name George is also derived from ge (geo-), earth, plus ergon, work—the first George was an earth-worker or farmer.)

Biologist combines bios, life, with logos, science, study. The science is biology (bī-OL′-ə-jee). The adjective? ____________.

Bios, life, is also found in biography (bī-OG′-rə-fee), writing about someone’s life; autobiography (aw′-tə-bi-OG′-rə-fee), the story of one’s life written by oneself; and biopsy (BĪ′-op-see), a medical examination, or view (opsis, optikos, view, vision), generally through a microscope, of living tissue, frequently performed when cancer is suspected. A small part of the tissue is cut from the affected area and under the microscope its cells can be investigated for evidence of malignancy. A biopsy is contrasted with an autopsy (AW′-top-see), which is a medical examination of a corpse in order to discover the cause of death. The autos in autopsy means, as you know, self—in an autopsy, etymologically speaking, the surgeon or pathologist determines, by actual view or sight rather than by theorizing (i.e., “by viewing or seeing for oneself”), what brought the corpse to its present grievous state.

Botanist is from Greek botane, plant. The field is botany (BOT′-ə-nee); the adjective is botanical (bə-TAN′-ə-kəl).

Zoologist is from Greek zoion, animal. The science is zoology. The adjective? ____________.

The combination of the two o’s tempts many people to pronounce the first three letters of these words in one syllable, thus: zoo. However, the two o’s should be separated, as in cooperate, even though no hyphen is used in the spelling to indicate such separation. Say zō-OL′-ə-jist, zō-OL′-ə-jee, zō′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl. Zoo, a park for animals, is a shortened form of zoological gardens, and is, of course, pronounced in one syllable.

The zodiac (ZŌ′-dee-ak) is a diagram, used in astrology, of the paths of the sun, moon,
and planets; it contains, in part, Latin names for various animals—*scorpio*, scorpion; *leo*, lion; *cancer*, crab; *taurus*, bull; *aries*, ram; and *pisces*, fish. Hence its derivation from *zoion*, animal.

The adjective is *zodiacal* (zō-DĪ′-ə-kəl).

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>anthropos</em></td>
<td>mankind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>logos</em></td>
<td>science, study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>astron</em></td>
<td>star</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>nautes</em></td>
<td>sailor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>naus</em></td>
<td>ship</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>dis-</em></td>
<td>against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>nomos</em></td>
<td>arrangement, law, order</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <em>autos</em></td>
<td>self</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <em>metron</em></td>
<td>measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>ge</em> (geo-)</td>
<td>earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. <em>graphein</em></td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. <em>bios</em></td>
<td>life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. opsis, optikos
   view, vision, sight

14. botane
   plant

15. zoion
   animal

**USING THE WORDS**

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. anthropology
   an′-thr̩-POL′-ə-je
2. anthropological
   an′-thr̩-pə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
3. astronomy
   ə-STRON′-ə-mee
4. astronomical
   ə-STRON′-ə-kəl
5. astrology
   ə-STROL′-ə-je
6. astrological
   ə-STROL′-ə-kəl
7. astronaut
   AS′-trə-not′
8. cosmonaut
   KOZ′-mə-not′
9. nautical
   NOT′-ə-kəl
10. aster
    AS′-tər
11. asterisk
    AS′-tə-risk
12. disaster
    də-ZAS′-tər
13. disastrous
    də-ZAS′-təs

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. geology
   jee-OL′-ə-je
2. geological
   jee′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
3. geometry  jee-OM′-ə-tree
4. geometrician  jee′-ə-mə-TRISH′-ən
5. geometric  jee-ə-MET′-rik
6. geography  jee-OG′-rə-fee
7. geographer  jee-OG′-rə-fər
8. geographical  jee′-ə-GRAF′-ə-kəl
9. biology  bī-OL′-ə-jee
10. biological  bī′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
11. biography  bī-OG′-rə-fee
12. biographer  bī-OG′-rə-fər
13. biographical  bī′-ə-GRAF′-ə-kəl

Can you pronounce the words? (III)

1. autonomy  aw-TON′-ə-mee
2. autonomous  aw-TON′-ə-məs
3. metronome  MET′-rə-nəm′
4. autobiography  aw′-tə-bī-OG′-rə-fee
5. autobiographer  aw′-tə-bī-OG′-rə-fər
6. autobiographical  aw-tə-bī′-ə-GRAF′-ə-kəl
7. biopsy  BĪ′-op-see
8. autopsy  AW′-top-see
9. botany  BOT′-ə-nee
10. botanical  bə-TAN′-ə-kəl
11. zoology  zō-OL′-ə-jee
12. zoological  zō-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
13. zodiac  ZŌ′-dee-ak
14. zodiacal  zō-DĪ′-ə-kəl

Can you work with the words? (I)
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. anthropology</th>
<th>a. theory of the influence of planets and stars on human events</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. astronomy</td>
<td>b. science of earth-mapping</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. astrology</td>
<td>c. science of all living matter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. geology</td>
<td>d. science of human development</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. biology</td>
<td>e. science of plants</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. geometry</td>
<td>f. science of the composition of the earth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. botany</td>
<td>g. science of animal life</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. zoology</td>
<td>h. science of the heavens</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. geography</td>
<td>i. mathematical science of figures, shapes, etc.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. autopsy
   a. “sailor among the stars”
2. biopsy
   b. star-shaped flower
3. biography
   c. story of one’s own life
4. autobiography
   d. dissection and examination of a corpse to determine the cause of death
5. zodiac
   e. great misfortune
6. astronaut
   f. “sailor of the universe”
7. cosmonaut
   g. story of someone’s life
8. aster
   h. diagram of paths of sun, moon, and planets
9. disaster
   i. instrument to measure musical time
10. autonomy
    j. self-rule
11. metronome
    k. examination of living tissue
Do you understand the words?

Are *anthropological* studies concerned with plant life?
YES  NO

Are *astronomical* numbers extremely small?
YES  NO

Is an *astrologer* interested in the time and date of your birth?
YES  NO

Are *nautical* maneuvers carried on at sea?
YES  NO

Does a *disastrous* earthquake take a huge toll of life and property?
YES  NO

Do *geological* investigations sometimes determine where oil is to be found?
YES  NO

Does a *geometrician* work with mathematics?
YES  NO

Do *geographical* shifts in population sometimes affect the economy of an area?
YES  NO

Does a *biographical* novel deal with the life of a real person?
YES  NO

Is *botany* a biological science?
YES  NO

Is the United States politically *autonomous*?
YES  NO

Is a *biopsy* performed on a dead body?
YES  NO

Is a *metronome* used in the study of mathematics?
YES  NO

Is an *autopsy* performed to correct a surgical problem?
YES  NO

Does an author write an *autobiography* about someone else’s life?
YES  NO
Can you recall the words? (I)

pertaining to the science of animals (adj.)
1. Z_____________

pertaining to the science of plants (adj.)
2. B_____________

dissection of a corpse to determine the cause of death
3. A_____________

story of one’s life, self-written
4. A_____________

pertaining to the science of all living matter (adj.)
5. B_____________

science of the measurement of figures
6. G_____________

pertaining to the science of the earth’s composition (adj.)
7. G_____________

branch of physics dealing with the composition of celestial bodies
8. A_____________

star-shaped flower
9. A_____________

very high in number; pertaining to the science of the heavens (adj.)
10. A___________

science of heavenly bodies
11. A___________

science of the development of mankind
12. A___________

person who believes human events are influenced by the paths of the sun, moon, and planets
13. A___________
Can you recall the words? (II)

microscopic examination of living tissue
1. B__________
self-government
2. A__________
time measurer for music
3. M__________
voyager among the stars
4. A__________
traveler through the universe
5. C__________
great misfortune
6. D__________
mapping of the earth (noun)
7. G__________
self-governing (adj.)
8. A__________
diagram used in astrology
9. Z__________
pertaining to such a diagram (adj.)
10. Z__________
pertaining to ships, sailing, etc.
11. N__________
star-shaped symbol
12. A__________
story of a person’s life
13. B__________
(End of Session 12)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. cutting in and out

Flies, bees, beetles, wasps, and other insects are segmented creatures—head, thorax, and abdomen. Where these parts join, there appears to the imaginative eye a “cutting in” of the body.

Hence the branch of zoology dealing with insects is aptly named entomology, from Greek en-, in, plus tome, a cutting. The adjective is entomological (en′-tə-mə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

(The word insect makes the same point—it is built on Latin in- in, plus sectus, a form of the verb meaning to cut.)

The prefix ec-, from Greek ek-, means out. (The Latin prefix, you will recall, is ex-.) Combine ec- with tome to derive the words for surgical procedures in which parts are “cut out,” or removed: tonsillectomy (the tonsils), appendectomy (the appendix), mastectomy (the breast), hysterectomy (the uterus), prostatectomy (the prostate), etc.

Combine ec- with Greek kentron, center (the Latin root, as we have discovered, is centrum), to derive eccentric (ək-SEN′-trik)—out of the center, hence deviating from the normal in behavior, attitudes, etc., or unconventional, odd, strange. The noun is eccentricity (ek′-sən-TRIS′-ə-tee).

2. more cuts

The Greek prefix a- makes a root negative; the atom (AT′-əm) was so named at a time when it was considered the smallest possible particle of an element, that is, one that could not be cut any further. (We have long since split the atom, of course, with results, as in most technological advances, both good and evil.) The adjective is atomic (ə-TOM′-ik).

The Greek prefix ana- has a number of meanings, one of which is up, as in anatomy (ə-NAT′-ə-mee), originally the cutting up of a plant or animal to determine its structure, later the bodily structure itself. The adjective is anatomical (an′-ə-TOM′-ə-kəl).

Originally any book that was part of a larger work of many volumes was called a tome (TŌM)—etymologically, a part cut from the whole. Today, a tome designates, often disparagingly, an exceptionally large book, or one that is heavy and dull in content.

The Greek prefix dicha-, in two, combines with tome to construct dichotomy (di-KOT′-ə-mee), a splitting in two, a technical word used in astronomy, biology, botany, and the science of logic. It is also employed as a non-technical term, as when we refer to the dichotomy in the life of a man who is a government clerk all day and a night-school teacher after working hours, so that his life is, in a sense, split into two parts. The verb is dichotomize (di-KOT′-ə-mīz′); the adjective is dichotomous (di-KOT′-ə-məs). Dichotomous
thinking is the sort that divides everything into two parts—good and bad; white and black; Democrats and Republicans; etc. An unknown wit has made this classic statement about dichotomous thinking: “There are two kinds of people: those who divide everything into two parts, and those who do not.”

Imagine a book, a complicated or massive report, or some other elaborate document—now figuratively cut on or through it so that you can get to its essence, the very heart of the idea contained in it. What you have is an epitome (ə-PIT-ə-mee), a condensation of the whole. (From epi-, on, upon, plus tome.)

An epitome may refer to a summary, condensation, or abridgment of language, as in “Let me have an epitome of the book,” or “Give me the epitome of his speech.”

More commonly, epitome and the verb epitomize (ə-PIT-ə-mīz’) are used in sentences like “She is the epitome of kindness,” or “That one act epitomizes her philosophy of life.” If you cut everything else away to get to the essential part, that part is a representative cross-section of the whole. So a woman who is the epitome of kindness stands for all people who are kind; and an act that epitomizes a philosophy of life represents, by itself, the complete philosophy.

3. love and words

Logos, we know, means science or study; it may also mean word or speech, as it does in philology (fə-LOL-ə-jee), etymologically the love of words (from Greek philein, to love, plus logos), or what is more commonly called linguistics (ling-GWIS-ticks), the science of language, a term derived from Latin lingua, tongue.

Can you write, and pronounce, the adjective form of philology? ____________.

4. more love

Philanthropy (fə-LAN-thrə-pee) is by etymology the love of mankind—one who devotes oneself to philanthropy is a philanthropist (fə-LAN-thrə-pist), as we learned in Chapter 3; the adjective is philanthropic (fil-ən-THROP-ik).

The verb philander (fə-LAN-dər), to “play around” sexually, be promiscuous, or have extramarital relations, combines philein with andros, male. (Philandering, despite its derivation, is not of course exclusively the male province. The word is, in fact, derived from the proper name conventionally given to male lovers in plays and romances of the 1500s and 1600s.) One who engages in the interesting activities catalogued above is a philanderer (fə-LAN-der-ər).

By etymology, philosophy is the love of wisdom (Greek sophos, wise); Philadelphia is the City of Brotherly Love (Greek adelphos, brother); philharmonic is the love of music or harmony (Greek harmonia, harmony); and a philter, a rarely used word, is a love potion. Today we call whatever arouses sexual desire an aphrodisiac (af′-rə-DIZ′-ee-ak′), from Aphrodite, the Greek goddess of love and beauty.

Aphrodisiac is an adjective as well as a noun, but a longer adjective form, aphrodisiacal (af′-rə-də-ZĪ′-ə-kəl), is also used.
A bibliophile (BIB′-lee-ə-fil′) is one who loves books as collectibles, admiring their binding, typography, illustrations, rarity, etc.—in short, a book collector. The combining root is Greek biblion, book.

An Anglophile (ANG′-glə-fil′) admires and is fond of the British people, customs, culture, etc. The combining root is Latin Anglus, English.

5. words and how they affect people

The semanticist is professionally involved in semantics (sə-MAN′-tiks). The adjective is semantic (sə-MAN′-tik) or semantical (sə-MAN′-tə-kəl).

Semantics, like orthopedics, pediatrics, and obstetrics, is a singular noun despite the -s ending. Semantics is, not are, an exciting study. However, this rule applies only when we refer to the word as a science or area of study. In the following sentence, semantics is used as a plural: “The semantics of your thinking are all wrong.”

Two stimulating and highly readable books on the subject, well worth a visit to the library to pick up, are Language in Thought and Action, by S. I. Hayakawa, and People in Quandaries, by Dr. Wendell Johnson.

6. how people live

The profession of the sociologist is sociology (sō′-shee-OL′-ə-jee or sō-see-OL′-ə-jee). Can you write, and pronounce, the adjective? ________________.

Sociology is built on Latin socius, companion,1 plus logos, science, study. Socius is the source of such common words as associate, social, socialize, society, sociable, and antisocial; as well as asocial (ay-SŌ′-shəl), which combines the negative prefix a- with socius.

The antisocial person actively dislikes people, and often behaves in ways that are detrimental or destructive to society or the social order (anti-, against).

On the other hand, someone who is asocial is withdrawn and self-centered, avoids contact with others, and feels completely indifferent to the interests or welfare of society. The asocial person doesn’t want to “get involved.”

REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. en-</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tome</td>
<td>a cutting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. in-</td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4. sectus
5. kentron (centrum)
6. a-
7. ana-
8. dicha-
9. epi-
10. logos
11. lingua
12. philein
13. sophos
14. adelphos
15. biblion
16. Anglus
17. socius
18.
18. anti- against

ENGLISH WORD __________

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. entomology en′-tə-MOL′-ə-jee
2. entomological en′-tə-mə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
3. eccentric ək-SEN′-trik
4. eccentricity ək′-sən-TRIS′-ə-tee
5. atom AT′-əm
6. atomic ə-TOM′-ik
7. anatomy ə-NAT′-ə-mee
8. anatomical an′-ə-TOM′-ə-kəl
9. tome TŌM
10. dichotomy dī-KOT′-ə-mee
11. dichotomous dī-KOT′-ə-məs
12. dichotomize dī-KOT′-ə-mīz′

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. epitome ə-PIT′-ə-mee
2. epitomize ə-PIT′-ə-mīz′
3. philology fə-LOL′-ə-jee
4. philological fil′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
5. linguistics ling-GWIS′-tiks
6. philanthropy fə-LAN′-thrə-pée
7. philanthropist fə-LAN′-thrə-pist
8. philanthropic fil′-ən-THROP′-ik
9. philander  fə-LAN′-dər
10. philanderer  fə-LAN′-dər-ər

Can you pronounce the words? (III)

1. philter  FIL′-tər
2. aphrodisiac  af′-rə-DIZ′-ee-ak′
3. aphrodisiacal  af′-rə-də-ZĪ′-ə-kəl
4. bibliophile  BIB′-lee-ə-fil′
5. Anglophile  ANG′-glə-fil′
6. semantics  sə-MAN′-tiks
7. semantic  sə-MAN′-tik
8. semantical  sə-MAN′-tə-kəl
9. sociology  sō′-shee-OL′-ə-je or sō′-see-OL′-ə-je
10. sociological  sō′-shee-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl or sō′-see-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl
11. asocial  ay-SŌ′-shəl

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. entomology  a. physical structure
2. eccentricity  b. summary; representation of the whole
3. anatomy  c. science of the meanings and effects of words
4. dichotomy  d. linguistics
5. epitome  e. science dealing with insects
6. philology  f. science of social structures and customs
7. semantics  g. charitable works
8. sociology  h. that which causes sexual arousal
9. aphrodisiac  i. strangeness; oddness; unconventionality
10. philanthropy  j. condition or state of being split into two parts
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. dichotomize       a. dull, heavy book
2. epitomize         b. love potion; aphrodisiac
3. philander         c. pertaining to the study of language
4. philter           d. one fond of British people, customs, etc.
5. bibliophile       e. pertaining to the science of group cultures, conventions, etc.
6. Anglophile        f. to split in two
7. asocial           g. withdrawn from contact with people
8. tome              h. book collector
9. philological      i. to summarize
10. sociological      j. to engage in extramarital sex
Do you understand the words?

Is a philanderer likely to be faithful to a spouse?
YES   NO

Did Dr. Jekyll-Mr. Hyde lead a dichotomous existence?
YES   NO

Is an egoist the epitome of selfishness?
YES   NO

Is a philanthropist antisocial?
YES   NO

Is an aphrodisiac intended to reduce sexual interest?
YES   NO

Is a bibliophile’s chief aim the enjoyment of literature?
YES   NO

Does a philologist understand etymology?
YES   NO

Is a semanticist interested in more than the dictionary meanings of words?
YES   NO

Is an asocial person interested in improving social conditions?
YES   NO

Is a light novel considered a tome?
YES   NO
Can you recall the words?

pertaining to the study of social customs (adj.)
1. S__________

describing the psychological effects of words (adj.)
2. S__________ or S__________

lover and collector of books
3. B__________

make love promiscuously
4. P__________

pertaining to the science of linguistics (adj.)
5. P__________

describing the study of insects (adj.)
6. E__________

one who admires British customs
7. A__________

smallest particle, so-called
8. A__________

describing the structure of a body (adj.)
9. A__________

a dull, heavy book
10. T__________

split in two (adj.)
11. D__________

to split in two
12. D__________

describing a condensation, summary, or representation of the whole
13. E__________

to stand for the whole; to summarize
14. E__________

describing charitable activities (adj.)
15. P__________

out of the norm; odd
16. E__________

one who “plays around”
17. P__________
arousing sexual desire (adj.)
18. A______________ or A______________
science of the manner in which groups function
19. S______________
self-isolated from contact with people
20. A______________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

1. Student of the stars and other heavenly phenomena:
   (a) geologist, (b) astronomer, (c) anthropologist
2. Student of plant life:
   (a) botanist, (b) zoologist, (c) biologist
3. Student of insect life:
   (a) sociologist, (b) entomologist, (c) etymologist
4. Student of the meaning and psychology of words:
   (a) philologist, (b) semanticist, (c) etymologist
5. Analysis of living tissue:
   (a) autopsy, (b) biopsy, (c) autonomy
6. That which arouses sexual desire:
   (a) zodiac, (b) bibliophile, (c) aphrodisiac
7. Self-governing:
   (a) autobiographical, (b) autonomous, (c) dichotomous
8. Part that represents the whole:
   (a) epitome, (b) dichotomy, (c) metronome
9. One who physically travels in space:
   (a) astronaut, (b) astrologer, (c) astronaut
10. One who has extramarital affairs:
    (a) cosmonaut, (b) philanderer, (c) philanthropist
B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>anthropos</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>anthropology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>logos</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>philology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>astron</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>astronomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>nautes</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>astronaut</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>nomos</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>metronome</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>autos</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>autonomy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>ge</em> (<em>geo</em>-)</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>geology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <em>graphein</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>biography</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <em>opsis</em>, <em>optikos</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>autopsy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>zoion</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>zodiac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. <em>tome</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>entomology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. <em>sectus</em></td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE insect
13. *lingua* ___________________
EXAMPLE linguistics
14. *philein* ___________________
EXAMPLE philanthropy
15. *sophos* ___________________
EXAMPLE philosophy
16. *biblion* ___________________
EXAMPLE bibliophile
17. *Anglus* ___________________
EXAMPLE Anglophile
18. *socius* ___________________
EXAMPLE sociology
19. *logos* ___________________
EXAMPLE biology
20. *bios* ___________________
EXAMPLE biopsy
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. Recalling the root *sophos*, wise, and thinking of the English word *moron*, write the name given to a second-year student in high school or college: ____________. Etymologically, what does this word mean? _____________.

2. Based on the root *sophos*, what word means *worldly-wise*? _____________.

3. Thinking of *bibliophile*, define *bibliomaniac*: _____________.

4. These three words, based on *lingua*, tongue, use prefixes we have discussed. Can you define each one?
   (a) monolingual _____________.
   (b) bilingual _____________.
   (c) trilingual _____________.

   Can you, now, guess at the meaning of *multilingual*? _____________.

   How about *linguist*? _____________.

   What do you suppose the Latin root *multus* means? _____________. (Think of *multitude*.)

5. With *Anglophile* as your model, can you figure out what country and its people, customs, etc. each of the following admires?
   (a) Francophile _____________.
   (b) Russophile _____________.
   (c) Hispanophile _____________.
   (d) Germanophile _____________.
   (e) Nipponophile _____________.
   (f) Sinophile _____________.

6. Using roots you have learned, and with *bibliophile* as your model, can you construct a word for:
   (a) one who loves males: _____________.
   (b) one who loves women: _____________.
   (c) one who loves children: _____________.
   (d) one who loves animals: _____________.

WHERE TO GET NEW IDEAS

People with superior vocabularies, I have submitted, are the people with ideas. The words they know are verbal symbols of the ideas they are familiar with—reduce one and you must reduce the other, for ideas cannot exist without verbalization. Freud once had an idea—and had to coin a whole new vocabulary to make his idea clear to the world. Those who are familiar with Freud’s theories know all the words that explain them—the unconscious, the ego, the id, the superego, rationalization, Oedipus complex, and so on. Splitting the atom was once a new idea—anyone familiar with it knew something about fission, isotope, radioactive, cyclotron, etc.

Remember this: your vocabulary indicates the alertness and range of your mind. The words you know show the extent of your understanding of what’s going on in the world. The size of your vocabulary varies directly with the degree to which you are growing intellectually.

You have covered so far in this book several hundred words. Having learned these words, you have begun to think of an equal number of new ideas. A new word is not just another pattern of syllables with which to clutter up your mind—a new word is a new idea to help you think, to help you understand the thoughts of others, to help you express your own thoughts, to help you live a richer intellectual life.

Realizing these facts, you may become impatient. You will begin to doubt that a book like this can cover all the ideas that an alert and intellectually mature adult wishes to be acquainted with. Your doubt is well-founded.

One of the chief purposes of this book is to get you started, to give you enough of a push so that you will begin to gather momentum, to stimulate you enough so that you will want to start gathering your own ideas.

Where can you gather them? From good books on new topics.
How can you gather them? By reading on a wide range of new subjects.

Reference has repeatedly been made to psychology, psychiatry, and psychoanalysis in these pages. If your curiosity has been piqued by these references, here is a good place to start. In these fields there is a tremendous and exciting literature—and you can read as widely and as deeply as you wish.

What I would like to do is offer a few suggestions as to where you might profitably begin—how far you go will depend on your own interest.

I suggest, first, half a dozen older books (older, but still immensely valuable and completely valid) available at any large public library.

The Human Mind, by Karl A. Menninger
Mind and Body, by Flanders Dunbar
The Mind in Action, by Eric Berne
Understandable Psychiatry, by Leland E. Hinsie
Next, I suggest books on some of the newer approaches in psychology. These are available in inexpensive paperback editions as well as at your local library.

*I Ain’t Well—But I Sure Am Better*, by Jess Lair, Ph.D.
*The Disowned Self*, by Nathaniel Brandon
*A Primer of Behavioral Psychology*, by Adelaide Bry
*I’m OK—You’re OK*, by Thomas A. Harris, M.D.
*Freedom to Be* and *Man the Manipulator*, by Everett L. Shostrum
*Games People Play*, by Eric Berne, M.D.
*Love and Orgasm, Pleasure* and *The Language of the Body*, by Alexander Lowen, M.D.
*The Transparent Self*, by Sydney M. Jourard
*Don’t Say Yes When You Want to Say No*, by Herbert Fensterheim and Jean Baer
*Gestalt Therapy Verbatim*, by Frederick S. Perls
*Born to Win*, by Muriel James and Dorothy Jongeward
*Joy* and *Here Comes Everybody*, by William C. Schutz
*The Fifty-Minute Hour*, by Robert Lindner

(End of Session 13)

---

1 *Companion* itself has an interesting etymology—Latin *com-*-, with, plus *panis*, bread. If you are social, you enjoy breaking bread with companions. *Pantry* also comes from *panis*, though far more than bread is stored there.
Life, as you no doubt realize, is complicated enough these days. Yet puristic textbooks and English teachers with puristic ideas are striving to make it still more complicated. Their contribution to the complexity of modern living is the repeated claim that many of the natural, carefree, and popular expressions that most of us use every day are “bad English,” “incorrect grammar,” “vulgar,” or “illiterate.”

In truth, many of the former restrictions and “thou shalt nots” of academic grammar are now outmoded—most educated speakers quite simply ignore them.

Students in my grammar classes at Rio Hondo College are somewhat nonplused when they discover that correctness is not determined by textbook rules and cannot be enforced by schoolteacher edict. They invariably ask: “Aren’t you going to draw the line somewhere?”

It is neither necessary nor possible for any one person to “draw the line.” That is done—and quite effectively—by the people themselves, by the millions of educated people throughout the nation.

Of course certain expressions may be considered “incorrect” or “illiterate” or “bad grammar”—not because they violate puristic rules, but only because they are rarely if ever used by educated speakers.

Correctness, in short, is determined by current educated usage.

The following notes on current trends in modern usage are intended to help you come to a decision about certain controversial expressions. As you read each sentence, pay particular attention to the italicized word or words. Does the usage square with your own language patterns? Would you be willing to phrase your thoughts in just such terms? Decide whether the sentence is “right” or “wrong,” then compare your conclusions with the opinions given after the test.

TEST YOURSELF

Let’s not walk any further right now.
RIGHT    WRONG
Some people admit that their principle goal in life is to become wealthy.
RIGHT    WRONG
What a nice thing to say!
RIGHT    WRONG
He’s pretty sick today.
I feel awfully sick.

Are you going to invite Doris and I to your party?

1. Let’s not walk any further right now.
   
   In the nineteenth century, when professional grammarians attempted to Latinize English grammar, an artificial distinction was drawn between farther and further, to wit: farther refers to space, further means to a greater extent or additional. Today, as a result, many teachers who are still under the forbidding influence of nineteenth-century restrictions insist that it is incorrect to use one word for the other.

   To check on current attitudes toward this distinction, I sent the test sentence above to a number of dictionary editors, authors, and professors of English, requesting their opinion of the acceptability of further in reference to actual distance. Sixty out of eighty-seven professors, over two thirds of those responding, accepted the usage without qualification. Of twelve dictionary editors, eleven accepted further, and in the case of the authors, thirteen out of twenty-three accepted the word as used. A professor of English at Cornell University remarked: “I know of no justification for any present-day distinction between further and farther”; and a consulting editor of the Funk and Wagnalls dictionary said, “There is nothing controversial here. As applied to spatial distance, further and farther have long been interchangeable.”

   Perhaps the comment of a noted author and columnist is most to the point: “I like both further and farther, as I have never been able to tell which is which or why one is any farther or further than the other.”

2. Some people admit that their principle goal in life is to become wealthy.
   
   In speech, you can get principal and principle confused as often as you like, and no one will ever know the difference—both words are pronounced identically. In writing, however, your spelling will give you away.

   There is a simple memory trick that will help you if you get into trouble with these two words. Rule and principle both end in -le—and a principle is a rule. On the other hand, principal contains an a, and so does main—and principal means main. Get these points straight and your confusion is over.

   Heads of schools are called principals, because they are the main person in that institution of learning. The money you have in the bank is your principal, your main financial assets. And the stars of a play are principals—the main actors.

   Thus, “Some people admit that their principal (main) goal in life is to become wealthy,” but “Such a principle (rule) is not guaranteed to lead to happiness.”

3. What a nice thing to say!
   
   Purists object to the popular use of nice as a synonym for pleasant, agreeable, or delightful. They wish to restrict the word to its older and more erudite meaning of exact or subtle. You will be happy to hear that they aren’t getting anywhere.

   When I polled a group of well-known authors on the acceptability in everyday speech of the popular meaning of nice, their opinions were unanimous; not a single dissenting voice,
out of the twenty-three authors who answered, was raised against the usage. One writer responded: “It has been right for about 150 years …”

Editors of magazines and newspapers questioned on the same point were just a shade more conservative. Sixty out of sixty-nine accepted the usage. One editor commented: “I think we do not have to be nice about nice any longer. No one can eradicate it from popular speech as a synonym for pleasant, or enjoyable, or kind, or courteous. It is a workhorse of the vocabulary, and properly so.”

The only valid objection to the word is that it is overworked by some people, but this shows a weakness in vocabulary rather than in grammar.

As in the famous story of the editor who said to her secretary: “There are two words I wish you would stop using so much. One is ‘nice’ and the other is ‘lousy.’ ”

“Okay,” said the secretary, who was eager to please. “What are they?”

4. He’s pretty sick today.

RIGHT. One of the purist’s pet targets of attack is the word pretty as used in the sentence under discussion. Yet all modern dictionaries accept such use of pretty, and a survey made by a professor at the University of Wisconsin showed that the usage is established English.

5. I feel awfully sick.

RIGHT. Dictionaries accept this usage in informal speech and the University of Wisconsin survey showed that it is established English.

The great popularity of awfully in educated speech is no doubt due to the strong and unique emphasis that the word gives to an adjective—substitute very, quite, extremely, or severely and you considerably weaken the force.

On the other hand, it is somewhat less than cultivated to say “I feel awful sick,” and the wisdom of using awfully to intensify a pleasant concept (“What an awfully pretty child”; “That book is awfully interesting”) is perhaps still debatable, though getting less and less so as the years go on.

6. Are you going to invite Doris and I to your party?

WRONG. Some people are almost irresistibly drawn to the pronoun I in constructions like this one. However, not only does such use of I violate a valid and useful grammatical principle, but, more important, it is rarely heard in educated speech. The meaning of the sentence is equally clear no matter which form of the pronoun is employed, of course, but the use of I, the less popular choice, may stigmatize the speaker as uneducated.

Consider it this way: You would normally say, “Are you going to invite me to your party?” It would be wiser, therefore, to say, “Are you going to invite Doris and me to your party?”
HOW TO TALK ABOUT LIARS AND LYING

(Sessions 14–17)

TEASER PREVIEW

What kind of liar are you if you:

* have developed a reputation for falsehood?
* are particularly skillful?
* cannot be reformed?
* have become habituated to your vice?
* started to lie from the moment of your birth?
* always lie?
* cannot distinguish fact from fancy?
* suffer no pangs of conscience?
* are suspiciously smooth and fluent in your lying?
* tell vicious lies?
It was the famous Greek philosopher and cynic Diogenes who went around the streets of Athens, lantern in hand, looking for an honest person. This was over two thousand years ago, but I presume that Diogenes would have as little success in his search today. Lying seems to be an integral weakness of mortal character—I doubt that few human beings would be so brash as to claim that they have never in their lives told at least a partial untruth. Indeed, one philologist goes so far as to theorize that language must have been invented for the sole purpose of deception. Perhaps so. It is certainly true that animals seem somewhat more honest than humans, maybe because they are less gifted mentally.

Why do people lie? To increase their sense of importance, to escape punishment, to gain an end that would otherwise be denied them, out of long-standing habit, or sometimes because they actually do not know the difference between fact and fancy. These are the common reasons for falsification. No doubt there are other, fairly unique, motives that impel people to distort the truth. And, to come right down to it, can we always be certain what is true and what is false?

If lying is a prevalent and all-too-human phenomenon, there would of course be a number of interesting words to describe different types of liars.

Let us pretend (not to get personal, but only to help you become personally involved in the ideas and words) that you are a liar. The question is, what kind of liar are you?

IDEAS

1. you don’t fool even some of the people

Everybody knows your propensity for avoiding facts. You have built so solid and unsavory a reputation that only a stranger is likely to be misled—and then, not for long.

A notorious liar

2. to the highest summits of artistry

Your ability is top-drawer—rarely does anyone lie as convincingly or as artistically as you do. Your skill has, in short, reached the zenith of perfection. Indeed, your mastery of the art is so great that your lying is almost always crowned with success—and you have no trouble seducing an unwary listener into believing that you are telling gospel truth.

A consummate liar
3. beyond redemption or salvation

You are impervious to correction. Often as you may be caught in your fabrications, there is no reforming you—you go right on lying despite the punishment, embarrassment, or unhappiness that your distortions of truth may bring upon you.

An incorrigible liar

4. too old to learn new tricks

You are the victim of firmly fixed and deep-rooted habits. Telling untruths is as frequent and customary an activity as brushing your teeth in the morning, or having toast and coffee for breakfast, or lighting up a cigarette after dinner (if you are a smoker). And almost as reflexive.

An inveterate liar

5. an early start

You have such a long history of persistent falsification that one can only suspect that your vice started when you were reposing in your mother’s womb. In other words, and allowing for a great deal of exaggeration for effect, you have been lying from the moment of your birth.

A congenital liar

6. no letup

You never stop lying. While normal people lie on occasion, and often for special reasons, you lie continually—not occasionally or even frequently, but over and over.

A chronic liar

7. a strange disease

You are not concerned with the difference between truth and falsehood; you do not bother to distinguish fact from fantasy. In fact, your lying is a disease that no antibiotic can cure.

A pathological liar

8. no regrets

You are completely without a conscience. No matter what misery your fabrications may cause your innocent victims, you never feel the slightest twinge of guilt. Totally
unscrupulous, you are a dangerous person to get mixed up with.

An *unconscionable* liar

9. smooth!

Possessed of a lively imagination and a ready tongue, you can distort facts as smoothly and as effortlessly as you can say your name. But you do not always get away with your lies.

Ironically enough, it is your very smoothness that makes you suspect: your answers are too quick to be true. Even if we can’t immediately catch you in your lies, we have learned from unhappy past experience not to suspend our critical faculties when you are talking. We admire your nimble wit, but we listen with a skeptical ear.

A *glib* liar

10. outstanding!

Lies, after all, are bad—they are frequently injurious to other people, and may have a particularly dangerous effect on you as a liar. At best, if you are caught you suffer some embarrassment. At worst, if you succeed in your deception your character becomes warped and your sense of values suffers. Almost all lies are harmful; some are no less than vicious.

If you are one type of liar, *all* your lies are vicious—calculatedly, predeterminedly, coldly, and advisedly vicious. In short, your lies are so outstandingly hurtful that people gasp in amazement and disgust at hearing them.

An *egregious* liar

In this chapter the ten basic words revolve rather closely around a central core. Each one, however, has a distinct, a unique meaning, a special implication. Note the differences.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TYPE OF LIAR</th>
<th>SPECIAL IMPLICATION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. notorious</td>
<td>famous—or infamous—for lying; tendency to falsify is well-known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. consummate</td>
<td>great skill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. incorrigible</td>
<td>too far gone to be reformed—impervious to rehabilitation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. inveterate</td>
<td>lying has become a deep-rooted habit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. congenital</td>
<td>lying had very early beginnings—as if from birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. chronic</td>
<td>over and over</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. pathological
   an irresistible compulsion to lie—often for no rational reason; lying is a disease
8. unconscionable
   lack of regret or remorse
9. glib
   great smoothness
10. egregious
    viciousness of the lies

These ten expressive adjectives, needless to say, are not restricted to lying or liars. Note their general meanings:

1. notorious
   well-known for some bad quality—a notorious philanderer
2. consummate
   perfect, highly skilled—consummate artistry at the keyboard
3. incorrigible
   beyond reform—an incorrigible optimist
4. inveterate
   long-accustomed, deeply habituated—an inveterate smoker (this adjective, like notorious, usually has an unfavorable connotation)
5. congenital
   happening at or during birth—a congenital deformity
6. chronic
   going on for a long time, or occurring again and again—chronic appendicitis
7. pathological
   diseased—a pathological condition
8. unconscionable
   without pangs of conscience—unconscionable cruelty to children
9. glib
   smooth, suspiciously fluent—a glib witness
10. egregious
    outstandingly bad or vicious—an egregious error

With the exception of consummate and congenital, all ten adjectives have strongly derogatory implications and are generally used to describe people, characteristics, or conditions we disapprove of.

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>notorious</td>
<td>nə-TAWR′-ee-əs</td>
<td>1. beyond reform</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>consummate</td>
<td>KAHN′-sə-mət</td>
<td>2. continuing over a long period of time; recurring</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incorrigible</td>
<td>in-KAWR′-ə-jə-bəl</td>
<td>3. diseased</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inveterate</td>
<td>in-VET′-ə-rət</td>
<td>4. from long-standing habit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>congenital</td>
<td>kən-JEN′-ə-təl</td>
<td>5. suspiciously smooth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>chronic</td>
<td>KRON′-ik</td>
<td>6. without conscience or scruples</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pathological</td>
<td>path′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl</td>
<td>7. outstandingly bad or vicious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unconscionable</td>
<td>un-KON′-shə-nə-bəl</td>
<td>8. unfavorably known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>glib</td>
<td>GLIB</td>
<td>9. from birth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egregious</td>
<td>ə-GREE′-jəs</td>
<td>10. finished, perfect, artistic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

Do people become notorious for good acts?
YES  NO

Is Beethoven considered a consummate musical genius?
YES  NO

If a criminal is truly incorrigible, is there any point in attempting rehabilitation?
YES  NO

Does an inveterate smoker smoke only occasionally?
YES  NO

Is a congenital deformity one that occurs late in life?
YES  NO

Is a chronic invalid ill much of the time?
YES  NO

Is a pathological condition normal and healthy?
YES  NO

If a person commits an unconscionable act of cruelty, is there any regret, remorse, or guilt?
YES  NO

Is a glib talker awkward and hesitant in speech?
YES  NO

Is an egregious error very bad?
YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

outstandingly vicious; so bad as to be in a class by itself
1. E__________

starting at birth
2. C__________

happening over and over again; continuing for a long time
3. C__________

widely and unfavorably known (as for antisocial acts, character weaknesses, immoral or unethical behavior, etc.)
4. N__________

beyond correction
5. I__________

smooth and persuasive; unusually, almost suspiciously, fluent
6. G__________

long addicted to a habit
7. I__________

perfect in the practice of an art; extremely skillful
8. C__________

unscrupulous; entirely without conscience
9. U__________

diseased
10. P__________
Can you use the words?

As a result of the tests you are taking, you are becoming more and more familiar with these ten valuable and expressive words. Now, as a further check on your learning, write the word that best fits each blank.

1. This person has gambled, day in and day out, for as long as anyone can remember—gambling has become a deep-rooted habit.
   1. An ______________ gambler

2. Born with a clubfoot
   2. A ______________ deformity

3. Someone known the world over for criminal acts
   3. A ______________ criminal

4. An invading army kills, maims, and tortures without mercy, compunction, or regret.
   4. ______________ acts of cruelty

5. The suspect answers the detective’s questions easily, fluently, almost too smoothly.
   5. ______________ responses

6. A person reaches the acme of perfection as an actress or actor.
   6. A ______________ performer

7. No one can change someone’s absurdly romantic attitude toward life.
   7. An ______________ romantic

8. A mistake so bad that it defies description
   8. An ______________ blunder

9. Drunk almost all the time, again and again and again—periods of sobriety are few and very, very far between
   9. A ______________ alcoholic

10. Doctors find a persistent, dangerous infection in the bladder 
   10. A ______________ condition
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. well-known

“Widely but unfavorably known” is the common definition for notorious. Just as a notorious liar is well-known for unreliable statements, so a notorious gambler, a notorious thief, or a notorious killer has achieved a wide reputation for some form of antisocial behavior. The noun is notoriety (nō-tə-RĪ′-ə-tee).

The derivation is from Latin notus, known, from which we also get noted. It is an interesting characteristic of some words that a change of syllables can alter the emotional impact. Thus, an admirer of certain business executives will speak of them as “noted industrialists”; these same people’s enemies will call them “notorious exploiters.” Similarly, if we admire a man’s or a woman’s unworldliness, we refer to it by the complimentary term childlike; but if we are annoyed by the trait, we describe it, derogatively, as childish. Change “-like” to “-ish” and our emotional tone undergoes a complete reversal.

2. plenty of room at the top

The top of a mountain is called, as you know, the summit, a word derived from Latin summus, highest, which also gives us the mathematical term sum, as in addition. A consummate artist has reached the very highest point of perfection; and to consummate (KAHN′-sə-mət) a marriage, a business deal, or a contract is, etymologically, to bring it to the highest point; that is, to put the final touches to it, to bring it to completion.

[Note how differently consummate (KAHN′-sə-mət), the adjective, is pronounced from the verb to consummate (KAHN′-sə-mət)].

Nouns are formed from adjectives by the addition of the noun suffix -ness: sweet—sweetness; simple—simplicity; envious—enviousness; etc.

Many adjectives, however, have alternate noun forms, and the adjective consummate is one of them. To make a noun out of consummate, add either -ness or -acy; consummateness (KAHN′-sə-mət-nəs) or consummacy (KAHN′-sə-mə-see).

Verbs ending in -ate invariably tack on the noun suffix -ion to form nouns: create—creation; evaluate—evaluation; etc.

Can you write the noun form of the verb to consummate?

3. no help

Call people incorrigible (in-KAWR′-ə-jə-bəl) if they do anything to excess, and if all efforts
to correct or reform them are to no avail. Thus, one can be an *incorrigible* idealist, an *incorrigible* criminal, an *incorrigible* optimist, or an *incorrigible* philanderer. The word derives from Latin *corrigo*, to correct or set straight, plus the negative prefix *in-* (This prefix, depending on the root it precedes, may be negative, may intensify the root, as in *invaluable*, or may mean *in*.)

The noun is *incorrigibility* (in-kawr′-ə-jə-BIL′-ə-tee) or, alternatively, *incorrigibleness*.

4. veterans

*Inveterate*, from Latin *vetus*, old,\(^1\) generally indicates disapproval. *Inveterate* gamblers have grown old in the habit, etymologically speaking; *inveterate* drinkers have been imbibing for so long that they, too, have formed old, well-established habits; and *inveterate* liars have been lying for so long, and their habits are by now so deep-rooted, that one can scarcely remember (the word implies) when they ever told the truth.

The noun is *inveteracy* (in-VET′-ər-ə-see) or *inveterateness*.

A *veteran* (VET′-ə-rən), as of the Armed Forces, grew older serving the country; otherwise a *veteran* is an old hand at the game (and therefore skillful). The word is both a noun and an adjective: a *veteran* at (or in) swimming, tennis, police work, business, negotiations, diplomacy—or a *veteran* actor, teacher, diplomat, political reformer.

5. birth

Greek *genesis*, birth or origin, a root we discovered in discussing *psychogenic* (Chapter 5), is the source of a great many English words.

*Genetics* (jə-NET′-iks) is the science that treats of the transmission of hereditary characteristics from parents to offspring. The scientist specializing in the field is a *geneticist* (jə-NET′-ə-sist), the adjective is *genetic* (jə-NET′-ik). The particle in the chromosome of the germ cell containing a hereditary characteristic is a *gene* (JEEN).

*Genealogy* (jeen′-ee-AL′-ə-jee) is the study of family trees or ancestral origins (*logos*, study). The practitioner is a *genealogist* (jeen′-ee-AL′-ə-jist). Can you form the adjective? ___________. (And can you pronounce it?)

The *genital* (GEN′-ə-tal), or sexual, organs are involved in the process of conception and birth. The *genesis* (JEN′-ə-sis) of anything—a plan, idea, thought, career, etc.—is its beginning, birth, or origin, and *Genesis*, the first book of the Old Testament, describes the creation, or birth, of the universe.

*Congenital* is constructed by combining the prefix *con-* with or together, and the root *genesis*, birth.

So a *congenital* defect, deformity, condition, etc. occurs during the nine-month birth process (or period of gestation, to become technical). *Hereditary* (hə-RED′-ə-tair′-ee) characteristics, on the other hand, are acquired at the moment of conception. Thus, eye color, nose shape, hair texture, and other such qualities are *hereditary*; they are determined by the *genes* in the germ cells of the mother and father. But a thalidomide baby resulted from the use of the drug by a pregnant woman, so the deformities were *congenital*. 
Congenital is used both literally and figuratively. Literally, the word generally refers to some medical deformity or abnormality occurring during gestation. Figuratively, it wildly exaggerates, for effect, the very early existence of some quality: congenital liar, congenital fear of the dark, etc.

**REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>ENGLISH WORD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. notus</td>
<td>known</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. summus</td>
<td>highest</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. corrigō</td>
<td>to correct, set straight</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. vētus</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. senex</td>
<td>old</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. genesis</td>
<td>birth, origin</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. logos</td>
<td>science, study</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. in-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USING THE WORDS**

Can you pronounce the words?

1. notoriety  nō-tə-RĪ-ə-tee
2. to consummate (v.)  KON′-sə-mayt′
3. consummacy  kən-SUM′-ə-see
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>consummation</td>
<td>kon′-sə-MAY′-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incorrigibility</td>
<td>in-kawr′-ə-jə-BIL′-ə-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inveteracy</td>
<td>in-VET′-ə-ra-see</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>veteran</td>
<td>VET′-ə-rən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genetics</td>
<td>jə-NET′-iks</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geneticist</td>
<td>jə-NET′-ə-sist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genetic</td>
<td>jə-NET′-ik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gene</td>
<td>JEEN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genealogy</td>
<td>jee′-nee-AL′-ə-jee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genealogist</td>
<td>jee′-nee-AL′-ə-jist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genealogical</td>
<td>jee′-nee-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genital</td>
<td>JEN′-ə-təl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genesis</td>
<td>JEN′-ə-sis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hereditary</td>
<td>hə-RED′-ə-tair′-ee</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can you work with the words?**

1. notoriety  
2. to consummate (v.)  
3. consummacy  
4. incorrigibility  
5. inveteracy  
6. genetics  
7. genealogy  
8. genital  
9. genesis  
10. hereditary  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. notoriety</td>
<td>a. state of artistic height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. to consummate (v.)</td>
<td>b. state of being long established in a habit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. consummacy</td>
<td>c. beginning, origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. incorrigibility</td>
<td>d. science of heredity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. inveteracy</td>
<td>e. bring to completion; top off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. genetics</td>
<td>f. study of ancestry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. genealogy</td>
<td>g. referring to characteristics passed on to</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>offspring by parents</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. genital</td>
<td>h. referring to reproduction, or to the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>reproductive or sexual organs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. genesis</td>
<td>i. ill fame</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. hereditary</td>
<td>j. particle that transmits hereditary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>characteristics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
11. gene

k. state of being beyond reform or correction
Do you understand the words?

Does *notoriety* usually come to perpetrators of mass murders?

YES  NO

Is the product of a *consummately* skillful counterfeiter likely to be taken as genuine?

YES  NO

Is *incorrigibility* in a criminal a sign that rehabilitation is possible?

YES  NO

Is a *geneticist* interested in your parents’ characteristics?

YES  NO

Does *inveteracy* suggest that a habit is new?

YES  NO

When you *consummate* a deal, do you back out of it?

YES  NO

Is a *veteran* actress long experienced at her art?

YES  NO

Do *genes* determine heredity?

YES  NO

Is a *genealogist* interested in your family origins?

YES  NO

Are the *genital* organs used in reproduction?

YES  NO

Is the *genesis* of something the final point?

YES  NO

Are *hereditary* characteristics derived from parents?

YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

sexual; reproductive
1. G__________
to complete
2. C__________
wide and unfavorable reputation
3. N__________
particle in the chromosome of a cell that transmits a characteristic from parent to offspring
4. G__________
completion
5. C__________
inability to be reformed
6. I__________
the science that deals with the transmission of characteristics from parents to children
7. G__________
referring to a quality or characteristic that is inherited (adj.)
8. H__________
beginning or origin
9. G__________
student of family roots or origins
10. G__________
height of skill or artistry
11. C__________ or C__________
transmitted by heredity
12. G__________
quality of a habit that has been established over many years
13. I__________ or I__________
a person long experienced at a profession, art, or business
14. V__________
pertaining to a study of family origins (adj.)
15. G__________
(End of Session 15)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. of time and place

A *chronic* liar lies constantly, again and again and again; a *chronic* invalid is ill time after time, frequently, repeatedly. The derivation of the word is Greek *chronos*, time. The noun form is *chronicity* (krə-NIS′-ə-tee).

A *anachronism* (ə-NAK′-rə-niz-əm) is someone or something out of time, out of date, belonging to a different era, either earlier or later. (The prefix *ana-* like *a-* is negative.) The adjective is *anachronous* (ə-NAK′-rə-nəs) or *anachronistic* (ə-nak′-rə-NIS′-tik).

Wander along Fifty-ninth Street and Central Park in Manhattan some Sunday. You will see horse-drawn carriages with top-hatted coachmen—a vestige of the 1800s. Surrounded by twentieth-century motorcars and modern skyscrapers, these romantic vehicles of a bygone era are *anachronous*.

Read a novel in which a scene is supposedly taking place in the nineteenth century and see one of the characters turning on a TV set. An *anachronism*!

Your friend talks, thinks, dresses, and acts as if he were living in the time of Shakespeare. Another *anachronism*!

Science ϧction is deliberately *anachronous*—it deals with phenomena, gadgetry, accomplishments far off (possibly) in the future.

An *anachronism* is out of time; something out of place is *incongruous* (in-KONG′-grə-əs), a word combining the negative prefix *in-*-, the prefix *con-*-, with or together, and a Latin verb meaning to agree or correspond.

Thus, it is *incongruous* to wear a sweater and slacks to a formal wedding; it is *anachronous* to wear the wasp waist, conspicuous bustle, or powdered wig of the eighteenth century. The noun form of *incongruous* is *incongruity* (in-kəng-GRō′-ə-tee).

*Chronological* (kron-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl), in correct time order, comes from *chronos*. To tell a story *chronologically* is to relate the events in the time order of their occurrence. *Chronology* (krə-NOL′-ə-jee) is the science of time order and the accurate dating of events (*logos*, science)—the expert in this field is a *chronologist* (krə-NOL′-ə-jist)—or a list of events in the time order in which they have occurred or will occur.

A *chronometer* (krə-NOM′-ə-tər), combining *chronos* with *metron*, measurement, is a highly accurate timepiece, especially one used on ships. *Chronometry* (krə-NOM′-ə-tree) is the measurement of time—the adjective is *chronometric* (kron′-ə-MET′-rik).

Add the prefix *syn-*-, together, plus the verb suffix *-ize*, to *chronos*, and you have constructed *synchronize* (SIN′-krə-niz′), etymologically to *time together*, or to move, happen, or cause to happen, at the same time or rate. If you and your friend *synchronize* your watches, you set them at the same time. If you *synchronize* the activity of your arms and
legs, as in swimming, you move them at the same time or rate. The adjective is *synchronous* (sin′-krə-nəs); the noun form of the verb *synchronize* is *synchronization* (sin′-krə-nə-ZAY′-shən).

2. disease, suffering, teeling

*Pathological* is *diseased* (a *pathological* condition)—this meaning of the word ignores the root *logos*, science, study.

*Pathology* (pə-THOL′-ə-jee) is the science or study of disease—its nature, cause, cure, etc. However, another meaning of the noun ignores *logos*, and *pathology* may be any morbid, diseased, or abnormal physical condition or conditions; in short, simply *disease*, as in “This case involves so many kinds of *pathology* that several different specialists are working on it.”

A *pathologist* (pə-THOL′-ə-jist) is an expert who examines tissue, often by autopsy or biopsy, to diagnose disease and interpret the abnormalities in such tissue that may be caused by specific diseases.

*Pathos* occurs in some English words with the additional meaning of *feeling*. If you feel or suffer with someone, you are *sympathetic* (sim-pə-THET′-ik)— *sym-* is a respelling before the letter *p* of the Greek prefix *syn-* with or together. The noun is *sympathy* (SIM′-pə-thee), the verb *sympathize* (SIM′-pə-thīz). Husbands, for example, so the story goes, may have *sympathetic* labor pains when their wives are about to deliver.

The prefix *anti-* you will recall, means *against*. If you experience *antipathy* (an-TIP′-ə-thee) to people or things, you feel *against* them—you feel strong dislike or hostility. The adjective is *antipathetic* (an′-tə-pə-THET′-ik), as in “an *antipathetic* reaction to an authority figure.”

But you may have *no* feeling at all—just indifference, lack of any interest, emotion, or response, complete listlessness, especially when some reaction is normal or expected. Then you are *apathetic* (ap-ə-THET′-ik); *a-* as you know, is a negative prefix. The noun is *apathy* (AP′-ə-thee), as in voter *apathy*, student *apathy*, etc.

On the other hand, you may be so sensitive or perceptive that you not only share the feelings of another, but you also *identify* with those feelings, in fact experience them yourself as if momentarily you were that other person. What you have, then, is *empathy* (EM′-pə-thee); you *empathize* (EM′-pə-thīz′), you are *empathetic* (em-pə-THET′-ik), or, to use an alternate adjective, *empathic* (em-PATH′-ik). *Em-* is a respelling before the letter *p* of the Greek prefix *en-* in.

Someone is *pathetic* (pə-THET′-ik) who is obviously suffering—such a person may arouse sympathy or pity (or perhaps *antipathy*?) in you. A *pathetic* story is about suffering and, again, is likely to arouse sadness, sorrow, or pity.

Some interesting research was done many years ago by Dr. J. B. Rhine and his associates at Duke University on extrasensory perception; you will find an interesting account of Rhine’s work in his book *The Reach of the Mind*. What makes it possible for two people separated by miles of space to communicate with each other without recourse to messenger, telephone, telegraph, or postal service? It can be done, say the believers in *telepathy* (tə-LEP′-ə-thee), also called *mental telepathy*, though they do not yet admit to knowing how.
How can one person read the mind of another? Simple—by being *telepathic* (tel-ə-PATH′-ik), but no one can explain the chemistry or biology of it. *Telepathy* is built by combining *pathos*, feeling, with the prefix *tele-*, distance, the same prefix we found in *telephone*, *telegaph*, *telescope*.

*Telepathic* (tel-ə-PATH′-ik) communication occurs when people can feel each other’s thoughts from a distance, when they have ESP.

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>chronos</em></td>
<td>time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>ana-, a-</em></td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>con-</em></td>
<td>with, together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>in-</em></td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>logos</em></td>
<td>science, study</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>metron</em></td>
<td>measurement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>syn-, sym-</em></td>
<td>with, together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <em>-ize</em></td>
<td>verb suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <em>pathos</em></td>
<td>disease, suffering, feeling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>anti-</em></td>
<td>against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. <em>en-, em-</em></td>
<td>in</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>_________________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. **tele-**

ENGLISH WORD  

**distance**

### USING THE WORDS

#### Can you pronounce the words? (I)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH WORD</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. chronicity</strong></td>
<td>krə-NIS'-ə-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. anachronism</strong></td>
<td>ə-NAK'-rə-niz-əm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. anachronous</strong></td>
<td>ə-NAK'-rə-nəs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. anachronistic</strong></td>
<td>ə-nak'-rə-NIS'-tik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. incongruous</strong></td>
<td>in-KONG'-grə-əs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6. incongruity</strong></td>
<td>in'-kəŋ-GROO'-ə-tee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7. chronological</strong></td>
<td>kron'-ə-LOJ'-ə-kəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8. chronology</strong></td>
<td>krə-NOL'-ə-jee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9. chronologist</strong></td>
<td>krə-NOL'-ə-jist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10. chronometer</strong></td>
<td>krə-NOM'-ə-tər</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11. chronometry</strong></td>
<td>krə-NOM'-ə-tree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>12. chronometric</strong></td>
<td>kron'-ə-MET'-rɪk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>13. synchronize</strong></td>
<td>SIN'-krə-niːz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>14. synchronization</strong></td>
<td>sin'-krə-nə-ZAY'-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>15. synchronous</strong></td>
<td>SIN'-krə-nəs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Can you pronounce the words? (II)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH WORD</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. pathology</strong></td>
<td>pə-THOL'-ə-jee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. pathologist</strong></td>
<td>pə-THOL'-ə-jist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. sympathy</strong></td>
<td>SIM'-pə-thee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. sympathetic</strong></td>
<td>sim-pə-THET'-ɪk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. sympathize</strong></td>
<td>SIM'-pə-thɪz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
6. antipathy  an-TIP′-ə-thee
7. antipathetic  an′-tə-pə-THET′-ik
8. apathy  AP′-ə-thee
9. apathetic  ap-ə-THET′-ik
10. empathy  EM′-pə-thee
11. empathize  EM′-pə-thīz′
12. empathetic  em-pə-THET′-ik
13. empathic  em-PATH′-ik
14. pathetic  pə-THET′-ik
15. telepathy  tə-LEP′-ə-thee
16. telepathic  tel′-ə-PATH′-ik

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. chronicity  a. something, or state of being, out of place
2. anachronism  b. timepiece; device that measures time very accurately
3. incongruity  c. condition of continual or repeated recurrence
4. chronology  d. act of occurring, or of causing to occur, at the same time
5. chronometer  e. calendar of events in order of occurrence
6. chronometry  f. something, or someone, out of time
7. synchronization  g. measurement of time
8. pathology  h. a sharing or understanding of another’s feeling
9. sympathy  i. ESP; communication from a distance
10. telepathy  j. disease; study of disease
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>pathologist</td>
<td>d. one who examines tissue to diagnose disease</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>antipathy</td>
<td>b. share another’s feelings so strongly as to experience those feelings oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>apathy</td>
<td>c. out of time</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>empathy</td>
<td>a. identification with another’s feelings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>synchronize</td>
<td>e. occurring at the same time or rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>empathize</td>
<td>f. relating to extrasensory perception</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>anachronous</td>
<td>g. suffering; arousing sympathy or pity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>incongruous</td>
<td>h. lack of feeling; non-responsiveness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>synchronous</td>
<td>i. out of place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>pathetic</td>
<td>j. happen, or cause to happen, at the same time or rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>telepathic</td>
<td>k. hostility; strong dislike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

Are these dates in chronological order? 1492, 1941, 1586
YES  NO

Is pathology the study of healthy tissue?
YES  NO

Is telepathic communication carried on by telephone?
YES  NO

Does a sympathetic response show an understanding of another’s feelings?
YES  NO

Is one antipathetic to things, ideas, or people one finds agreeable?
YES  NO

Do apathetic people react strongly?
YES  NO

Does an empathic response show identification with the feelings of another?
YES  NO

Is a swimsuit incongruous attire at a formal ceremony?
YES  NO

Is an anachronistic attitude up to date?
YES  NO

Are synchronous movements out of time with one another?
YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

in order of time
1. C__________________
out of place
2. I__________________
4. out of time (two forms)
3. A__________________
4. A__________________
something, or state of being, out of place
5. I__________________
lack of feeling
6. A__________________
measurer of time
7. C__________________
study of disease
8. P__________________
feeling of hostility or dislike
9. A__________________
to occur, or cause to occur, at the same time or rate
10. S__________________
evoking sorrow or pity
11. P__________________
something out of time
12. A__________________
state of recurring again and again
13. C__________________
extranssensory perception
14. T__________________
one who examines tissue to diagnose disease
15. P__________________
identification with the feelings of another
16. E__________________
happening at the same time or rate (adj.)
17. S__________________
skillful at thought transference without sensory communication
18. T__________________
calendar of events in time sequence
19. C__________________
referring to the measurement of time (adj.)
20. C__________________
(End of Session 16)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. knowing

Psychopaths commit antisocial and unconscionable acts—they are not troubled by conscience, guilt, remorse, etc. over what they have done.

Unconscionable and conscience are related in derivation—the first word from Latin scio, to know, the second from Latin sciens, knowing, and both using the prefix con-, with, together.

Etymologically, then, your conscience is your knowledge with a moral sense of right and wrong; if you are unconscionable, your conscience is not (un-) working, or you have no conscience. The noun form is unconscionableness or unconscionability (un-kon′-shə-nə-BIL′-ə-tee).

Conscious, also from con- plus scio, is knowledge or awareness of one’s emotions or sensations, or of what’s happening around one.

Science, from sciens, is systematized knowledge as opposed, for example, to belief, faith, intuition, or guesswork.

Add Latin omnis, all, to sciens, to construct omniscient (om-NISH′-ənt), all-knowing, possessed of infinite knowledge. The noun is omniscience (om-NISH′-əns).

Add the prefix pre-, before, to sciens, to construct prescient (PREE′-shənt)—knowing about events before they occur, i.e., psychic, or possessed of unusual powers of prediction. The noun is prescience (PREE′-shəns).

And, finally, add the negative prefix ne- to sciens to produce nescient (NESH′-ənt), not knowing, or ignorant. Can you, by analogy with the previous two words, write the noun form of nescient? ___________. (Can you pronounce it?)

2. fool some of the people...

Glib is from an old English root that means slippery. Glib liars or glib talkers are smooth and slippery; they have ready answers, fluent tongues, a persuasive air—but, such is the implication of the word, they fool only the most nescient, for their smoothness lacks sincerity and conviction.

The noun is glibness.

3. herds and flocks

Egregious (remember the pronunciation? ə-GREE′-jəs) is from Latin grex, gregis, herd or
An egregious lie, act, crime, mistake, etc. is so exceptionally vicious that it conspicuously stands out (e-, a shortened form of the prefix ex-, out) from the herd or flock of other bad things.

The noun is egregiousness (ə-GREE′-jəs-nəs).

A person who enjoys companionship, who, etymologically, likes to be with the herd, who reaches out for friends and is happiest when surrounded by people—such a person is gregarious (grə-GAIR′-ee-əs).

Extroverts are of course gregarious—they prefer human contact, conversation, laughter, interrelationships, to solitude.

The suffix -ness, as you know, can be added to an adjective to construct a noun form. Write the noun for gregarious: __________________.

Add the prefix con-, with, together, to grex, gregis, to get the verb congregate (KONG′-grə-gayt′); add the prefix se-, apart, to build the verb segregate (SEG′-rə-gayt′); add the prefix ad-, to, toward (ad- changes to ag- before a root starting with g-), to construct the verb aggregate (AG-rə-gayt′).

Let’s see what we have. When people gather together in a herd or flock, they (write the verb) __________________.

The noun is congregation (cong′-grə-GAY′-shən), one of the meanings of which is a religious “flock.”

Put people or things apart from the herd, and you (write the verb) ______________ them. Can you construct the noun by adding the suitable noun suffix? ______________.

Bring individual items to or toward the herd or flock, and you (write the verb) ______________ them. What is the noun form of this verb? ______________.

The verb aggregate also means to come together to or toward the herd, that is, to gather into a mass or whole, or by extension, to total or amount to. So aggregate, another noun form, pronounced AG′-rə-gət, is a group or mass of individuals considered as a whole, a herd, or a flock, as in the phrase “people in the aggregate…”

REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. grex, gregis</td>
<td>herd, flock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. e-, ex-</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ness</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. con-</td>
<td>with, together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>Meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ad-, ag-</td>
<td>to, toward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. un-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. scio</td>
<td>to know</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. sciens</td>
<td>knowing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. omnis</td>
<td>all</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. pre-</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. ne-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. se-</td>
<td>apart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. -ion</td>
<td>noun suffix added to verbs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words?**

1. unconscionability  
   un-kon′-shə-nə-BIL′-ə-tee
2. omniscient         
   om-NISH′-ənt
3. omniscience        
   om-NISH′-əns
4. prescient           
   PREE′-shənt
5. prescience          
   PREE′-shəns
6. nescient           
   NESH′-ənt
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7. nescience</td>
<td>NESH-əns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. glibness</td>
<td>GLIB-nəs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. egregiousness</td>
<td>α-GREE-jəs-nəs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. gregarious</td>
<td>grə-GAIR-ee-əs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. gregariousness</td>
<td>grə-GAIR-ee-əs-nəs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. congregate</td>
<td>KONG-ər-gəyt'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. congregation</td>
<td>kong-ər-GAY-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. segregate</td>
<td>SEG-ə-r-gəyt'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. segregation</td>
<td>seg-ə-r-GAY-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. aggregate (v.)</td>
<td>AG-ə-r-gəyt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. aggregate (n.)</td>
<td>AG-ə-r-gət</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. aggregation</td>
<td>ag-ə-r-GAY-shən</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can you work with the words?**

1. unconscionability   
   a. ignorance
2. omniscience         
   b. outstanding badness or viciousness
3. prescience          
   c. religious group; a massing together
4. nescience           
   d. total; mass; whole
5. glibness            
   e. exclusion from the herd; a setting apart
6. egregiousness       
   f. infinite knowledge
7. gregariousness      
   g. friendliness; enjoyment of mixing with people
8. congregation        
   h. lack of conscience
9. segregation         
   i. suspiciously smooth fluency
10. aggregate (n.)      
    j. foreknowledge
Do you understand the words?

Is unconscionability one of the signs of the psychopath?
YES   NO

Can anyone be truly omniscient?
YES   NO

Does a prescient fear indicate some knowledge of the future?
YES   NO

Is nescience a result of learning?
YES   NO

Does glibness make someone sound sincere and trustworthy?
YES   NO

Is egregiousness an admirable quality?
YES   NO

Do gregarious people enjoy parties?
YES   NO

Do spectators congregate at sports events?
YES   NO

Do we often segregate hardened criminals from the rest of society?
YES   NO

Is an aggregation of problems a whole mass of problems?
YES   NO
Can you recall the words?

enjoying groups and companionship
1. G__________

ignorant
2. N__________

state of *not* being held back from antisocial behavior by one’s conscience
3. U__________
or U__________

having knowledge of an event before it occurs (*adj.*)
4. P__________
a religious “flock”
5. C__________
a total, whole, or mass
6. A__________
or A__________
to separate from the rest
7. S__________
suspiciously smooth fluency
8. G__________
all-knowing (*adj.*)
9. O__________
to come together into a group or mass
10. C__________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

1. Highly skilled:
   (a) consummate, (b) inveterate, (c) notorious
2. Beyond reform:
   (a) inveterate, (b) incorrigible, (c) glib
3. Dating from birth:
   (a) inveterate, (b) congenital, (c) psychopathic
4. Outstandingly bad:
   (a) egregious, (b) unconscionable, (c) chronic
5. Science of heredity:
   (a) pathology, (b) genetics, (c) orthopedics
6. Out of time:
   (a) incongruous, (b) anachronous, (c) synchronous
7. Study of disease:
   (a) pathology, (b) telepathy, (c) antipathy
8. Fond of company, friends, group activities, etc.:
   (a) apathetic, (b) gregarious, (c) chronological
9. Indifferent:
   (a) antipathetic, (b) pathetic, (c) apathetic
10. Long accustomed in habit:
    (a) incorrigible, (b) notorious, (c) inveterate
11. Study of family ancestry:
    (a) genealogy, (b) genetics, (c) genesis
12. To complete, finish, top off:
    (a) synchronize, (b) consummate, (c) empathize
13. Accurate timepiece:
    (a) anachronism, (b) chronology, (c) chronometer
14. Identification with the feelings of another:
    (a) sympathy, (b) apathy, (c) empathy
15. Thought transference; extrasensory perception:
16. Ignorance:
   (a) omniscience, (b) prescience, (c) nescience

17. To gather into a group:
   (a) congregate, (b) segregate, (c) synchronize
### B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>notus</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE notorious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>summus</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE summit</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>corrigo</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE incorrigible</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>vetus</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE veteran</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>senex</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE senile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>genesis</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE congenital</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>logos</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE genealogy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <em>chronos</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE chronic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <em>metron</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE chronometer</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>pathos</em></td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE pathology</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE pathetic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE  empathy

11. *grex, gregis*

EXAMPLE  gregarious

12. *scio*

EXAMPLE  unconscionable

13. *sciens*

EXAMPLE  prescience

14. *omnis*

EXAMPLE  omniscient
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. “She was one of many notables who attended the convention.” Recognizing that the italicized word is built on the root notus, can you define the noun notable in the context of known? __________.

2. Notify and notice derive from the same root. Can you define these two words, again in the context of known? Notify: __________. Notice: __________. What do you suppose the verb suffix -fy of notify means? (Think also of simplify, clarify, liquefy, etc.) __________.

3. You are familiar with the roots chronos and graphein. Suppose you came across the word chronograph in your reading. Can you make an educated guess as to the meaning? __________.

4. Recognizing the root genesis in the verb generate, how would you define the word? __________. How about regenerate? __________. What do you suppose the prefix re- means? __________.

5. Recognizing the root omnis in omnipotent and omnipresent, can you define the words?
   - Omnipotent: __________.
   - Omnipresent: __________.
   Recalling how we formed a noun from the adjective omniscient, write the noun forms of:
     - Omnipotent: __________.
     - Omnipresent: __________.

6. Think of the negative prefix in anachronism; think next of the noun aphrodisiac. Can you construct a word for that which reduces or eliminates sexual desire? __________.

(Answers in Chapter 18)

FOUR LASTING BENEFITS

You know by now that it is easy to build your vocabulary if you work diligently and intelligently. Diligence is important—to come to the book occasionally is to learn new words and ideas in an aimless fashion, rather than in the continuous way that characterizes the natural, uninterrupted, intellectual growth of a child. (You will recall that children are top experts in increasing their vocabularies.) And an intelligent approach is crucial—new words can be completely understood and permanently remembered only as symbols of vital ideas, never if memorized in long lists of isolated forms.

If you have worked diligently and intelligently, you have done much more than merely
learned a few hundred new words. Actually, I needn’t tell you what else you’ve accomplished, since, if you really have accomplished it, you can feel it for yourself; but it may be useful if I verbalize the feelings you may have.

In addition to learning the meanings, pronunciation, background, and use of 300–350 valuable words, you have:

1. **Begun to sense a change in your intellectual atmosphere.** (You have begun to do your thinking with many of the words, with many of the ideas behind the words. You have begun to use the words in your speech and writing, and have become alert to their appearance in your reading.)

2. **Begun to develop a new interest in words as expressions of ideas.**

3. **Begun to be aware of the new words you hear and that you see in your reading.**

4. **Begun to gain a new feeling for the relationship between words.** (For you realize that many words are built on roots from other languages and are related to other words which derive from the same roots.)

Now, suppose we pause to see how successful your learning has been.

In the next chapter, I offer you a comprehensive test on the first part of your work.

(End of Session 17)

---

1 Latin *senex*, source of *senile* and *senescent*, also, you will recall, means *old*. In *inveterate*, *in-* means *in*; it is not the negative prefix found in *incorrigible*. 
HOW TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Comprehensive Test I
If you have worked diligently thus far, you have:

1. Become acquainted, or perhaps reacquainted, with approximately 300–350 expressive words—
2. Learned scores of important Latin and Greek prefixes, roots, and suffixes—
3. Set up valuable habits of self-discipline and self-directed learning—
4. Explored your attitudes toward grammar and current usage, meanwhile erasing any confusion you may once have felt about specific problems of correctness in your use of words—
5. And, finally, taken good, long steps toward your ultimate goal, namely, the development of a better, richer, more expressive—in short, superior—vocabulary.

Here is your chance both to review and to check your learning. (Bear in mind that without careful and periodic review, a significant amount of learning is lost.)

Methods of scoring your achievement on this test, and the meaning of your results, will be explained at the end of the chapter.

### etymology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ego</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXAMPLE</strong></td>
<td>egoism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>misein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXAMPLE</strong></td>
<td>misanthrope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gamos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXAMPLE</strong></td>
<td>bigamy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gyne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXAMPLE</strong></td>
<td>gynecology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>derma</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXAMPLE</strong></td>
<td>dermatology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>orthos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXAMPLE</strong></td>
<td>orthodontia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. psyche
EXAMPLE psychotic

8. neuron
EXAMPLE neurology

9. logos
EXAMPLE biology

10. bios
EXAMPLE biopsy

11. opsis, optikos
EXAMPLE autopsy, optical

12. algos
EXAMPLE neuralgia

13. agogos
EXAMPLE demagogue

14. pedis
EXAMPLE pedestrian

15. paidos (ped-)
EXAMPLE pediatrician

16. demos
EXAMPLE democracy

17. oculus
EXAMPLE oculist

18. iatreia
EXAMPLE podiatrist

19. metron
EXAMPLE optometrist

20. geras
EXAMPLE geriatrics

21. soma
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>psychosomatic</td>
<td>graphein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>pathos</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>osteopath</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>odontos</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>exodentist</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>pous, podos</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>octopus, podium</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>cheir (chiro-)</td>
<td>cheir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>chirography</td>
<td>cheir</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

II  more etymology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>graphology</td>
<td>graphein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>calligraphy</td>
<td>kallos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>calligrapher</td>
<td>pyge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>callipygian</td>
<td>pyge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>cacophony</td>
<td>kakos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>senescent</td>
<td>senex</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>anthropology</td>
<td>anthropos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>astronomy</td>
<td>astron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>astronaut</td>
<td>nautes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>ge (geo-)</td>
<td>ge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE  geology
10. zoion

EXAMPLE  zodiac
11. lingua

EXAMPLE  bilingual
12. philein

EXAMPLE  Philadelphia
13. biblion

EXAMPLE  bibliophile
14. autos

EXAMPLE  autonomous
15. socius

EXAMPLE  asocial
16. notus

EXAMPLE  notorious
17. summus

EXAMPLE  consummate
18. vetus

EXAMPLE  inveterate
19. genesis

EXAMPLE  congenital
20. chronos

EXAMPLE  chronic
21. pathos

EXAMPLE  empathy
22. grex, gregis

EXAMPLE  egregious
23. sciens

EXAMPLE  prescient
24. **omnis**
EXAMPLE omniscient

25. **nomos**

EXAMPLE metronome

### III  same or opposite?

1. egoistic—altruistic  
2. misanthropic—philanthropic  
3. misogynous—polygamous  
4. dexterous—skillful  
5. sinister—threatening  
6. optical—visual  
7. notorious—infamous  
8. consummate (adj.)—unskilled  
9. chronic—acute  
10. glib—halting  
11. ophthalmologist—oculist  
12. geriatric—pediatric  
13. endodontist—exodontist  
14. calligraphy—cacography  
15. astronaut—cosmonaut  
16. biopsy—autopsy  
17. dichotomous—cut in two  
18. congenital—hereditary  
19. veteran—"old hand"  
20. anachronous—timely

### IV  matching

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>I</th>
<th>II</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. dislikes women
   a. entomologist
2. is pathologically self-interested
   b. taxidermist
3. studies the development of the human race
   c. egomaniac
4. is an expert on insects
   d. bibliophile
5. collects books
   e. ophthalmologist
6. mounts and stuffs animal skins
   f. psychopath
7. is an eye doctor
   g. philologist
8. is a student of linguistics
   h. anthropologist
9. has “split off” from reality
   i. psychotic
10. commits antisocial acts without guilt or pangs of conscience
    j. misogynist

V  more matching

I                      II
1. delivers babies
   a. pediatrician
2. treats female ailments
   b. cardiologist
3. treats infants
   c. psychiatrist
4. treats skin diseases
   d. podiatrist
5. treats skeletal deformities
   e. dermatologist
6. is a heart specialist
   f. periodontist
7. treats mental or emotional disturbances
   g. obstetrician
8. treats disorders of the nervous system
   h. neurologist
9. treats minor ailments of the feet
   i. orthopedist
10. treats ailments of the gums
    j. gynecologist

VI  recall a word

ruthless; without conscience
1. U____________
suspiciously fluent or smooth
2. G____________
outstandingly bad; vicious
3. E____________
out of place
4. I____________
study of the family tree; specialty of tracing ancestry
5. G____________
science of heredity
6. G____________
in correct order of time
7. C____________
socially awkward
8. G____________
record of heart action
9. C____________
equally skillful with both the right and left hand
10. A____________
social scientist who deals with the problems of aging
11. G____________
extrasensory perception
12. T____________
branch of dentistry specializing in the care of children’s teeth
13. P____________
blood-pressure apparatus
14. S____________
growing old (adj.)
15. S____________
palm reader
16. C____________
that which arouses sexual desire
17. A____________
representation of the whole
18. E____________
diseased; pertaining to the study of disease (adj.)
19. P____________
measurement of time
20. C____________
hostility; strong dislike; aversion
21. A____________
to occur, or cause to occur, at the same time or rate
22. S__________________ ignorant
23. N__________________ knowledge of an occurrence beforehand
24. P__________________ enjoying being with the herd; liking companionship
25. G__________________ to identify strongly with the feelings of another
26. E__________________ instrument to measure atmospheric pressure
27. B__________________ to separate from the herd
28. S__________________ possessed of shapely buttocks
29. C__________________ ugly, illegible handwriting
30. C__________________
KEY: A correct answer counts one point. Score your points for each part of the test, then add for a total.

I

Your score: _____________

II

Your score: _____________

III

Your score: _____________

IV
1–j, 2–c, 3–h, 4–a, 5–d, 6–b, 7–e, 8–g, 9–i, 10–f

Your score: _____________

V
1–g, 2–j, 3–a, 4–e, 5–i, 6–b, 7–c, 8–h, 9–d, 10–f

Your score: _____________

VI

Your score: _____________
Significance of Your Total Score:

100–120: Masterly work; you are ready to move right along.
80– 99: Good work; this review was useful to you.
65– 79: Average work; you’re getting a good deal out of your study, but perhaps you should review thoroughly after each session.
50– 64: Barely acceptable; work harder.
35– 49: Poor; further review is suggested before you go on.
0– 34: You can do much better if you really try; continue with firmer resolve and more determination.
PART TWO

GAINING INCREASED MOMENTUM
HOW TO TALK ABOUT ACTIONS

(Sessions 19–23)

TEASER PREVIEW

What verb means to:
belittle?
be purposely confusing?
tickle someone’s fancy?
flatter fulsomely?
prohibit some food or activity?
make unnecessary?
work against?
spread slander?
give implicit forgiveness for a misdeed?
change hostility to friendliness?
SESSION 19

Verbs are incalculably useful to you.
Every sentence you think, say, read, or write contains an implied or expressed verb, for it is the verb that carries the action, the movement, the force of your ideas.
As a young child, you used verbs fairly early.
Your first words, of course, were probably nouns, as you identified the things or people around you.
*Mama, Dada, doll, baby, bottle*, etc. perhaps were the first standard syllables you uttered, for naming concrete things or real persons is the initial step in the development of language.
Soon there came the ability to express intangible ideas, and then you began to use simple verbs—*go, stop, stay, want, eat, sleep*, etc.
As you gained maturity, your verbs expressed ideas of greater and greater complexity; as an adult you can describe the most involved actions in a few simple syllables—if you have a good store of useful verbs at your command.
The richer and more extensive your vocabulary of verbs, the more accurately and expressively you can communicate your understanding of actions, reactions, attitudes, and emotions.
Let’s be specific.

IDEAS

1. playing it down

Ready to go back thirty or more years? Consider some post-World War II American political history:
Harry Truman couldn’t win the 1948 election. The pollsters said so, the Republicans heartily agreed, even the Democrats, some in high places, believed it. Mr. Truman himself was perhaps the only voter in the country who was not entirely convinced.
Came the first Tuesday after the first Monday in November—well, if you were one of those who stayed up most of the night listening to the returns, and then kept your ear to the radio most of the next day, you recall how you reacted to the unique Truman triumph.
It was no mean accomplishment, thought many people. Pure accident, said others. If one out of twelve voters in a few key states had changed his ballot, Harry could have gone back to selling ties, one Republican apologist pointed out. It wasn’t anything Truman did, said another; it was what Dewey didn’t do. No credit to Truman, said a third; it was the farmers—or labor—or the Republicans who hadn’t bothered to vote—or the ingenious miscounting of ballots. No credit to Truman, insisted a fourth; it was Wallace’s candidacy—it was the Democrats—it was Republican overconfidence—it was sunspots—it was the Communists—it
was the civil service workers who didn’t want to lose their cushy jobs—it was really Roosevelt who won the election.

Anyway Harry didn’t accomplish a thing—he was just a victim of good fortune.

What were the apologists for Dewey’s failure doing?

They were disparaging Truman’s achievement.

2. playing it safe

Willing to look at some more history of the late 1940s?
As the Republican aspirant, he had to take a stand on the controversial Taft-Hartley Act.

Was he for it? He was for that part of it which was good. Naturally, he was against any of the provisions which were bad. Was he for it? The answer was yes—and also no. Take whichever answer you wanted most to hear.

What was Dewey doing?

He was equivocating.

3. enjoying the little things

Have you ever gone through a book that was so good you kept hugging yourself mentally as you read? Have you ever seen a play or motion picture that was so charming that you felt sheer delight as you watched? Or perhaps you have had a portion of pumpkin-chiffon pie, light and airy and mildly flavored, and with a flaky, delicious crust, that was the last word in gustatory enjoyment?

Now notice the examples I have used. I have not spoken of books that grip you emotionally, of plays and movies that keep you on the edge of your seat in suspense, or of food that satisfies a ravenous hunger. These would offer quite a different, perhaps more lasting and memorable, type of enjoyment. I have detailed, rather, mental or physical stimuli that excite enjoyably but not too sharply—a delightful novel, a charming play, a delicious dessert.

How do such things affect you?

They titillate you.

4. playing it way up

You know how the teen-agers of an earlier generation adored, idolized, and overwhelmed Frank Sinatra, Elvis Presley, the Beatles?
And of course you know how certain people fall all over visiting celebrities—best-selling authors, much publicized artists, or famous entertainers. They show them ingratiating, almost servile attention, worship and flatter them fulsomely.¹

How do we say it in a single word?
5. accentuating the negative

What does the doctor say to you if you have low blood sugar? “No candy, no pastries, no chocolate marshmallow cookies, no ice cream!”, your morale dropping lower and lower as each favorite goody is placed on the forbidden list.
What, in one word, is the doctor doing?

The doctor is proscribing harmful items in your diet.

6. accentuating the affirmative

You are warm, friendly, enthusiastic, outgoing, easy to please; you are quick to show appreciation, yet accept, without judgment or criticism, the human weaknesses of others.
You are a fascinating talker, an even better listener.
You believe in, and practice, honest self-disclosure; you feel comfortable with yourself and therefore with everyone else; and you have a passionate interest in experiencing, in living, in relating to people.
Need you have any fears about making friends? Obviously not.

Your characteristics and temperament obviate such fears.

7. playing it wrong

Theodor Reik, in his penetrating book on psychoanalysis Listening with the Third Ear, talks about neurotic people who unconsciously wish to fail. In business interviews they say exactly the wrong words, they do exactly the wrong things, they seem intent (as, unconsciously, they actually are) on insuring failure in every possible way, though consciously they are doing their best to court success.
What effect does such a neurotic tendency have?

It militates against success.

8. playing it dirty

“Harry?” He’s a closet alcoholic. Maud? She’s sleeping around—and her stupid husband doesn’t suspect a thing. Bill? He’s embezzling from his own company. Paul? He’s a child molester. Sally? You don’t know that she’s a notorious husband-beater?”
What is this character doing?

He’s maligning everyone.

9. giving the benefit of any doubt
Do you think it’s all right to cheat on your income taxes? At least just a little? It’s wrong, of course, but doesn’t everybody do it?

How do you feel about marital infidelity? Are you inclined to overlook the occasional philandering of the male partner, since, after all, to invent a cliché, men are essentially polygamous by nature?

If your answers are in the affirmative, how are you reacting to such legal or ethical transgressions?

You **condone** them.

10. changing hostility

Unwittingly you have done something that has aroused anger and resentment in your best friend. You had no desire to hurt him, yet he makes it obvious that he feels pretty bitter about the whole situation. (Perhaps you failed to invite him to a gathering he wanted to come to; or you neglected to consult him before making a decision on a matter in which he felt he should have some say.) His friendship is valuable to you and you wish to restore yourself in his good graces. What do you do?

You try to **placate** him.

**USING THE WORDS**

Can you pronounce the words?

1. **disparage**
   - dis-PAR′-aj

2. **equivocate**
   - ee-KWIV′-ə-kayt′

3. **titillate**
   - TIT′-ə-layt′

4. **adulate**
   - AJ′-ə-layt′

5. **proscribe**
   - prō-SKRĪB′

6. **obviate**
   - OB′-vee-ayt′

7. **militate**
   - MIL′-ə-tayt

8. **malign**
   - mə-LIN′

9. **condone**
   - kən-DŌN′

10. **placate**
    - PLAY′-kayt′

Can you work with the words?
1. disparage  
   a. flatter lavishly
2. equivocate  
   b. work against
3. titillate  
   c. prohibit
4. adulate  
   d. forgive
5. proscribe  
   e. change hostility to friendliness
6. obviate  
   f. purposely talk in such a way as to be vague and misleading
7. militate  
   g. slander
8. malign  
   h. play down
9. condone  
   i. make unnecessary
10. placate  
    j. tickle; stimulate pleasurably
Do you understand the words?

Do you normally *disparage* something you admire?

YES  NO

Do you *equivocate* if you think it unwise to take a definite stand?

YES  NO

Do pleasant things *titillate* you?

YES  NO

Do emotionally mature people need constant *adulation*?

YES  NO

Is sugar *proscribed* for diabetics?

YES  NO

Does a substantial fortune *obviate* financial fears?

YES  NO

Does a worker’s inefficiency often *militate* against his keeping his job?

YES  NO

Do people enjoy being *maligned*?

YES  NO

Do we generally *condone* the faults of those we love?

YES  NO

Can you sometimes *placate* a person by apologizing?

YES  NO
Can you use the words?

In this exercise you gain the value of actually writing a new word as a meaningful solution to a problem. To think about a word, to say it, to write it, to use it—that is the road to word mastery. Write the verb that best fits each situation.

1. You've been asked to take a stand on a certain issue, but you don't have the courage to be either definitely for or against.

   You __________________.

2. You spread around an unpleasant story that you know will blacken someone’s reputation.

   You ________________ that person.

3. Your friend is justifiably angry—you asked him to go to a party with you, ignored him all evening, and then finally left with someone else. What must you do if you wish to restore the relationship?

   You must try to ________________ him.

4. You virtually worship your therapist. You express your admiration in lavish flattery; you praise her in such excessive terms that she appears devoid of all human frailty.

   You ________________ her.

5. You are crowding 260 on the scales, so your doctor warns against high-calorie meals, rich desserts, second helpings, excessive carbohydrates, etc.

   The doctor ________________ these foods.

6. Your child Johnnie has smacked the neighbor’s kid—entirely without provocation, you are forced to admit. But after all, you think, tomorrow the other kid will, with equal lack of provocation, probably smack Johnnie.

   You ________________ Johnnie’s behavior.

7. When your son, understandably expecting praise, mentions the three B’s and two A’s he earned in his courses, you respond, callously, “Is that the best you can do? What stopped you from getting all A’s?”

   You ________________ his accomplishment.

8. You have run out of cash and plan to go to the bank to make a withdrawal; then unexpectedly you discover a twenty-dollar bill you secreted in your desk drawer months ago.

   Your find ________________ a trip to the bank.

9. You are the soul of honesty, but unfortunately, you have a sneaky, thievish, sinister look—and no one ever trusts you.

   Your appearance ________________ against you.

10. The centerfold of Playboy or Playgirl provides a mild and agreeable stimulation.
The centerfold ___________ you.
Can you recall the words?

change hostility into friendliness
   1. P____________
make unnecessary
   2. O____________
belittle
   3. D____________
overlook or forgive a transgression
   4. C____________
tickle; delight; stimulate pleasurably
   5. T____________
spread malicious rumors about
   6. M____________
purposely use language susceptible of opposite interpretations
   7. E____________
act to disadvantage of
   8. M____________
forbid
   9. P____________
worship; flatter fulsomely
  10. A____________
KEY:  1–placate, 2–obviate, 3–disparage, 4–condone, 5–titillate, 6–malign, 7–equivocate, 8–militate (against), 9–proscribe, 10–adulate

(End of Session 19)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. equality

If you play golf, you know that each course or hole has a certain par, the number of strokes allowed according to the results achieved by expert players. Your own accomplishment on the course will be at par, above par, or below par.

Similarly, some days you may feel up to par, other days below par.

Par is from a Latin word meaning equal. You may try, when you play golf, to equal the expert score; and some days you may, or may not, feel equal to your usual self.

When we speak of parity payments to farmers, we refer to payments that show an equality to earnings for some agreed-upon year.

So when you disparage, you lower someone’s par, or feeling of equality, (dis- as you know, may be a negative prefix). The noun is disparagement (dis-PAIR’-əj-mənt), the adjective disparaging (dis-PAIR’-əj-ing), as in “Why do you always make disparaging remarks about me?”

Parity (PAIR’-ə-tee) as a noun means equality; disparity (dis-PAIR’-ə-tee) means a lack of equality, or a difference. We may speak, for example, of the disparity between someone’s promise and performance; or of the disparity between the rate of vocabulary growth of a child and of an adult. The adjective disparate (DIS’-pə-rət) indicates essential or complete difference or inequality, as in “Our philosophies are so disparate that we can never come to any agreement on action.”

The word compare and all its forms (comparable, comparative, etc.) derive from par, equal. Two things are compared when they have certain equal or similar qualities, (con-, com-, together, with).

Pair and peer are also from par. Things (shoes, socks, gloves, etc.) in pairs are equal or similar; your peers are those equal to you, as in age, position, rank, or ability. Hence the expression “to be judged by a jury of one’s peers.”

(British peers, however, such is the contradiction of language, were nobles.)

2. how to say yes and no

Equivocate is built on another Latin word meaning equal—aequus (the spelling in English is always equ)—plus vox, vocis, voice.

When you equivocate (ə-KWIV’-ə-kayt’), you seem to be saying both yes and no with equal voice. An equivocal (ə-KWIV’-ə-kəl) answer, therefore, is by design vague, indefinite, and susceptible of contradictory interpretations, quite the opposite of an unequivocal (un’-ə-KWIV’-ə-kəl) response, which says Yes! or No!, and no kidding. Professional politicians are
masters of equivocation (ə-kwiv'-ə-KAY'-shən)—they are, on most vital issues, mugwumps; they sit on a fence with their mugs on one side and their wumps on the other. You will often hear candidates for office say, publicly, that they unequivocally promise, if elected, to...; and then they start equivocating for all they are worth, like people who say, “Let me be perfectly frank with you”—and then promptly and glibly lie through their teeth.

3. statements of various kinds

Do not confuse equivocal with ambiguous (am'-BIG'-yə-əs). An equivocal statement is purposely, deliberately (and with malice aforethought) couched in language that will be deceptive; an ambiguous statement is accidentally couched in such language. Equivocal is, in short, purposely ambiguous.

You will recall that ambi-, which we last met in ambivert and ambidextrous, is a root meaning both; anything ambiguous may have both one meaning and another meaning. If you say, “That sentence is the height of ambiguity,” you mean that you find it vague because it admits of both affirmative and negative interpretations, or because it may mean two different things. Ambiguity is pronounced am'-bə-GYOO-ə-tee.

Another type of statement or word contains the possibility of two interpretations—one of them suggestive, risqué, or sexy. Such a statement or word is a double entendre. This is from the French and translates literally as double meaning. Give the word as close a french pronunciation as you can—DUH'-ohn-TAHN'-drə. (The n’s are nasalized, the r somewhat throaty, and the final syllable is barely audible.)

REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. par</td>
<td>equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ment</td>
<td>noun suffix attached to verbs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ity</td>
<td>noun suffix attached to adjectives</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. dis-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. con-, com-</td>
<td>with, together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. aequus (equ-)</td>
<td>equal</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. *vox, vocis*  
voice

8. *-ate*  
verb suffix

9. *-ion*  
noun suffix attached to verbs ending in *-ate*

10. *-ous*  
adjective suffix

11. *ambi-*  
both

### USING THE WORDS

**Can you pronounce the words?**

1. *parity*  
PAIR′-ə-tee

2. *disparity*  
dis-PAIR′-ə-tee

3. *disparate*  
DIS′-pə-rət

4. *disparagement*  
dis-PAIR′-əj-mənt

5. *disparaging*  
dis-PAIR′-əj-ing

6. *peer*  
PEER

7. *equivocate*  
ə-KWIV′-ə-kayt′

8. *equivocation*  
ə-kwiv′-ə-KAY′-shən

9. *equivocal*  
ə-KWIV′-ə-kəl

10. *unequivocal*  
un′-ə-KWIV′-ə-kəl

11. *ambiguous*  
am-BIG′-ə-məs

12. *ambiguity*  
am′-bə-GYOO′-ə-tee

13. *double entendre*  
DOOB′-ləhn-TAHN′-drə
1. parity  
   a. belittlement
   b. act of being deliberately vague or indirectly deceptive; statement that is deceptive or purposely open to contrary interpretations

2. disparity  
   c. quality of being open to misinterpretation; statement with this quality
   d. statement or word with two meanings, one of them risqué, indelicate, or of possible sexual connotation

3. disparagement  
   e. inequality

4. peer  
   f. equality
   g. one’s equal

5. equivocation

6. ambiguity

7. double entendre
Do you understand the words?

Is there a *disparity* in age between a grandfather and his granddaughter?

YES NO

Is an *equivocal* statement clear and direct?

YES NO

Is an *unequivocal* answer vague and misleading?

YES NO

Are politicians often masters of *equivocation*?

YES NO

Are *ambiguous* sentences somewhat confusing?

YES NO

Are people with *disparate* perceptions of life likely to experience reality in the same way?

YES NO

Is a *disparaging* look one of admiration?

YES NO

When people *equivocate*, are they evading the issue?

YES NO

Is the deliberate use of *double entendres* likely to shock puritanical people?

YES NO

Are supervisors and their subordinates *peers*?

YES NO
Can you recall the words?

- accidentally vague
  1. A__________

- purposely vague
  2. E__________

- equality
  3. P__________

- word or statement one meaning of which may be interpreted as risqué
  4. D__________

- lack of equality
  5. D__________

- belittlement
  6. D__________

- clear; direct; capable of only one interpretation
  7. U__________

- essentially or widely unequal or different
  8. D__________

- one’s equal in age, rank, etc.
  9. P__________

- to use words in a calculated effort to mislead or to be ambiguous
  10. E__________
KEY: 1–ambiguous, 2–equivocal, 3–parity, 4–double entendre, 5–disparity, 6–disparagement, 7–unequivocal, 8–disparate, 9–peer, 10–equivocate

(End of Session 20)
more on equality

The root *aequus*, spelled *equi*- in English words, is a building block of:

1. *equity* (E Kardashian’s see-your-tee)—justice, fairness; i.e., equal treatment. (By extension, stocks in the financial markets are *equities*, and the value of your home or other property over and above the amount of the mortgage you owe is your *equity* in it.) The adjective is *equitable* (E Kardashian’s see-your-tée-bál).

2. *inequity* (in-E Kardashian’s see-your-tee)—injustice, unfairness (*equity* plus the negative prefix in-). Adjective: *inequitable* (in-E Kardashian’s see-your-tée-bál).

3. *iniquity* (in-ई-के-वी-ती-ee)—by one of those delightful surprises and caprices characteristic of language, the change of a single letter (e to i), extends the meaning of a word far beyond its derivation and original denotation. Injustice and unfairness are sinful and wicked, especially if you naively believe that life is fair. So a “den of *iniquity*” is a place where vice flourishes; an *iniquity* is a sin or vice, or an egregiously immoral act; and *iniquity* is wickedness, sinfulness. Adjective: *iniquitous* (in-ई-के-वी-tüss).

4. *equinox* (ई-कौ-वी-नक्स’)—etymologically, “equal night,” a combination of *aequus* and *nox*, night. The *equinox*, when day and night are of equal length, occurs twice a year: about March 21, and again about September 21 or 22. (The adjective is *equinoctial*—ई-कौ-वी-नक्स’-shál.) *Nocturnal* (nok-TURN-ée), derived from *nox*, *noctis*, describes people, animals, or plants that are active or flourish at night rather than during daylight hours. Cats and owls are *nocturnal*, as is the moonflower, whose blossoms open at night; not to mention “night people,” whose biorhythms are such that they function better after the sun goes down, and who like to stay up late and sleep well into midmorning. A *nocturne* (NOక-turn) is a musical composition of dreamy character (i.e., night music), or a painting of a night scene.

5. *equanimity* (ई-कौ-निम’-ee-tée or ek-ई-कौ-निम’-ee-tée)—etymologically *aequus* plus *animus*, mind, hence “equal mind.” Maintain your *equanimity*, your evenness of temper, your composure, your coolness or calmness, when everyone around you is getting excited or hysterical, and you will probably be considered an admirable person, though one might wonder what price you pay for such emotional control. (Other words built on *animus*, mind, will be discussed in Chapter 12.)

6. *Equability* (ई-कौ-बिल’-ee-tée or ek-ई-कौ-बिल’-ee-tée)—a close synonym of *equanimity*. A person of *equable* (ई-कौ-बिल-ब-é or E Kardashian’s see-your-bé) temperament is characteristically calm, serene, unflappable, even-tempered.

7. *equilibrium* (ई-कौ-लिब’-ree-ém)—by derivation *aequus* plus *libra*, balance, weight, pound, hence “equal balance.” *Libra* (LĪ-brá) is the seventh sign of the zodiac, represented
by a pair of scales. Now you know, in case the question has been bothering you, why the abbreviation for the word pound is lb. and why the symbol for the British pound, the monetary unit, is £. Equilibrium is a state of physical balance, especially between opposing forces. When you are very drunk you may have difficulty keeping your equilibrium—the force of gravity is stronger than your ability to stay upright. An equilibrist (ə-KWIL-ə-brist), as you might guess, is a professional tightrope walker—a performer successfully defying the law of gravity (when sober) by balancing on a thin overhead wire.

The equator divides the earth into equal halves, and words like equation, equivalent, equidistant, equiangular, and equilateral (from Latin latus, lateris, side) are self-explanatory.

2. not to be confused with horses

Equestrian (ə-KWES-tree-ən) is someone on a horse (as pedestrian is someone on foot); an equestrienne (ə-kwes-tree-EN') is a woman on a horse (if you must make the distinction); and equine (EE'-kwîn) is like a horse, as in appearance or characteristics, or descriptive of horses.

Equestrian is also an adjective referring to horseback riding, as an equestrian statue; and equine is also a noun, i.e., a horse.

So the equ- in these words, from Latin equus, horse, is not to be confused with the equ- in the words of the previous section—that equ- is from aequus, equal. (Remember, also, not to confuse the ped- in pedestrian, from Latin pedis, foot, with the ped- in pediatrician, from Greek paidos, child.)

3. hear voices?

Equivocal, you will recall, combines aequus with vox, vocis, voice; and vox, vocis combines with fero, to bear or carry, to form vociferous (vō-SIF-ər-əs), etymologically “carrying (much) voice,” hence loud, noisy, clamorous, as vociferous demands (not at all quiet or subtle), or the vociferous play of young children (“Please! Try to be quiet so Dad can get his work done!”), though unfortunately TV addiction has abnormally eliminated child noises, at least during the program breaks between commercials. (Vociferous will be discussed at greater length in Chapter 10.)

If you are vocal (VŌ-kəl), you express yourself readily and freely by voice; vocal sounds are voiced; vocal music is sung; and you know what your vocal cords are for.

To vocalize (VŌ-kə-līz’) is to give voice to (“Vocalize your anger, don’t hold it in!”), or to sing the vocals (or voice parts) of music. (Can you write the noun form of the verb vocalize? ______________.) A vocalist (VŌ-kə-list) is a singer. And Magnavox (vox plus magnus, large) is the trade name for a brand of radios and TV sets.

REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>


<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roman</th>
<th>English</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>aequus (equ-)</td>
<td>equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nox, noctis</td>
<td>night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animus</td>
<td>mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ity</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>libra</td>
<td>balance, weight, pound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ist</td>
<td>person who</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>latus, lateris</td>
<td>side</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equus</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-ine</td>
<td>like, descriptive of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pedis</td>
<td>foot</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paidos (ped-)</td>
<td>child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vox, vocis</td>
<td>voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fero</td>
<td>to bear, carry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnus</td>
<td>large</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words? (I)**

1. **equity**
   - EK′-wə-tee
2. **equitable**
   - EK′-wə-tə-bəl
3. **inequity**
   - in-EK′-wə-tee
4. **inequitable**
   - in-EK′-wə-tə-bəl
5. **iniquity**
   - in-IK′-wə-tee
6. **iniquitous**
   - in-IK′-wə-təs
7. **equinox**
   - EE′-kwə-noks′
8. **equinoctial**
   - ee′-kwə-NOK′-shəl
9. **nocturnal**
   - nok-TURN′-əl
10. **nocturne**
    - NOK′-turn

**Can you pronounce the words? (II)**

1. **equanimity**
   - ee′-kwə (or ek′-wə) -NIM′-ə-tee
2. **equability**
   - ee′-kwə (or ek′-wə) -BIL′-ə-tee
3. **equable**
   - EE′-kwə-bəl or EK′-wə-bəl
4. **equilibrium**
   - ee′-kwə-LIB′-ree-əm
5. **equilibrist**
   - ee-KWIL′-ə-brist
6. **equilateral**
   - ee-kwə-LAT′-ər-əl
7. **equestrian**
   - ə-KWES′-tree-ən
8. **equine**
   - EE′-kwən
9. **vociferous**
   - vō-SIF′-ər-əs
10. **vocal**
    - VŌ′-kəl
11. **vocalize**
    - VŌ′-kə-liz′
| 12. **vocalization** | vō′-kə-lə-ZAY′-shən |
| 13. **vocalist** | VŌ′-kə-list |

**Can you work with the words? (I)**

1. **equity**
   - a. time when night and day are of equal length
2. **inequity**
   - b. balance of mind; composure; calmness under trying circumstances
3. **iniquity**
   - c. horseback rider
4. **equinox**
   - d. a horse
5. **nocturne**
   - e. sinfulness; wickedness; immoral act; sin
6. **equanimity**
   - f. unfairness, injustice
7. **equilibrium**
   - g. tightrope walker
8. **equestrian**
   - h. singer
9. **equilibrist**
   - i. fairness, justice
10. **equine**
    - j. balance, especially between opposing forces
11. **vocalist**
    - k. night music
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>equitable</td>
<td>descriptive of time when night and day are of equal length</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inequitable</td>
<td>give voice to; sing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>iniquitous</td>
<td>having equal sides</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equinoctial</td>
<td>using, or referring to, the voice; freely expressing by voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nocturnal</td>
<td>noisy, loud, clamorous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equable</td>
<td>calm, unruffled, even-tempered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equilateral</td>
<td>fair, just</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vociferous</td>
<td>referring or pertaining to, or active at, night</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocal</td>
<td>sinful, wicked, immoral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vocalize</td>
<td>unfair, unjust</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

Is life always equitable?
YES  NO

Does the cynic expect more inequity than equity in life?
YES  NO

Do ethical people practice iniquity?
YES  NO

Does the equinox occur once a month?
YES  NO

Are nocturnal animals active at night?
YES  NO

If you generally preserve your equanimity, do you often get very excited?
YES  NO

Is it easy to maintain your equilibrium on icy ground?
YES  NO

Is equability the mark of a calm, even-tempered person?
YES  NO

Does an equilateral triangle have equal sides?
YES  NO

Is an equine a dog?
YES  NO

If you demand something vociferously, do you make a lot of noise?
YES  NO

If you are vocal, do you have difficulty expressing yourself?
YES  NO

Is a vocalist the same as an instrumentalist?
YES  NO
Can you recall the words? (I)

to give voice to; to express aloud; to sing
1. V_____________
tightrope walker
2. E_____________
active or flourishing at night
3. N_____________
descriptive or characteristic of, or like, a horse
4. E_____________
referring to the voice; skillful or fluent in expressing by voice
5. V_____________
calm and unflappable in temperament
6. E_____________
wicked, sinful
7. I_____________
night music
8. N_____________
fairness, justice
9. E_____________
Can you recall the words? (II)

1. loud, noisy, clamorous
   1. V__________________

2. person on horseback
   2. E__________________
   or E__________________

3. calmness or evenness of temper
   3. E__________________
   or E__________________

4. unfair, unjust
   4. I__________________

5. sin; wickedness; grossly immoral behavior
   5. I__________________

6. time when day and night are of equal length
   6. E__________________

7. fair, just, evenhanded
   7. E__________________

8. physical balance; balance between opposing forces
   8. E__________________

9. having equal sides
   9. E__________________

10. singer
   10. V__________________
KEY: 1–vociferous, 2–equestrian or equestrienne, 3–equanimity or equability, 4–inequitable, 5–iniquity, 6–equinox, 7–equitable, 8–equilibrium, 9–equilateral, 10–vocalist

(End of Session 21)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. how to tickle

*Titillate* comes from a Latin verb meaning *to tickle*, and may be used both literally and figuratively. That is (literally), you can *titillate* by gentle touches in strategic places; you are then causing an actual (and always very pleasant) physical sensation. Or you can (figuratively) *titillate* people, or their minds, fancies, palates (and this is the more common use of the word), by charm, brilliance, wit, promises, or in any other way your imagination can conceive.

*Titillation* (tit′-ə-LAY′-shən) has the added meaning of light sexual stimulation. (Note that both noun and verb are spelled with a double *I*, not a double *t*.)

2. how to flatter

A *compliment* is a pleasant and courteous expression of praise; *flattery* is stronger than a compliment and often considered insincere. *Adulation* (aj′-ə-LAY′-shən) is flattery and worship carried to an excessive, ridiculous degree. There are often public figures (entertainers, musicians, government officials, etc.) who receive widespread *adulation*, but those not in the public eye can also be *adulated*, as a teacher by students, a wife by husband (and vice versa), a doctor by patients, and so on. (The derivation is from a Latin verb meaning *to fawn upon*.)

The adjective *adulatory* (aj′-ə-lə-TAWR′-ee) ends in -ory, a suffix we are meeting for the first time in these pages. (Other adjective suffixes: -al, -ic, -ical, -ous.)

3. ways of writing

*Proscribe*, to forbid, is commonly used for medical, religious, or legal prohibitions.

A doctor *proscribes* a food, drug, or activity that might prove harmful to the patient. The church *proscribes*, or announces a *proscription* (prō-SKRIP′-shən) against, such activities as may harm its parishioners. The law *proscribes* behavior detrimental to the public welfare.

Generally, one might concede, *proscribed* activities are the most pleasant ones—as Alexander Woolcott once remarked, if something is pleasurable, it’s sure to be either immoral, illegal, or fattening.

The derivation is the prefix pro-, before, plus scribo, scriptus, to write. In ancient Roman times, a man’s name was written on a public bulletin board if he had committed some crime for which his property or life was to be forfeited; Roman citizens in good standing would thereby know to avoid him. In a similar sense, the doctor writes down those foods or
activities that are likely to commit crimes against the patient's health—in that way the patient knows to avoid them.

Scribo, scriptus is the building block of scores of common English words: scribe, scribble, prescribe, describe, subscribe, script, the Scriptures, manuscript, typescript, etc. Describe uses the prefix de-, down—to describe is, etymologically, “to write down” about. Manuscript, combining manus, hand (as in manual labor), with scriptus, is something handwritten—the word was coined before the invention of the typewriter. The Scriptures are holy writings. To subscribe (as to a magazine) is to write one’s name under an order or contract (sub-, under, as in subway, subsurface, etc.); to subscribe to a philosophy or a principle is figuratively to write one’s name under the statement of such philosophy or principle.

To inscribe is to write in or into (a book, for example, or metal or stone). A postscript is something written after (Latin post, after) the main part is finished.

Note how -scribe verbs change to nouns and adjectives:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VERB</th>
<th>NOUN</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>prescribe</td>
<td>prescription</td>
<td>prescriptive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subscribe</td>
<td>subscription</td>
<td>subscriptive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can you follow the pattern?

describe

inscribe

proscribe

4. it's obvious

You are familiar with the word via, by way of, which is from the Latin word for road. (The Via Appia was one of the famous highways of ancient Roman times.) When something is obvious, etymologically it is right there in the middle of the road where no one can fail to see it—hence, easily seen, not hidden, conspicuous. And if you meet an obstacle in the road and dispose of it forthwith, you are doing what obviate says. Thus, if you review your work daily in some college subject, frenzied “cramming” at the end of the semester will be obviated. A large and steady income obviates fears of financial insecurity; leaving for work early will obviate worry about being late. To obviate, then, is to make unnecessary, to do away with, to prevent by taking effective measures or steps against (an occurrence, a feeling, a requirement, etc.). The noun is obviation (ob′-vey-AY′-shən).

Surprisingly, via, road, is the root in the English word trivial (tri-, three). Where three roads intersect, you are likely to find busy traffic, lots of people, in short a fairly public place, so you are not going to talk of important or confidential matters, lest you be overheard. You will, instead, talk of trivial (TRIV′-ee-al) things—whatever is unimportant, without great significance; you will confine your conversation to trivialities (triv′-ee-Al′-teez) or to trivia (also a plural noun, pronounced TRIV′-ee-ə), insignificant trifles.
5. war

Militate derives from militis, one of the forms of the Latin noun meaning soldier or fighting man. If something militates against you, it fights against you, i.e., works to your disadvantage. Thus, your timidity may militate against your keeping your friends. (Militate is always followed by the preposition against and, like obviate, never takes a personal subject—you don’t militate against anyone, but some habit, action, tendency, etc. militates against someone or something.)

The adjective militant (MIL-ə-tant) comes from the same root. A militant reformer is one who fights for reforms; a militant campaign is one waged aggressively and with determination. The noun is militancy (MIL-ə-ton-see), and militant is also a noun for the person—“Sally is a militant in the Women’s Liberation movement.”

Military and militia also have their origin in militis.

6. first the bad news

Built on Latin malus, bad, evil, to malign is to speak evil about, to defame, to slander. Malign is also an adjective meaning bad, harmful, evil, hateful, as in “the malign influence of his unconscious will to fail.” Another adjective form is malignant (mə-LIG-nant), as in “a malignant glance,” i.e., one showing deep hatred, or “a malignant growth,” i.e., one that is cancerous (bad).

The noun of malignant is malignancy (mə-LIG-ə-nən-see), which, medically, is a cancerous growth, or, generally, the condition, state, or attitude of harmfulness, hatefulness, evil intent, etc. The noun form of the adjective malign is malignity (mə-LIG-ə-tee).

Observe how we can construct English words by combining malus with other Latin roots.

Add the root dico, dictus, to say or tell, to form malediction (mal’-ə-DIK’-shən), a curse, i.e., an evil saying. Adjective: maledictory (mal’-ə-DIK’-tə-ree).

Add the root volo, to wish, to will, or to be willing, and we can construct the adjective malevolent (mə-LEV’-ə-lent), wishing evil or harm—a malevolent glance, attitude, feeling, etc. The noun is malevolence (mə-LEV’-ə-ləns).

Add the root facio, factus, to do or make (also spelled, in English words, fec-, fic-, factus, or, as a verb ending, -fy), to form the adjective maleficent (mə-LEF’-ə-sənt), doing harm or evil, or causing hurt—maleficent acts, deeds, behavior.

Can you figure out, and pronounce, the noun form of maleficent? __________

A malefactor (MAL’-ə-fak’-tər) is a wrongdoer, an evildoer, a criminal—a malefactor commits a malefaction (mal’-ə-FAK’-shən), a crime, an evil deed.

French is a “Romance” language, that is, a language based on Roman or Latin (as are, also, Spanish, Portuguese, Italian, and Romanian), and so Latin malus became French mal, bad, the source of maladroit (mal’-ə-DROYT’), clumsy, bungling, awkward, unskillful, etymologically, having a “bad right hand.” (See adroit, Chapter 3.) The noun is maladroitness. Also from French mal: malaise (mə-LAYZ’), an indefinite feeling of bodily discomfort, as in a mild illness, or as a symptom preceding an illness; etymologically, “bad ease,” just as disease (dis-ease) is “lack of ease.”
Other common words that you are familiar with also spring from Latin *malus*: *malicious, malice, malady*; and the same *malus* functions as a prefix in words like *maladjusted, malcontent, malpractice, malnutrition*, etc., all with the connotation of *badness*.

And what’s the **good** news? See Session 23.

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -ory</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>scribo, scriptus</em></td>
<td>to write</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>de-</em></td>
<td>down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>manus</em></td>
<td>hand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>sub-</em></td>
<td>under</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>in-</em></td>
<td>in, into</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>post</em></td>
<td>after</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <em>via</em></td>
<td>road</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <em>tri-</em></td>
<td>three</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>militis</em></td>
<td>soldier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. <em>malus</em></td>
<td>bad, evil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English word</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. <em>dico, dictus</em></td>
<td>to say, tell</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. *volo*  
*ENGLISH WORD*  
14. *facio* (*fec-, fic-, fy*)  
*ENGLISH WORD*  
15. *-ence*, *-ancy*  
*ENGLISH WORD*  

**WORKING WITH THE WORDS**

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. *titillation*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   tit′-ə-LAY′-shən  
2. *adulation*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   aj′-ə-LAY′-shən  
3. *adulatory*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   AJ′-ə-lə-tawr′-ee  
4. *proscription*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   prō-SKRIP′-shən  
5. *proscriptive*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   prō-SKRIP′-tiv  
6. *obviation*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   ob′-vee-AY′-shən  
7. *trivial*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   TRIV′-ee-əl  
8. *trivialities*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   triv′-ee-AL′-ə-teez  
9. *trivia*  
   *ENGLISH WORD*  
   TRIV′-ee-ə  
10. *militant*  
    *ENGLISH WORD*  
    MIL′-ə-tənt  
11. *militancy*  
    *ENGLISH WORD*  
    MIL′-ə-tən-see  
12. *malign* (*adj.*)  
    *ENGLISH WORD*  
    mə-LĪN′  
13. *malignity*  
    *ENGLISH WORD*  
    mə-LIG′-nə-tee  
14. *malignant*  
    *ENGLISH WORD*  
    mə-LIG′-nənt  
15. *malignancy*  
    *ENGLISH WORD*  
    mə-LIG′-nən-see  

Can you pronounce the words? (II)
1. malediction    mal′-ə-DIK′-shən
2. maledictory    mal′-ə-DIK′-tə-ree
3. malevolent     mə-LEV′-ə-lənt
4. malevolence    mə-LEV′-ə-ləns
5. maleficent     mə-LEF′-ə-sənt
6. maleficence    mə-LEF′-ə-səns
7. malefactor     MAL′-ə-fak′-tər
8. malefaction    mal′-ə-FAK′-shən
9. maladroit      mal′-ə-DROYT′
10. maladroitness mal′-ə-DROYT′-nəs
11. malaise        mə-LAYZ′

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. titillation      a. prohibition
2. adulation        b. hatefulness; harmfulness
3. proscription     c. clumsiness
4. militancy        d. quality of wishing evil; ill-will
5. malignity        e. prevention; fact or act of making
                     unnecessary or of doing away with
6. malediction      f. worship; excessive flattery
7. maladroitness    g. vague feeling of bodily discomfort
8. obviation        h. pleasurable stimulation; tickling
9. malevolence      i. a curse
10. malaise         j. aggressiveness
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. adulatory
2. proscriptive
3. militant
4. malign
5. trivial
6. maledictory
7. malevolent
8. maladroit

a. aggressive; “fighting”
b. of no great consequence
c. bearing ill-will; wishing harm
d. of the nature of curses
e. clumsy, awkward
f. worshipful, adoring
g. bad, harmful, hurtful
h. relating or pertaining to prohibitions
Do you understand the words?

Does a malignant look indicate kindly feelings?
YES   NO

Is a cancer sometimes called a malignancy?
YES   NO

Are trivialties important?
YES   NO

If your house is cluttered with trivia, are these objects of great value?
YES   NO

Do people enjoy having maledictions hurled at them?
YES   NO

Is a maleficent act likely to cause harm or hurt?
YES   NO

Does maladroitness show skill?
YES   NO

Is a malefactor a wrongdoer?
YES   NO

Does an adulatory attitude show exaggerated admiration?
YES   NO

Is militancy the same as passiveness?
YES   NO
Can you recall the words? (I)

clumsy, awkward
1. M__________
bearing ill-will; wishing harm
2. M__________
pleasurable stimulation
3. T__________
a person aggressively fighting for a cause
4. M__________
prohibition against something injurious
5. P__________
excessive flattery; exaggerated admiration
6. A__________
vague feeling of general physical discomfort
7. M__________
a criminal; a wrongdoer
8. M__________
a curse
9. M__________
a crime; bad or evil act or behavior
10. M__________
Can you recall the words? (II)

fact or act of making unnecessary or of taking effective steps toward prevention
1. O____________
aggressive attitude
2. M____________
harmful, hurtful, bad
3. M____________
or M____________
or M____________
unimportant, insignificant
4. T____________
unimportant, insignificant things; trifles
5. T____________
or T____________
cursing; of the nature of, or relating to, curses (adj.)
6. M____________
worshipful
7. A____________
(End of Session 22)
1. so now what's the good news?

*Malus* is bad; *bonus* is good. The adverb from the Latin adjective *bonus* is *bene*, and *bene* is the root found in words that contrast with the *mal*- terms we studied in the previous session.

So *bene* (bə-NEIN′) and *benignant* (bə-NIG′-nənt) are kindly, good-natured, not harmful, as in *benign* neglect, a *benign* judge, a *benign* tumor (not cancerous), a *benignant* attitude to malefactors and scoundrels. The corresponding nouns are *benignity* (bə-NIG′-nə-tee) and *benignancy* (bə-NIG′-nən-see).

A *malediction* is a curse; a *benediction* (ben′-ə-DIK′-shən) is a blessing, a “saying good.” The adjective is *benedictory* (ben′-ə-DIK′-tə-ree).

In contrast to *maleficient* is *beneficent* (bə-NEF′-ə-sənt), doing good. The noun? ____________.

In contrast to *malefactor* is *benefactor* (BEN′-ə-fak′-tər), one who does good things for another, as by giving help, providing financial gifts or aid, or coming to the rescue when someone is in need. If you insist on making sexual distinctions, a woman who so operates is a *benefactress* (BEN′-ə-fak′-trəs). And, of course, the person receiving the *benefaction* (ben-ə-FAK′-shən), the recipient of money, help, etc., is a *beneficiary* (ben′-ə-FISH′-ər-ee or ben-ə-FISH′-ee-air-ee). *Benefit* and *beneficial* are other common words built on the combination of *bene* and a form of *facio*, to do or make.

So let others be *malevolent* toward you—confuse them by being *benevolent* (bə-NEV′-ə-lənt)—wish them well. (Turn the other cheek? Why not?) The noun? ____________.

The adjective *bonus*, good, is found in English *bonus*, extra payment, theoretically—but not necessarily—for some good act; in *bonbon*, a candy (a “good-good,” using the French version of the Latin adjective); and in *bona fide* (BŌ′-nə-FĪD′ or BŌ′-nə-FĪ′-dee), etymologically, “in good faith,” hence valid, without pretense, deception, or fraudulent intent—as a *bona fide* offer, a *bona fide* effort to negotiate differences, etc. *Fides* is Latin for faith or trust, as in *fidelity* (fə-DEL′-ə-tee), faithfulness; *Fido*, a stereotypical name for a dog, one’s faithful friend; *infidel* (IN′-fə-dəl), one who does not have the right faith or religion (depending on who is using the term), or one who has no religion (Latin *in*-, not); and *infidelity* (in′-fə-DEL′-ə-tee), unfaithfulness, especially to the marriage vows.

2. say, do, and wish

*Benediction* and *malediction* derive from *dico, dictus*, to say, tell. *Dictate, dictator, dictation, dictatorial* (dik′-tə-TAWR′-ee-əl)—words that signify telling others what to do (“Do as I
The brand name *Dictaphone* combines *dico* with *phone*, sound; *contradict*, to say against, or to make an opposite statement (“Don’t *contradict* me!”; “That *contradicts* what I know”) combines *dico* with *contra*-, against, opposite; and *addiction*, etymologically “a saying to or toward,” or the compulsion to say “yes” to a habit, combines *dico* with *ad*-, to, toward.

*Facio, factus*, to do or make (as in *malefactor, benefactor*), has, as noted, variant spellings in English words: *fec-, fic-, or, as a verb ending, -fy.*

Thus *factory* is a place where things are *made* (-*ory*, place where); a *fact* is something *done* (i.e., something that occurs, or exists, or is, therefore, true); *fiction*, something *made* up or invented; *manufacture*, to *make* by hand (manus, hand, as in *manuscript, manual*), a word coined before the invention of machinery; *artificial*, *made* by human art rather than occurring in nature, as *artificial* flowers, etc.; and *clarify, simplify, liquefy, magnify* (to *make* clear, simple, liquid, larger) among hundreds of other -*fy* verbs.

*Volo*, to wish, to will, to be willing (as in *malevolent, benevolent*), occurs in *voluntary, involuntary, volunteer*, words too familiar to need definition, and each quite obviously expressing wish or willingness. Less common, and from the same root, is *volition* (vō-LISH′-ən), the act or power of willing or wishing, as in “of her own *volition*,” i.e., *voluntarily*, or “against her *volition*.”

### 3. if you please!

*Placate* is built on the root *plac*- which derives from two related Latin verbs meaning, 1) *to please*, and 2) *to appease, soothe*, or *pacify*.

If you succeed in *placating* an angry colleague, you turn that person’s hostile attitude into one that is friendly or favorable. The noun is *placation* (play-KAY′-shən), the adjective either *placative* (PLAK′-ə-tiv or PLAY′-kə-tiv) or *placatory* (PLAK′-ə-taw-ree or PLAY′-kə-taw-ree). A more *placatory* attitude to those you have offended may help you regain their friendship; when husband and wife, or lovers, quarrel, one of them finally makes a *placative* gesture if the war no longer fulfills his or her neurotic needs—one of them eventually will wake up some bright morning in a *placatory* mood.

But then, such is life, the other one may at that point be *implacable* (im-PLAK′-ə-bəl or im-PLAY′-kə-bəl)—*im* is a respelling of *in*-, not, before the letter *p*. One who *can* be soothed, whose hostility *can* be changed to friendliness, is *placable* (PLAK′-ə-bəl or PLAY′-kə-bəl).

*Implacable* has taken on the added meaning of unyielding to entreaty or pity; hence, *harsh, relentless*, as “The governor was *implacable* in his refusal to grant clemency.”

The noun form of *implacable* is *implacability* (im-plak′-ə-BIL′-ə-tee or im-play′-kə-BIL′-ə-tee). Can you write (and pronounce) the noun derived from *placable*? ________________

If you are *placid* (PLAS′-id), you are calm, easygoing, serene, undisturbed—etymologically, you are pleased with things as they are. Waters of a lake or sea, or the emotional atmosphere of a place, can also be *placid*. The noun is *placidity* (plə-SID′-ə-tee).

If you are *complacent* (kom-PLAY′-sənt), you are pleased with yourself (com-, from *con-, with, together*); you may, in fact, such is one common connotation of the word, be smug,
too pleased with your position or narrow accomplishments, too easily self-satisfied, and the hour of reckoning may be closer than you realize. (Humans, as you know, are delighted to be critical of the contentment of others.)

The noun is *complacence* (kəm-PLAY'-sən) or *complacency* (kəm-PLAY'-sən-see).

4. **how to give—and forgive**

To *condone* is to forgive, overlook, pardon, or be uncritical of (an offense, or of an antisocial or illegal act). You yourself might or might not indulge in such behavior or commit such an offense, but you feel no urge to protest, or to demand censure or punishment for someone else who does. You may *condone* cheating on one’s income tax, shoplifting from a big, impersonal supermarket, or exceeding the speed limit, though you personally observe the law with scrupulousness. (Not everyone, however, is so charitable or forgiving.) The noun is *condonation* (kon′-dō-NAY′-shən).

*Condone* is built on Latin *dono*, to give, the root found in *donor*, one who gives; *donate*, to give; and *donation*, a gift.

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. bonus, bene</td>
<td>good, well</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fides</td>
<td>faith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dico, dictus</td>
<td>to say, tell</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pre-</td>
<td>before, beforehand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. phone</td>
<td>sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. contra-</td>
<td>against, opposite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ad-</td>
<td>to, toward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. facio, factus, fec-, fic-, -fy</td>
<td>to make or do</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ENGLISH WORD  

9. -ory  
place where

10. manus  
hand

11. volo  
to wish, to will, to be willing

12. plac-  
to please, appease, soothe, pacify

13. -ive  
adjective suffix

14. -ory  
adjective suffix

15. im- (in-)  
not; negative prefix

16. com- (con-)  
with, together

17. dono  
to give

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. benign  
bə-NĬN′

2. benignity  
bə-NIG′-nə-tee

3. benignant  
bə-NIG′-nənt

4. benignancy  
bə-NIG′-nən-see

5. benediction  
ben′-ə-DIK′-shən

6. benedictory  
ben′-ə-DIK′-tə-ree
7. beneficent  bə-NEF’-ə-sənt
8. beneficence  bə-NEF’-ə-səns
9. benefactor  BEN’-ə-fak’-tər
10. benefaction  ben’-ə-FAK’-shən
11. beneficiary  ben’-ə-FISH’-ər-ee or ben’-ə-FISH’-ee-air-ee
12. benevolent  bə-NEV’-ə-lənt
13. benevolence  bə-NEV’-ə-ləns
14. bona fide  BŌ’-nə FĪD’ or BŌ’-nə FĪ’-dee
15. fidelity  fə-DEL’-ə-tee
16. infidelity  in’-fə-DEL’-ə-tee
17. infidel  IN’-fə-dəl

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. dictatorial  dik’-tə-TAWR’-ee-əl
2. volition  vō-LISH’-ən
3. placation  play-KAY’-shən
4. placative  PLAK’-ə-tiv or PLAY’-kə-tiv
5. placatory  PLAK’-ə-tawr-ee or PLAY’-kə-tawr-ee
6. placable  PLAK’-ə-bəl or PLAY’-kə-bəl
7. implacable  im-PLAK’-ə-bəl or im-PLAY’-kə-bəl
8. placability  plak’-ə-BIL’-ə-tee or play’-kə-BIL’-ə-tee
9. implacability  im-plak’-ə-BIL’-ə-tee or im-play’-kə-BIL’-ə-tee
10. placid  PLAS’-id
11. placidity  plə-SID’-ə-tee
12. complacent  kəm-PLAY’-sənt
13. complacence  kəm-PLAY’-səns
14. complacency  kəm-PLAY’-sən-see
15. condonation  kon’-dō-NAY’-shən
1. benign  a. wishing good things (for another) ; well disposed
2. benedictory  b. domineering; giving orders in a manner permitting no refusal
3. benevolent  c. not to be soothed or pacified; unyielding to pity or entreaty
4. bona fide  d. tending, or intended, to pacify, to soothe, or to change hostility to friendliness
5. dictatorial  e. kindly, good-natured; not cancerous
6. placatory  f. calm, unruffled, undisturbed
7. implacable  g. self-satisfied; smug
8. placid  h. of the nature of, or relating to, blessings
9. complacent  i. in good faith; sincere; valid
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. benevolence  a. recipient of money, kindness, etc.
2. benefaction  b. free will
3. beneficiary  c. act of overlooking, or of forgiving, an
    offense or transgression
4. infidelity  d. faithfulness
5. volition  e. self-satisfaction; smugness
6. placation  f. calmness
7. fidelity  g. act of pacifying, or of turning hostility or
    anger into friendly feelings
8. condonation  h. attitude of wishing good things for
    another
9. placidity  i. faithlessness
10. complacency  j. good deed; act of charity or kindness
### Do you understand the words? (I)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Question</th>
<th>Yes</th>
<th>No</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Are benedictions given in houses of worship?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is it pleasant to be the recipient of a beneficent act?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are kind people benevolent?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do placatory gestures often heal wounds and soothe disgruntled friends?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are some unambitious people complacent?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does benignity show malice?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is a benefaction an act of philanthropy?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is an implacable foe of corruption likely to condone corrupt acts?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is a bona fide offer made insincerely?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does a benignant attitude indicate hostility?</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words? (II)

benign—hateful
SAME   OPPOSITE
benignant—kindly
SAME   OPPOSITE
benediction—malediction
SAME   OPPOSITE
benefactor—evildoer
SAME   OPPOSITE
beneficiary—giver
SAME   OPPOSITE
benevolent—well disposed
SAME   OPPOSITE
bona fide—valid
SAME   OPPOSITE
fidelity—unfaithfulness
SAME   OPPOSITE
infidel—true believer
SAME   OPPOSITE
dictatorial—submissive
SAME   OPPOSITE
placative—pacifying
SAME   OPPOSITE
implacable—unyielding
SAME   OPPOSITE
placid—calm
SAME   OPPOSITE
complacent—discontented
SAME   OPPOSITE
condonation—forgiveness
SAME   OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words?

tending to give orders
1. D__________________

act of overlooking (an offense, etc.)
2. C__________________

unyieldingly hostile; beyond soothing; relentless; pitiless
3. I__________________

intended to soothe or pacify (adj.)
4. P__________________
   or P__________________

one’s desire, wishes, or unforced will
5. V__________________

calmness
6. P__________________

self-satisfaction; smugness
7. C__________________
   or C__________________

non-believer in the “true” religion
8. I__________________

kindly; well disposed
9. B__________________
   or B__________________
   or B__________________

unfaithfulness
10. I__________________

involving a blessing (adj.)
11. B__________________

doing something good or kind (adj.)
12. B__________________

faithfulness
13. F__________________

sincere; valid; in good faith
14. B__________________

one who does something good, kind, or charitable (for another)
15. B__________________
16. B__________________
recipient of kindness, gift, etc.
17. B__________________
able to be soothed or pacified
18. P______________
a kind or charitable deed
A. Do you recognize the words?

To belittle:
(a) titillate, (b) disparage, (c) adulate

To be purposely confusing:
(a) equivocate, (b) obviate, (c) proscribe

To work to the disadvantage of:
(a) malign, (b) militate, (c) placate

To slander:
(a) malign, (b) condone, (c) placate

Lack of equality:
(a) parity, (b) disparity, (c) ambiguity

Phrase that may have two interpretations, one of them indelicate or off-color:
(a) equivocation, (b) ambiguity, (c) double entendre

Hateful:
(a) malignant, (b) benignant, (c) malaise

Ill will:
(a) malaise, (b) malevolence, (c) maleficence

Kindly:
(a) benevolent, (b) placid, (c) complacent

Inflexibly hostile:
(a) implacable, (b) placatory, (c) militant

Giving orders imperiously:
(a) benedictory, (b) dictatorial, (c) adulatory

Self-satisfaction:
(a) complacency, (b) placation, (c) placidity
B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>ROOT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. par</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE parity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. aequus (equ-)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE equivocal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vox, vocis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE vocal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. nox, noctis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE nocturnal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. libra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE equilibrist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. latus, lateris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE equilateral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. equus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE equine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. pedis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE pedestrian</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. paidos (ped-)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE pedagogue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. fero</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE vociferous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. magnus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE magnify</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. scribo, scriptus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE  proscribe
13. manus
EXAMPLE  manuscript
14. post
EXAMPLE  postscript
15. via
EXAMPLE  trivial
16. militis
EXAMPLE  militate
17. malus
EXAMPLE  malefactor
18. dico, dictus
EXAMPLE  dictatorial
19. volo
EXAMPLE  volition
20. facio (fec-, fic-, -fy)
EXAMPLE  benefactor
  fiction
  simplify
21. bonus
EXAMPLE  bona fide
22. fides
EXAMPLE  fidelity
23. phone
EXAMPLE  Dictaphone
24. plac-
EXAMPLE  placate
25. dono
EXAMPLE  donation
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. Keeping in mind the roots *animus* in *equanimity* and *magnus* in *Magnavox* or *magnify*, can you combine these two roots to form a noun meaning, etymologically, *largeness of mind*? ___________. Can you figure out the adjective form, ending in -ous, of the noun you have constructed? ___________.

2. If *equilateral* means *equal-sided*, can you construct an adjective meaning *two-sided*? ___________.

3. *Trans-* is a prefix meaning *across*. Build a verb meaning *to write across* (from one form or language to another): ___________. What is the noun derived from this verb? ___________.

4. What disease was so named on the erroneous assumption that it was caused by “bad air?” ___________.

5. *Facio* may appear in English words as *fec-* . Using the prefix *con-* , together, can you form a noun sometimes used as a synonym for candy, cake, or ice cream (etymologically, “something made together”)? ___________.

(Answers in *Chapter 18*)

THE THRILL OF RECOGNITION

You have been adding, over the past twenty-three sessions, hundreds of words to your vocabulary; you have been learning hundreds of prefixes, roots, and suffixes that make it possible for you to figure out the meaning of many unfamiliar words you may come across in your reading.

As time goes on and you notice more and more of the words you have studied whenever you read, or whenever you listen to lectures, the radio, or TV, the thrill of recognition plus the immediate comprehension of complex ideas will provide a dividend of incalculable value.

You will hear these words in conversation, and you will begin to use them yourself, unself-consciously, whenever something you want to say is best expressed by one of the words that exactly verbalizes your thinking. Another priceless dividend!

*So keep on! You are involved in a dividend-paying activity that will eventually make you intellectually rich.*
Fulsome (Fʊl'-səm) does not mean, despite its appearance, fully or completely, but rather, offensive because of excessiveness or insincerity, often in reference to compliments, praise, admiration, or flattery.
Consider this statement by Louis Bromfield, a noted author: “If I, as a novelist, wrote dialogue for my characters which was meticulously grammatical, the result would be the creation of a speech which rendered the characters pompous and unreal.”

And this one by Jacques Barzun, former literary critic for Harper’s: “Speech, after all, is in some measure an expression of character, and flexibility in its use is a good way to tell your friends from the robots.”

Consider also this puckish remark by the late Clarence Darrow: “Even if you do learn to speak correct English, who are you going to speak it to?”

These are typical reactions of professional people to the old restrictions of formal English grammar. Do the actual teachers of English feel the same way? Again, some typical statements:

“Experts and authorities do not make decisions and rules, by logic or otherwise, about correctness,” said E. A. Cross, then Professor of English at the Greeley, Colorado, College of Education. “All they can do is observe the customs of cultivated and educated people and report their findings.”

“Grammar is only an analysis after the facts, a post-mortem on usage,” said Stephen Leacock in How To Write. “Usage comes first and usage must rule.”

One way to discover current trends in usage is to poll a cross section of people who use the language professionally, inquiring as to their opinion of the acceptability, in everyday speech, of certain specific and controversial expressions. A questionnaire I prepared recently was answered by eighty-two such people—thirty-one authors, seven book reviewers, thirty-three editors, and eleven professors of English. The results, some of which will be detailed below, may possibly prove startling to you if you have been conditioned to believe, as most of us have, that correct English is rigid, unchangeable, and exclusively dependent on grammatical rules.

TEST YOURSELF

Californians boast of the healthy climate of their state.
RIGHT    WRONG

Her new novel is not as good as her first one.
RIGHT    WRONG

We can’t hardly believe it.
RIGHT    WRONG
This is her.

Who are you waiting for?

Please take care of whomever is waiting.

Whom would you like to be if you weren’t yourself?

My wife has been robbed.

Is this desert fattening?

1. Californians boast of the healthy climate of their state.

   Right. There is a distinction, says formal grammar, between healthy and healthful. A person can be healthy—I am still quoting the rule—if he possesses good health. But climate must be healthful, since it is conducive to health. This distinction is sometimes observed in writing but rarely in everyday speech, as you have probably noticed. Even the dictionaries have stopped splitting hairs—they permit you to say healthy no matter which of the two meanings you intend.

   “Healthy climate” was accepted as current educated usage by twenty-six of the thirty-three editors who answered the questionnaire, six of the seven book reviewers, nine of the eleven professors of English, and twenty of the thirty-one authors. The earlier distinction, in short, is rapidly becoming obsolete.

2. Her new novel is not as good as her first one.

   Right. If you have studied formal grammar, you will recall that after a negative verb the “proper” word is so, not as. Is this rule observed by educated speakers? Hardly ever.

   In reference to the sentence under discussion, author Thomas W. Duncan remarked: “I always say—and write—as, much to the distress of my publisher’s copyreader. But the fellow is a wretched purist.”

   The tally on this use of as showed seventy-four for, only eight against.

3. We can’t hardly believe it.

   Wrong. Of the eighty-two professional people who answered my questionnaire, seventy-six rejected this sentence; it is evident that can’t hardly is far from acceptable in educated speech. Preferred usage: We can hardly believe it.

4. This is her.

   Wrong. This substitution of her where the rule requires she was rejected by fifty-seven of my eighty-two respondents. Paradoxically enough, although “It’s me” and “This is me” are fully established in educated speech, “This is her” still seems to be condemned by the majority of cultivated speakers. Nevertheless, the average person, I imagine, may feel a bit uncomfortable saying “This is she”—it sounds almost too sophisticated.

   This is more than an academic problem. If the voice at the other end of a telephone conversation makes the opening move with “I’d like to speak to Jane Doe [your name, for
argument’s sake],” you are, unfortunately, on the horns of a very real dilemma. “This is she” may sound prissy—“This is her” may give the impression that you're uneducated. Other choices are equally doubtful. “Talking!” is suspiciously businesslike if the call comes to your home, and “I am Jane Doe!” may make you feel like the opening line of a high school tableau. The need for a decision arises several times in a busy day—and, I am sorry to report, the English language is just deficient enough not to be of much help. I wonder how it would be if you just grunted affably?

5. **Who** are you waiting for?

RIGHT. *Formal grammar* not only requires *whom* but demands that the word order be changed to: “For whom are you waiting?” (Just try talking with such formality on everyday occasions and see how long you'll keep your friends.)

Who is the normal, popular form as the first word of a sentence, no matter what the grammatical construction; and an opinion by Kyle Crichton, a well-known magazine editor, is typical of the way many educated people feel. Mr. Crichton says: “The most loathsome word (to me at least) in the English language is whom. You can always tell a half-educated buffoon by the care he takes in working the word in. When he starts it, I know I am faced with a pompous illiterate who is not going to have me long as company.”

The score for acceptance of the sentence as it stands (with *who*) was sixty-six out of eighty-two. If, like most unpedantic speakers, you prefer *who* to *whom* for informal occasions, or if you feel as strongly about *whom* as Mr. Crichton does, you will be happy to hear that modern trends in English are all on your side.

6. Please take care of whomever is waiting.

WRONG. Whomever is awkward and a little silly in this sentence and brings to mind Franklin P. Adams’ famous remark on grammar: “‘Whom are you?’ asked Cyril, for he had been to night school.” It is also contrary to grammatical rule. People who are willing to be sufficiently insufferable to use whomever in this construction have been tempted into error by the adjacent word of. They believe that since they are following a preposition with an objective pronoun they are speaking impeccable grammar. In actuality, however, whomever is not the object of the preposition of but the subject of the verb is waiting. Preferable form: Please take care of whoever is waiting.

7. Whom would you like to be if you weren’t yourself?

WRONG. Here is another and typical example of the damage which an excessive reverence for whom can do to an innocent person’s speech. Judged by grammatical rule, whom is incorrect in this sentence (the verb to be requires who); judged by normal speech patterns, it is absurd. This use of whom probably comes from an abortive attempt to sound elegant.

8. My wife has been robbed.

RIGHT—if something your wife owns was taken by means of thievery. However, if your wife herself was kidnapped, or in some way talked into leaving you, she was stolen, not robbed. To rob is to abscond with the contents of something—to steal is to walk off with the thing itself. Needless to say, both forms of activity are highly antisocial and equally illegal.

9. Is this desert fattening?

WRONG. The dessert that is fattening is spelled with two s’s. With one s, it’s a desert, like the Sahara. Remember the two s’s in dessert by thinking how much you’d like two portions, if only your waistline permitted.
WHAT adjective describes people who:
are disinclined to conversation?
are brief and to the point in their speech?
are blocked or incoherent in their speech?
show by their speech that they are trite and unimaginative?
use more words than necessary?
are forcefully compelling and logical in their speech?
talk rapidly and fluently?
are noisy and clamorous?
are talkative?
SESSION 24

Perhaps some of your richest and most satisfying experiences have been with people to whom you can just talk, talk, talk. As you speak, previously untapped springs of ideas and emotions begin to flow; you hear yourself saying things you never thought you knew.

What kinds of people might you find yourself in conversation with? In this chapter we start by examining ten types, discovering the adjective that aptly describes each one.

IDEAS

1. saying little

_There are some people who just don’t like to talk._ It’s not that they prefer to listen. Good listeners hold up their end of the conversation delightfully—with appropriate facial expressions; with empathetic smiles, giggles, squeals, and sighs at just the right time; and with encouraging nods or phrases like “Go on!”, “Fantastic!”, “And then what happened?”

_These_ people like neither to talk nor to listen—they act as if conversation is a bore, even a painful waste of time. Try to engage them, and the best you may expect for your efforts is a vacant stare, a noncommittal grunt, or an impatient silence. Finally, in frustration, you give up, thinking. “Are they self-conscious? Do they hate people? Do they hate me?”

The adjective: **taciturn**

2. saying little—meaning much

There is a well-known anecdote about Calvin Coolidge, who, when he was President, was often called (though probably not to his face) “Silent Cal”:

A young newspaperwoman was sitting next to him at a banquet, so the story goes, and turned to him mischievously.

“Mr. Coolidge,” she said, “I have a bet with my editor that I can get you to say more than two words to me this evening.”

“You lose,” Coolidge rejoined simply.

The adjective: **laconic**

3. when the words won’t come

Under the pressure of some strong emotion—fear, rage, anger, for example—people may find it difficult, or even impossible, to utter words, to get their feelings unjumbled and untangled enough to form understandable sentences. They undoubtedly have a lot they
want to say, but the best they can do is sputter!

The adjective: *inarticulate*

4. much talk, little sense

Miss Bates, a character in *Emma*, a novel by Jane Austen:

“So obliging of you! No, we should not have heard, if it had not been for this particular circumstance, of her being able to come here so soon. My mother is so delighted! For she is to be three months with us at least. Three months, she says so, positively, as I am going to have the pleasure of reading to you. The case is, you see, that the Campbells are going to Ireland. Mrs. Dixon has persuaded her father and mother to come over and see her directly. I was going to say, but, however, different countries, and so she wrote a very urgent letter to her mother, or her father, I declare I do not know which it was, but we shall see presently in Jane’s letter …”

The adjective: *garrulous*

5. unoriginal

Some people are completely lacking in originality and imagination—and their talk shows it. Everything they say is trite, hackneyed, commonplace, humorless—their speech patterns are full of clichés and stereotypes, their phraseology is without sparkle.

The adjective: *banal*

6. words, words, words!

They talk and talk and talk—it’s not so much the quantity you object to as the repetitiousness. They phrase, rephrase, and re-rephrase their thoughts—using far more words than necessary, overwhelming you with words, drowning you with them, until your only thought is how to escape, or maybe how to die.

The adjective: *verbose*

7. words in quick succession

They are rapid, fluent talkers, the words seeming to roll off their tongues with such ease and lack of effort, and sometimes with such copiousness, that you listen with amazement.

The adjective: *voluble*

8. words that convince
They express their ideas persuasively, forcefully, brilliantly, and in a way that calls for wholehearted assent and agreement from an intelligent listener. 

The adjective: *cogent*

**9. the sound and the fury**

Their talk is loud, noisy, clamorous, vehement. What may be lacking in content is compensated for in force and loudness.

The adjective: *vociferous*

**10. quantity**

They talk a lot—a *whole* lot. They may be voluble, vociferous, garrulous, verbose, but never inarticulate, taciturn, or laconic. No matter. It’s the quantity and continuity that are most conspicuous. “Were you vaccinated with a phonograph needle?” is the question you are tempted to ask as you listen.

The adjective: *loquacious*

These ten words revolve around the idea of varying kinds and ways of talking and not talking. Many of the adjectives are close in meaning, but each contains its unique difference.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>QUALITY</th>
<th>ADJECTIVE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. silence, unresponsiveness</td>
<td>taciturn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. economy, brevity, meaningfulness</td>
<td>laconic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. awkwardness, sputtering, incoherence</td>
<td>inarticulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. rambling chatter</td>
<td>garrulous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. hackneyed, unoriginal phraseology</td>
<td>banal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. wordiness, repetitiousness</td>
<td>verbose</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. fluency, rapidity</td>
<td>voluble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. logic, clarity, persuasiveness</td>
<td>cogent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. noise, vehemence</td>
<td>vociferous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. talkativeness</td>
<td>loquacious</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USING THE WORDS**
Can you pronounce the words?

1. taciturn
   TAS'ə-turn
2. laconic
   lə-KON′-ik
3. inarticulate
   in′-ahr-TIK′-yə-lət
4. garrulous
   GAIR′ə-ləs
5. banal
   BAY′-nəl
6. verbose
   vər-BŌS′
7. voluble
   VOL′-yə-bəl
8. cogent
   KŌ′-jənt
9. vociferous
   vō-SIF′-ər-əs
10. loquacious
    lō-KWAY′-ʃəs

Can you work with the words?

1. taciturn
   a. chattering meaninglessly
2. laconic
   b. wordy
3. inarticulate
   c. trite, hackneyed, unoriginal
4. garrulous
   d. fluent and rapid
5. banal
   e. noisy, loud
6. verbose
   f. sputtering unintelligibly
7. voluble
   g. talkative
8. cogent
   h. brilliantly compelling, persuasive
9. vociferous
   i. unwilling to engage in conversation
10. loquacious
    j. using few words packed with meaning
Do you understand the words?

Do taciturn people usually make others feel comfortable and welcome?
YES  NO

Does a laconic speaker use more words than necessary?
YES  NO

Does rage make some people inarticulate?
YES  NO

Is it interesting to listen to garrulous old men?
YES  NO

Do banal speakers show a great deal of originality?
YES  NO

Is verbose a complimentary term?
YES  NO

Is it easy to be voluble when you don’t know the subject you are talking about?
YES  NO

Do unintelligent people usually make cogent statements?
YES  NO

Is a vociferous demand ordinarily made by a shy, quiet person?
YES  NO

Do loquacious people spend more time talking than listening?
YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

Do you know that new nerve patterns are formed by repeated actions? As a very young child, you tied your shoelaces and buttoned your clothing with great concentration—the activity was directed, controlled, purposeful, exciting. As you grew older and more skilful, you tied and buttoned with scarcely a thought of what you were doing. Your fingers flew about their task almost automatically—for the habit had formed a nerve pattern and the action needed little if any conscious attention.

That’s simple enough to understand. If you do not remember your own experiences, you can observe the phenomenon of struggling with a skill, mastering it, and finally making it a self-starting habit by watching any young child. Or you can simply take my word for it.

You need not take my word for the way a mastery of new words is acquired. You can see in yourself, as you work with this book, how adding words to your vocabulary is exactly analogous to a child’s mastery of shoelacing. First you struggle with the concepts; then you eventually master them; finally, by frequent work with the new words (now you see the reason for the great number of exercises, the repetitious writing, saying, thinking) you build up new nerve patterns and you begin to use the new words with scarcely any consciousness of what you are doing.

Watch this common but important phenomenon closely as you do the next exercise. Your total absorption of the material so far has given you complete mastery of our ten basic words. Prove that you are beginning to form new nerve patterns in relation to these words by writing the one that fits each brief definition. The more quickly you think of the word that applies, the surer you can be that using these words will soon be as automatic and unself-conscious as putting on your shoes or buttoning/zipting yourself up in the morning.

1. talkative
2. noisy, vehement, clamorous
3. incoherent; sputtering
4. gabbing ceaselessly and with little meaning
5. disinclined to conversation
6. talking in hackneyed phraseology
7. showing a fine economy in the use of words

1. L__________________
2. V__________________
3. I__________________
4. G__________________
5. T__________________
6. B__________________
7. L__________________
forceful and convincing
8. C__________
talking rapidly and fluently
9. V__________
using more words than necessary
10. V__________
KEY: 1–loquacious, 2–vociferous, 3–inarticulate, 4–garrulous, 5–taciturn, 6–banal, 7–laconic, 8–cogent, 9–voluble, 10–verbose

(End of Session 24)
SESSION 25

ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. about keeping one’s mouth shut

If you let your mind play over some of the taciturn people you know, you will realize that their abnormal disinclination to conversation makes them seem morose, sullen, and unfriendly. Cal Coolidge’s taciturnity was world-famous, and no one, I am sure, ever conceived of him as cheerful, overfriendly, or particularly sociable. There are doubtless many possible causes of such verbal rejection of the world: perhaps lack of self-assurance, feelings of inadequacy or hostility, excessive seriousness or introspection, or just plain having nothing to say. Maybe, in Coolidge’s case, he was saving up his words—after he did not “choose to run” in 1928, he wrote a daily column for the New York Herald Tribune at a rumored price of two dollars a word—and, according to most critics (probably all Democrats), he had seemed wiser when he kept silent. Coolidge hailed from New England, and taciturnity (tas-ə-TURN’-ə-tee) in that part of the country, so some people say, is considered a virtue. Who knows, the cause may be geographical and climatic, rather than psychological.

Taciturn is from a Latin verb taceo, to be silent, and is one of those words whose full meaning cannot be expressed by any other combination of syllables. It has many synonyms, among them silent, uncommunicative, reticent, reserved, secretive, close-lipped, and close-mouthed; but no other word indicates the permanent, habitual, and temperamental disinclination to talk implied by taciturn.

2. better left unsaid

Tacit (TAS’-it) derives also from taceo.

Here is a man dying of cancer. He suspects what his disease is, and everyone else, of course, knows. Yet he never mentions the dread word, and no one who visits him ever breathes a syllable of it in his hearing. It is tacitly understood by all concerned that the word will remain forever unspoken.

(Such a situation today, however, may or may not be typical—there appears to be a growing tendency among physicians and family to be open and honest with people who are dying.)

Consider another situation:

An executive is engaging in extracurricular activities with her secretary. Yet during office time they are as formal and distant as any two human beings can well be. Neither of them ever said to the other, “Now, look here, we may be lovers after five o’clock, but between nine and five we must preserve the utmost decorum, okay?” Such speech, such a verbal
arrangement, is considered unnecessary—so we may say that the two have a tacit
agreement (i.e., nothing was ever actually said) to maintain a complete employer-employee
relationship during office hours.

Anything tacit, then, is unspoken, unsaid, not verbalized. We speak of a tacit agreement,
arrangement, acceptance, rejection, assent, refusal, etc. A person is never called tacit.
The noun is tacitness (TAS′-it-nəs). (Bear in mind that you can transform any adjective
into a noun by adding -ness, though in many cases there may be a more sophisticated, or
more common, noun form.)

Changing the a of the root taceo to i, and adding the prefix re-, again, and the adjective
suffix -ent, we can construct the English word reticent (RET′-ə-sənt).

Someone is reticent who prefers to keep silent, whether out of shyness, embarrassment, or
fear of revealing what should not be revealed. (The idea of “againness” in the prefix has
been lost in the current meaning of the word.)

We have frequently made nouns out of -ent adjectives. Write two possible noun forms of
reticent: ___________, or, less commonly, ____________.

3. talk, talk, talk!

Loquacious people love to talk. This adjective is not necessarily a put-down, but the
implication, when you so characterize such people, is that you wish they would pause for
breath once in a while so that you can get your licks in. The noun is loquacity (lō-KWAS′-ə-
tee), or, of course, loquaciousness.
The word derives from Latin loquor, to speak, a root found also in:

1. soliloquy (sə-LIL′-ə-kwee)—a speech to oneself (loquor plus solus, alone), or, etymologically, a speech when alone.

We often talk to ourselves, but usually silently, the words going through our minds but
not actually passing our lips. The term soliloquy is commonly applied to utterances made in
a play by characters who are speaking their thoughts aloud so the audience won’t have to
guess. The soliloquist (sə-LIL′-ə-kwist) may be alone; or other members of the cast may be
present on stage, but of course they don’t hear what’s being said, because they’re not
supposed to know. Eugene O’Neill made novel uses of soliloquies in Mourning Becomes
Electra—the characters made honest disclosures of their feelings and thoughts to the
audience, but kept the other players in the dark.
The verb is to soliloquize (sə-LIL′-ə-kwīz′).

2. A ventriloquist (ven-TRIL′-ə-kwist) is one who can throw his voice. A listener thinks the
sound is coming from some source other than the person speaking. The combining root is
Latin venter, ventris, belly; etymologically, ventriloquism (ven-TRIL′-ə-kwiz-əm) is the art of
“speaking from the belly.” The adjective is ventriloquistic (ven-tril′-ə-KWIS′-tik). Can you
figure out how the verb will end? Write the verb: ______________.

3. Colloquial (kə-LŌ′-kwee-əl) combines loquor, to speak, with the prefix con-. (Con- is
spelled col- before a root starting with l; cor- before a root starting with r; com- before a root
When people speak together they are engaging in conversation—and their language is usually more informal and less rigidly grammatical than what you might expect in writing or in public addresses. Colloquial patterns are perfectly correct—they are simply informal, and suitable to everyday conversation.

A *colloquialism* (kə-LŌ’-kwee-ə-liz-əm), therefore, is a *conversational-style* expression, like “He hasn’t got any” or “Who are you going with?” as contrasted to the formal or literary “He has none” or “With whom are you going?” Colloquial English is the English you and I talk on everyday occasions—it is not slangy, vulgar, or illiterate.

4. A *circumlocution* (sur-kəm-lō-KYŏ-ŏn) is, etymologically, a “talking around” (circum-, around). Any way of expressing an idea that is roundabout or indirect is *circumlocutory* (sur′-kəm-LOK′-yə-tawr′-ee)—you are now familiar with the common adjective suffix -ory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. taceo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. -ent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. -ence, -ency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. re-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. loquor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. solus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. -ist</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10. -ize
**ENGLISH WORD** ____________
verb suffix

11. venter, ventris
**ENGLISH WORD** ____________
belly

12. -ic
**ENGLISH WORD** ____________
adjective suffix

13. -ous
**ENGLISH WORD** ____________
adjective suffix

14. con-, col-, com-, cor-
**ENGLISH WORD** ____________
with, together

15. -al
**ENGLISH WORD** ____________
adjective suffix

16. -ism
**ENGLISH WORD** ____________
noun suffix

**WORKING WITH THE WORDS**

Can you pronounce the words?

1. taciturnity  
   **tac-Ə-turn′-ə-tee**

2. tacit  
   **taz′-it**

3. tacitness  
   **taz′-ət-nəs**

4. reticent  
   **ret′-ə-sənt**

5. reticence  
   **ret′-ə-səns**

6. reticency  
   **ret′-ə-sən-see**

7. loquaciousness  
   **lo-kwə-shəs-nəs**

8. loquacity  
   **lo-kwə-sə-tee**

9. soliloquy  
   **sə-lə-lə-kwee**

10. soliloquist  
    **sə-lə-lə-kwist**

11. soliloquize  
    **sə-lə-lə-kwiz′**
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. taciturnity</td>
<td>a. unwillingness to talk, or disclose, out of fear, shyness, reserve, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. tacitness</td>
<td>b. talking, or a speech, “to oneself”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. reticence</td>
<td>c. art of throwing one’s voice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. loquacity</td>
<td>d. unwillingness to engage in conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. soliloquy</td>
<td>e. informal expression used in everyday conversation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ventriloquism</td>
<td>f. state of being understood though not actually expressed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. colloquialism</td>
<td>g. a talking around; method of talking indirectly or in a roundabout way</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. circumlocution</td>
<td>h. talkativeness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

A tacit understanding is put into words.
TRUE   FALSE

Inhibited people are seldom reticent about expressing anger.
TRUE   FALSE

A soliloquist expresses his thoughts aloud.
TRUE   FALSE

A ventriloquistic performance on stage involves a dummy who appears to be talking.
TRUE   FALSE

A colloquial style of writing is ungrammatical.
TRUE   FALSE

Circumlocutory speech is direct and forthright.
TRUE   FALSE

Inarticulate people are generally given to loquaciousness.
TRUE   FALSE

A soliloquy is a dialogue.
TRUE   FALSE
Can you recall the words?

to speak to oneself
1. S______________
to throw one’s voice
2. V______________
unwillingness to engage in conversation
3. T______________
unspoken
4. T______________
referring to an indirect, roundabout style of expression (adj.)
5. C______________
suitable for informal conversation
6. C______________
talkativeness
7. L______________
or L______________
reluctance to express one’s feelings or thoughts
8. R______________
or R______________
a speech to oneself, especially in a play
9. S______________
an indirect, roundabout expression
10. C______________
KEY: 1–soliloquize, 2–ventriloquize, 3–taciturnity, 4–tacit, 5–circumlocutory, 6–colloquial, 7–loquaciousness or loquacity, 8–reticence or reticency, 9–soliloquy, 10–circumlocution

(End of Session 25)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. a Spartan virtue

In ancient Sparta, originally known as Laconia, the citizens were long-suffering, hard-bitten, stoical, and military-minded, and were even more noted for their economy of speech than Vermonters, if that is possible. Legend has it that when Philip of Macedonia was storming the gates of Sparta (or Laconia), he sent a message to the besieged king saying, “If we capture your city we will burn it to the ground.” A one-word answer came back: “If.” It was now probably Philip’s turn to be speechless, though history does not record his reaction.

It is from the name Laconia that we derive our word laconic—pithy, concise, economical in the use of words almost to the point of curtness; precisely the opposite of verbose.

Like the man who was waiting at a lunch counter for a ham sandwich. When it was ready, the clerk inquired politely, “Will you eat it here, or take it with you?”

“Both,” was the laconic reply.

Or like the woman who was watching a lush imbibing dry martinis at a Third Avenue bar in New York City. The drunk downed the contents of each cocktail glass at one gulp, daintily nibbled and swallowed the bowl, then finally turned the glass over and ate the base. The stem he threw into a corner. This amazing gustatory feat went on for half an hour, until a dozen stems were lying shattered in the corner, and the drunk had chewed and swallowed enough bowls and bases to start a glass factory. He suddenly turned to the lady and asked belligerently, “I suppose you think I’m cuckoo, don’t you?” “Sure—the stem is the best part,” was the laconic answer.

(It was doubtless this same gentleman, in his accustomed state of intoxication, who found himself painfully weaving his way along Wilshire Boulevard in Beverly Hills, California—he had somehow gotten on a TWA jetliner instead of the subway—when he realized, almost too late, that he was going to bump into a smartly dressed young woman who had just stepped out of her Mercedes-Benz to go window-shopping along the avenue. He quickly veered left, but by some unexplainable magnetic attraction the woman veered in the same direction, again making collision apparently inevitable. With an adroit maneuver, the drunk swung to the right—the lady, by now thoroughly disoriented, did the same. Finally both jammed on the brakes and came to a dead stop, face to face, and not six inches apart; and as the alcoholic fumes assailed the young lady’s nostrils, she sneered at the reeking, swaying man, as much in frustration as in contempt: “Oh! How gauche!” “Fine!” was his happy response. “How goesh with you?” This answer, however, is not laconic, merely confused.)

We have learned that -ness, -ity, and -ism are suffixes that transform adjectives into nouns.
—and all three can be used with laconic:
...with characteristic laconicness (lə-KON′-ək-nəs)
...her usual laconicity (lə-KON′-ə-tc
...his habitual laconism (LAK′-ə-niz-əm)
...with, for him, unusual laconicism (lə-KON′-ə-siz-əm)

A laconism is also the expression itself that is pithy and concise, as the famous report from a naval commander in World War II: “Saw sub, sank same.”

2. brilliant

Cogent is a term of admiration. A cogent argument is well put, convincing, hardly short of brilliant. Cogency (KŌ′-jən-see) shows a keen mind, an ability to think clearly and logically. The word derives from the Latin verb cogo, to drive together, compel, force. A cogent argument compels acceptance because of its logic, its persuasiveness, its appeal to one’s sense of reason.

3. back to talk

You will recall that loquor, to speak, is the source of loquacity, soliloquy, ventriloquism, colloquialism, circumlocution. This root is also the base on which eloquent (EL′-ə-kwənt), magniloquent (mag-NIL′-ə-kwənt), and grandiloquent (gran-DIL′-ə-kwənt) are built.

The eloquent person speaks out (e-, from ex-, out), is vividly expressive, fluent, forceful, or persuasive in language ("the prosecutor’s eloquent plea to the jury"). The word is partially synonymous with cogent, but cogent implies irresistible logical reasoning and intellectual keenness, while eloquent suggests artistic expression, strong emotional appeal, the skillful use of language to move and arouse a listener.

Magniloquent (magnus, large) and grandiloquent (grandis, grand) are virtually identical in meaning. Magniloquence or grandiloquence is the use of high-flown, grandiose, even pompous language; of large and impressive words; of lofty, flowery, or over-elegant phraseology. Home is a place of residence; wife is helpmate, helpmeet, or better half; women are the fair sex; children are offspring or progeny; a doctor is a member of the medical fraternity; people are the species Homo sapiens, etc., etc.

Loquacious, verbose, voluble, and garrulous people are all talkative; but each type, you will recall, has a special quality.

If you are loquacious, you talk a lot because you like to talk and doubtless have a lot to say.

If you are verbose, you smother your ideas with excess words, with such an overabundance of words that your listener either drops into a state of helpless confusion or falls asleep.

If you are voluble, you speak rapidly, fluently, glibly, without hesitation, stutter, or stammer; you are vocal, verbal, and highly articulate.

If you are garrulous, you talk constantly, and usually aimlessly and meaninglessly, about trifles. We often hear the word used in “a garrulous old man” or “a garrulous old woman,”
since in very advanced age the mind may wander and lose the ability to discriminate between the important and the unimportant, between the interesting and the dull.  

*Verbose* is from Latin *verbum*, word—the *verbose* person is wordy.  

*Voluble* comes from Latin *volvo*, *volutus*, to roll—words effortlessly roll off the *voluble* speaker’s tongue.  

And *garrulous* derives from Latin *garrio*, to chatter—a *garrulous* talker chatters away like a monkey.  

The suffix -ness can be added to all these adjectives to form nouns. Alternate noun forms end in -ity:

- **verbosity** (vər-BOS′-ə-tee)
- **volubility** (vor-yə-BIL′-ə-tee)
- **garrulity** (gə-ROOL′-ə-tee)

4. at large

We discovered *magnus*, large, big, great, in Chapter 9, in discussing *Magnavox* (etymologically, “big voice”), and find it again in *magniloquent* (etymologically, “talking big”). The root occurs in a number of other words:

1. *Magnanimous* (mag-NAN′-ə-məs)—big-hearted, generous, forgiving (etymologically, “great-minded”). (*Magnus* plus *animus*, mind.) We’ll discuss this word in depth in Chapter 12.

2. *Magnate* (MAG′-nayt)—a person of great power or influence, a big wheel, as a business *magnate*.

3. *Magnify*—to make larger, or make seem larger (*magnus* plus -fy from *facio*, to make), as in “*magnify* your problems.”

4. *Magnificent*—*magnus* plus -fic-, from *facio*.

5. *Magnitude*—*magnus* plus the common noun suffix -tude, as in *fortitude*, *multitude*, *gratitude*, etc.

6. *Magnum* (as of champagne or wine)—a large bottle, generally two fifths of a gallon.

7. *Magnum opus* (MAG′-nəm Ō′-pes)—etymologically, a “big work”; actually, the greatest work, or masterpiece, of an artist, writer, or composer. *Opus* is the Latin word for work; the plural of *opus* is used in the English word *opera*, etymologically, “a number of works,” actually a musical drama containing overture, singing, and other forms of music, i.e., many musical works. The verb form *opero*, to work, occurs in *operate*, *co-operate*, *operator*, etc.

5. words, words, words!

Latin *verbum* is word. A *verb* is the important word in a sentence; *verbatim* (vər-BAY′-tim) is word-for-word (a *verbatim* report).  

*Verbal* (VUR′-bəl), ending in the adjective suffix -al, may refer either to a *verb*, or to words
in general (a verbal fight); or it may mean, loosely, oral or spoken, rather than written (verbal agreement or contract); or, describing people ("she is quite verbal"), it may refer to a ready ability to put feelings or thoughts into words.

Working from verbal, can you add a common verb suffix to form a word meaning to put into words? __________

Verbiage (VUR'-bee-aj) has two meanings: an excess of words ("Such verbiage!"); or a style or manner of using words (medical verbiage, military verbiage).

6. roll on, and on!

Volvo, volutus, to roll, the source of voluble, is the root on which many important English words are based.

Revolve (rə-VOLV')—roll again (and again), or keep turning round. Wheels revolve, the earth revolves around the sun, the cylinder of a revolver revolves, (The prefix is re-, back or again.)

The noun is revolution (rev-ə-LOShən), which can be one such complete rolling, or, by logical extension, a radical change of any sort (TV was responsible for a revolution in the entertainment industry), especially political (the American, or French, Revolution). The adjective revolutionary (rev-ə-LOShən-air'-ee) introduces us to a new adjective suffix, -ary, as in contrary, disciplinary, stationary, imaginary, etc. (But -ary is sometimes also a noun suffix, as in dictionary, commentary, etc.)

Add different prefixes to volvo to construct two more English words:
1. involve—etymologically, "roll in" ("I didn't want to get involved!"). Noun: involvement.
2. evolve (ə-VOLV')—etymologically, "roll out" (e-, out); hence to unfold, or gradually develop ("The final plan evolved from some informal discussions"; "The political party evolved from a group of interested citizens who met frequently to protest government actions").

By analogy with the forms derived from revolve, can you construct the noun and adjective of evolve? Noun: ___________. Adjective: _____________.

REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Laconia</td>
<td>Sparta</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ness</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. -ism</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
<td>----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>-ity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>e- (ex-)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>-ent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>-ence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>magnus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>grandis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>verbum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>volvo, volutus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>garrio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>animus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>-fy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>-tude</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>opus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>opero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>-al</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ENGLISH WORD ___________________
19. -ize verb suffix
ENGLISH WORD ___________________
20. re- again, back
ENGLISH WORD ___________________
21. -ary adjective suffix
ENGLISH WORD ___________________
22. in- in

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. laconicity lak′-ə-NIS′-ə-tee
2. laconism LAK′-ə-niz-əm
3. laconicism lə-KON′-ə-siz-əm
4. eloquent EL′-ə-kwənt
5. eloquence EL′-ə-kwəns
6. magniloquent mag-NIL′-ə-kwənt
7. magniloquence mag-NIL′-ə-kwəns
8. grandiloquent gran-DIL′-ə-kwənt
9. grandiloquence gran-DIL′-ə-kwəns
10. verbosity vər-BOS′-ə-tee
11. volubility vol′-yə-BIL′-ə-tee
12. garrulity gə-RŌ′-lə-tee
13. cogency KŌ′-jən-see

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. magnanimous mag-NAN′-ə-məs
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. magnate</td>
<td>MAG′-nayt</td>
<td>c. big wheel; important or influential person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. magnum opus</td>
<td>MAG′-nəm Ō′-pəs</td>
<td>d. great artistic work; masterpiece</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. verbatim</td>
<td>vər-BAY′-tim</td>
<td>e. a gradual unfolding or development; “a rolling out”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. verbal</td>
<td>VUR′-bəl</td>
<td>f. “a rolling round”; radical change; political upheaval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. verbalize</td>
<td>VUR′-bə-liz′</td>
<td>g. great economy in speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. verbiage</td>
<td>VUR′-bee-əj</td>
<td>h. fluency, ease, and/or rapidity of speech</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. revolve</td>
<td>rə-VOLV′</td>
<td>i. great, artistic, or emotional expressiveness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. revolution</td>
<td>rev′-ə-LOO′-shən</td>
<td>j. wordiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. revolutionary</td>
<td>rev′-ə-LOO′-shə-nair′-ee</td>
<td>k. persuasiveness through logic; keen-mindedness in reasoning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. evolve</td>
<td>ə-VOLV′</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. evolution</td>
<td>ev′-ə-LOO′-shən</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. evolutionary</td>
<td>ev′-ə-LOO′-shə-nair′-ee</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can you work with the words? (I)**

1. laconicity
2. eloquence
3. magniloquence
4. verbosity
5. volubility
6. garrulity
7. magnum opus
8. magnate
9. revolution
10. evolution
11. cogency

a. floweriness, pompousness, or elegance in speech
b. incessant chatter with little meaning
c. big wheel; important or influential person
d. great artistic work; masterpiece
e. a gradual unfolding or development; “a rolling out”
f. “a rolling round”; radical change; political upheaval
g. great economy in speech
h. fluency, ease, and/or rapidity of speech
i. great, artistic, or emotional expressiveness
j. wordiness
k. persuasiveness through logic; keen-mindedness in reasoning
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>laconism</td>
<td>a. word for word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbiage</td>
<td>b. to put into words</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbalize</td>
<td>c. causing, or resulting from, radical change; new and totally different</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbal</td>
<td>d. resulting or developing gradually from (something)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>verbatim</td>
<td>e. expressive; emotionally moving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>revolutionary</td>
<td>f. pithiness or economy of expression; word or phrase packed with meaning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>evolutionary</td>
<td>g. big-hearted; generous, forgiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grandiloquent</td>
<td>h. referring or pertaining to, or involving, words; oral, rather than written</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eloquent</td>
<td>i. using flossy, flowery, elegant, or impressive phraseology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnanimous</td>
<td>j. wordiness; style or manner of using words; type of words</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

Is *laconicism* characteristic of a verbose speaker?
YES   NO

Does a *magniloquent* speaker use short, simple words?
YES   NO

Does a frog *evolve* from a tadpole?
YES   NO

Is an *eloquent* speaker interesting to listen to?
YES   NO

Do verbose people use a lot of *verbiage*?
YES   NO

Is *volubility* characteristic of an inarticulate person?
YES   NO

Does *verbosity* show a careful and economical use of words?
YES   NO

Is a *verbal* person usually inarticulate?
YES   NO

Is a *magnun opus* one of the lesser works of a writer, artist, or composer?
YES   NO

Is a *magnanimous* person selfish and petty-minded?
YES   NO
Can you recall the words?

gradually unfolding, resulting, or developing (adj.)
1. E__________________

causing, or resulting from, radical change (adj.)
2. R__________________

quality of conciseness and economy in the use of words
3. L__________________
   or L__________________
   or L__________________
   or L__________________

expressiveness in the use of words
4. E__________________

turn round and round
5. R__________________

important person, as in the commercial world
6. M__________________

unsselfish; generous; noble in motive; big-hearted; forgiving
7. M__________________

using words easily; vocal; articulate; referring to, or involving, words; oral, rather than written
8. V__________________

style of word usage; type of words; overabundance of words
9. V__________________

wordiness; quality of using excess words
10. V__________________

elegance in word usage
11. M__________________
   or G__________________

quality of chattering on and on about trivia, or with little meaning
12. G__________________

fluency and ease in speech
13. V__________________

word for word
14. V__________________

masterpiece; great artistic work
persuasiveness and forcefulness in speech or writing through closely reasoned logic

(End of Session 26)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. front and back—and uncles

The ventriloquist appears to talk from the belly (venter, ventris plus loquor) rather than through the lips (or such was the strange perception of the person who first used the word). Venter, ventris, belly, is the root on which ventral (VEN′-trəl) and ventricle are built.

The ventral side of an animal, for example, is the front or anterior side—the belly side. A ventricle (VEN′-trə-kəl) is a hollow organ or cavity, or, logically enough, belly, as one of the two chambers of the heart, or one of the four chambers of the brain. The ventricles of the heart are the lower chambers, and receive blood from the auricles, or upper chambers. The auricle (AW′-rə-kəl), so named because it is somewhat ear-shaped (Latin auris, ear), receives blood from the veins; the auricles send the blood into the ventricles, which in turn pump the blood into the arteries. (It’s all very complicated, but fortunately it works.)

The adjective form of ventricle is ventricular (ven′TRIK′-əl), which may refer to a ventricle, or may mean having a belly-like bulge.

Now that you see how ventricular is formed from ventricle, can you figure out the adjective of auricle? __________. How about the adjective of vehicle? __________. Of circle? __________.

No doubt you wrote auricular (aw-RIK′-ə-lər), vehicular, and circular, and have discovered that nouns ending in -cle from adjectives ending in -cular.

So you can now be the first person on your block to figure out the adjective derived from:

- clavicle: __________
- cuticle: __________
- vesicle: __________
- testicle: __________
- uncle: __________

The answers of course are clavicular, cuticular, vesicular, testicular—and for uncle you have every right to shout “No fair!” (But where is it written that life is fair?)

The Latin word for uncle (actually, uncle on the mother’s side) is avunculus, from which we get avuncular (ə-VUNG′-kyə-lər), referring to an uncle.

Now what about an uncle? Well, traditional or stereotypical uncles are generally kindly, permissive, indulgent, protective—and often give helpful advice. So anyone who exhibits one or more of such traits to another (usually younger) person is avuncular or acts in an avuncular capacity.

So, at long last, to get back to ventral. If there’s a front or belly side, anatomically, there must be a reverse—a back side. This is the dorsal (DAWR′-səl) side, from Latin dorsum, the
root on which the verb *endorse* (en-DAWRS′) is built.

If you *endorse* a check, you sign it on the back side; if you *endorse* a plan, an idea, etc., you *back* it, you express your approval or support. The noun is *endorsement* (en-DAWRS′-ment).

2. the noise and the fury

*Vociferous* derives from Latin *vox,* *vocis,* voice (a root you met in Chapter 9), plus *fero,* to bear or carry. A *vociferous* rejoinder carries a lot of voice—i.e., it is vehement, loud, noisy, clamorous, shouting. The noun is *vociferousness* (vō-SIF′-ə-rəs-nəs); the verb is to *vociferate* (vō-SIF′-ə-rayt′). Can you form the noun derived from the verb? ____________.

3. to sleep or not to sleep—that is the question

The root *fero* is found also in *somniferous* (som-NIF′-ə-rəs), carrying, bearing, or bringing sleep. So a *somniferous* lecture is so dull and boring that it is sleep-inducing.

*Fero* is combined with *somnus,* sleep, in *somniferous.* (The suffix -ous indicates what part of speech? ____________.)

Tack on the negative prefix *in-* to *somnus* to construct *insomnia* (in-SOM′-nee-ə), the abnormal inability to fall asleep when sleep is required or desired. The unfortunate victim of this disability is an *insomniac* (in-SOM′-nee-ək), the adjective is *insomnious* (in-SOM′-nee-əs). (So -ous, in case you could not answer the question in the preceding paragraph, is an *adjective* suffix.)

Add a different adjective suffix to *somnus* to derive *somnolent* (SOM′-nəl-ənt), sleepy, drowsy. Can you construct the noun form of *somnolent?* ____________ or__________.

Combine *somnus* with *ambulo,* to walk, and you have *somnambulism* (som-NAM′-by-liz-əm), walking in one’s sleep. With your increasing skill in using etymology to form words, write the term for the person who is a sleepwalker.____________. Now add to the word you wrote a two-letter adjective suffix we have learned, to form the adjective: ____________.

4. a walkaway

An *ambulatory* (AM′-byə-lə-ta-wə-re) patient, as in a hospital or convalescent home, is finally well enough to get out of bed and walk around. A *perambulator* (pə-RAM′-byə-layt′-ər), a word used more in England than in the United States, and often shortened to *pram,* is a baby carriage, a vehicle for walking an infant through the streets (*per-* , through). To *perambulate* (pə-RAM′-byə-layt′) is, etymologically, “to walk through”; hence, to stroll around. Can you write the noun form of this verb? ____________.

To *amble* (AM′-bal) is to walk aimlessly; an *ambulance* is so called because originally it was composed of two stretcher-bearers who *walked* off the battlefield with a wounded soldier; and a *preamble* (PREE′-am-bəl) is, by etymology, something that “walks before”
(pre-, before, beforehand), hence an introduction or introductory statement, as the **preamble**
to the U. S. Constitution (“We the people …”), a **preamble** to the speech, etc; or any event
that is introductory or preliminary to another, as in “An increase in inflationary factors in
the economy is often a **preamble** to a drop in the stock market.”

5. **back to sleep**

*Somnus* is one Latin word for sleep—*sopor* is another. A **soporific** (sop´-ə-RIF´-ik) lecture,
speaker, style of delivery, etc. will put the audience to sleep (*fic* from *facio*, to make), and
a **soporific** is a sleeping pill.

6. **noun suffixes**

You know that **-ness** can be added to any adjective to construct the noun form. Write the
noun derived from *inarticulate*: __________. **Inarticulate** is a combination of the negative
prefix *in*- and Latin *articulus*, a joint. The **inarticulate** person has trouble joining words
together coherently. If you are quite **articulate** (ahr-TIK´-yə-lət), on the other hand, you join
your words together easily, you are verbal, vocal, possibly even **voluble**. The verb to
**articulate** (ahr-TIK´-yə-layt´) is to join (words), i.e., to express your vocal sounds—as in
“Please **articulate** more clearly.” Can you write the noun derived from the verb **articulate**?
__________.

Another, and very common, noun suffix attached to adjectives is, as you have discovered,
**-ity**. So the noun form of *banal* is either **banalness**, or, more commonly, **banality** (bə-NAL´-ə-
tee).

Bear in mind, then, that **-ness** and **-ity** are common noun suffixes attached to adjectives,
and **-ion** (or **-ation**) is a noun suffix frequently affixed to verbs (to **articulate**—**articulation**;
to **vocalize**—**vocalization**; to **perambulate**—**perambulation**).

**REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. venter, ventris</td>
<td>belly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. loquor</td>
<td>to speak</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. auris</td>
<td>ear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. avunculus</td>
<td>uncle</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. *dorsum*  
back

6. *vox, vocis*  
voice

7. *fero*  
to carry, bear

8. *somnus*  
sleep

9. *-ous*  
adjective suffix

10. *in-*  
negative suffix

11. *ambulo*  
to walk

12. *-ory*  
adjective suffix

13. *per-*  
through

14. *pre-*  
before, beforehand

15. *sopor*  
sleep

16. *fic- (facio)*  
to make or do

17. *-ness*  
noun suffix

18. *-ity*  
noun suffix
19. -ion ( -ation) noun suffix attached to verbs
ENGLISH WORD _______________

20. -ent adjective suffix
ENGLISH WORD _______________

21. -ence, -ency noun suffix
ENGLISH WORD _______________

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. ventral VEN′-trəl
2. ventricle VEN′-trə-kəl
3. auricle AWR′-ə-kəl
4. ventricular ven-TRIK′-ə-lər
5. auricular aw-RIK′-ə-lər
6. avuncular ə-VUNG′-kələr
7. dorsal DAWR′-səl
8. endorse en-DAWRS′
9. endorsement en-DAWRS′-mənt
10. vociferousness vō-SIF′-ər-əs-nəs
11. vociferate vō-SIF′-ə-rayt′
12. vociferation vō-sif′-ə-RAY′-shən

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. somniferous som-NIF′-ər-əs
2. insomnia in-SOM′-nee-ə
3. insomniac in-SOM′-nee-ək′
4. insomnious in-SOM′-nee-əs
5. somnolent SOM′-nə-lənt
6. somnolence \( \text{SOM}'-\text{nə-ləns} \)
7. somnolency \( \text{SOM}'-\text{nə-lən-see} \)
8. somnambulism \( \text{som-NAM}'-\text{byə-liz-em} \)
9. somnambulist \( \text{som-NAM}'-\text{byə-list} \)
10. somnambulistic \( \text{som-nam'}-\text{byə-LIST'-ik} \)

**Can you pronounce the words? (III)**

1. ambulatory \( \text{AM}'-\text{byə-lə-tawr'-ee} \)
2. perambulator \( \text{pə-RAM}'-\text{byə-lay'-tər} \)
3. perambulate \( \text{pə-RAM}'-\text{byə-layt'} \)
4. perambulation \( \text{pə-ram'}-\text{byə-LAY'-shən} \)
5. amble \( \text{AM}'-\text{bəl} \)
6. preamble \( \text{PREE}'-\text{am-bəl} \)
7. soporific \( \text{sop-ə-RIF'-ik} \)
8. inarticulateness \( \text{in'-ahr-TIK'-yə-lət-nəs} \)
9. articulate \( \text{ahr-TIK'-yə-lət} \)
10. banality \( \text{bə-NAL'-ə-tee} \)

**Can you work with the words? (I)**

1. ventral a. unable to fall asleep
2. dorsal b. pertaining to sleepwalking
3. somniferous c. drowsy
4. insomnious d. able to walk, after being bedridden
5. somnolent e. verbal, vocal
6. somnambulistic f. like an uncle; kindly; protective
7. ambulatory g. pertaining to one of the chambers of the heart
8. articulate h. referring to the front or belly side
9. ventricular, auricular
i. sleep-inducing

10. avuncular
j. referring to the back side
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Spellings</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>ventricle, auricle</td>
<td>inability to fall asleep</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>endorsement</td>
<td>b. sleepwalking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>vociferousness</td>
<td>c. introduction; preliminary or introductory occurrence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>insomnia</td>
<td>d. incoherence; sputtering; inability to get words out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>somnolence</td>
<td>e. chamber of the heart</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>somnambulism</td>
<td>f. sleeping pill</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>perambulator</td>
<td>g. support; approval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>preamble</td>
<td>h. lack of originality; lack of imagination</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>soporific</td>
<td>i. drowsiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>inarticulateness</td>
<td>j. baby buggy; stroller</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>banality</td>
<td>k. loudness; clamorousness</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (III)

1. endorse  
   a. one who cannot fall asleep
2. vociferate  
   b. sleepwalker
3. insomniac  
   c. walk aimlessly
4. somnolency  
   d. stroll through; walk around
5. somnambulist  
   e. to sign on the back; support; approve of
6. perambulate  
   f. drowsiness
7. amble  
   g. say loudly and with great vehemence
8. soporific  
   h. causing sleep
9. insomniuous  
   i. wakeful; unable to fall asleep
Do you understand the words?

Does an insomniac often need a soporific?
YES NO

Does a somnambulist always stay in bed when asleep?
YES NO

Are ambulatory patients bedridden?
YES NO

Does a preamble come after another event?
YES NO

Are articulate people verbal?
YES NO

Does banality show creativeness?
YES NO

Does an avuncular attitude indicate affection and protectiveness?
YES NO

Is vociferation habitual with quiet, shy people?
YES NO

Is a somnolent person wide awake?
YES NO

Is a somniferous speaker stimulating and exciting?
YES NO
Can you recall the words?

lack of imagination or originality in speech, actions, or style of life; hackneyed or trite phraseology
1. B__________
sleep-inducing
2. S__________
or S__________
unable to fall asleep (adj.)
3. I__________
verbal, vocal, speaking fluently
4. A__________
acting like an uncle
5. A__________
referring to the front; anterior
6. V__________
referring to the back; posterior
7. D__________
approve of; support; sign on the back of
8. E__________
shout vehemently
9. V__________
one who cannot fall asleep
10. I__________
drowsy; sleepy
11. S__________
sleepwalker
12. S__________
now able to walk, though previously bedridden
13. A__________
walk aimlessly
14. A__________
introduction; introductory event
15. P__________
incoherence
16. I__________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

Disinclined to conversation:
   (a) loquacious, (b) laconic, (c) taciturn
Trite:
   (a) inarticulate, (b) banal, (c) verbose
Rapid and fluent:
   (a) voluble, (b) verbose, (c) garrulous
Forceful and compelling:
   (a) vociferous, (b) cogent, (c) laconic
Unspoken:
   (a) verbatim, (b) eloquent, (c) tacit
Using elegant and impressive words:
   (a) verbose, (b) grandiloquent, (c) colloquial
Back:
   (a) dorsal, (b) ventral, (c) somniferous
Sleep-inducing:
   (a) soporific, (b) somnolent, (c) ventral
Inability to fall asleep:
   (a) somnambulism, (b) ambulatory, (c) insomnia
Talkativeness:
   (a) reticence, (b) ventriloquism, (c) loquacity
Expressing indirectly or in a roundabout way:
   (a) circumlocutory, (b) colloquial, (c) laconic
Elegance in expression:
   (a) magniloquence, (b) grandiloquence, (c) verbiage
Wordiness:
   (a) laconism, (b) cogency, (c) verbosity
Big-hearted, generous, unselfish:
   (a) grandiloquent, (b) magnanimous, (c) garrulous
Causing radical changes:
16. To shout vehemently: 
   (a) endorse, (b) perambulate, (c) vociferate

17. Like an uncle: 
   (a) ventricular, (b) auricular, (c) avuncular

18. Drowsy: 
   (a) somniferous, (b) somnolent, (c) soporific

19. Sleepwalking: 
   (a) insomnia, (b) somnolency, (c) somnambulism

20. Introduction: 
   (a) preamble, (b) perambulator, (c) evolution
## B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. taceo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE taciturn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. loquor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE loquacity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. solus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE soliloquize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. venter, ventris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE ventral</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. magnus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE magniloquent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. grandis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE grandiloquent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. verbum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE verbatim</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. volvo, volutus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE revolution</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. garrio</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE garrulous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. animus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE magnanimous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. opus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE magnum opus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. *opero*  
**EXAMPLE** operator

13. *auris*  
**EXAMPLE** auricle

14. *avunculus*  
**EXAMPLE** avuncular

15. *dorsum*  
**EXAMPLE** dorsal

16. *vox, vocis*  
**EXAMPLE** vociferate

17. *fero*  
**EXAMPLE** somniferous

18. *ambulo*  
**EXAMPLE** preamble

19. *sopor*  
**EXAMPLE** soporific

20. *somnus*  
**EXAMPLE** somnolency
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. The present participle (or -ing form) of the Latin verb *opero*, to work, is *operans*, working. The form *operandi* means *of working*. Can you figure out the literal meaning of the phrase *modus operandi*, sometimes used to signify the characteristic methods or procedures used by certain criminals? ____________.

2. *Circum-*, we have learned, is a prefix meaning *around*, as in *circumlocution*, *circumference*, *circumcision*, *circumnavigation*, etc. Thinking of the root *scribo*, *scriptus*, to write, can you figure out the word meaning *writing*, or written material, *around* (the edge of something)? ____________.

3. You know the roots *somnus* and *loquor*. Can you combine these two roots to form an adjective meaning *talking in one’s sleep*? ____________. Can you write the noun form of this adjective? ____________.

4. We have discovered *auris*, ear, as in *auricle*. Can you figure out the specialty of the physician called an *aurist*? ____________.

5. *Verbal*, from *verbum*, refers to words; *oral*, from *os*, *oris*, the mouth, refers to spoken words or sounds. Can you analyze *aural* and decide on its meaning? ____________.

6. A *somnambulist* walks in his sleep. What does a *noctambulist* do? ____________.

7. *Soporific*, combining *sopor*, sleep, with *fic-* (from *facio*), to make, means *inducing or causing sleep*. Use *somnus*, another root for sleep, to construct a word that has the same form and meaning as *soporific*: ____________.

8. *Perambulate* is to walk through. Use another Latin prefix to construct a verb meaning *to walk around* ____________.

(Answers in *Chapter 18*)

BECOMING ALERT TO NEW IDEAS

Some chapters back I suggested that since words are symbols of ideas, one of the most effective means of building your vocabulary is to read books that deal with new ideas.
Along that line, I further suggested that the fields of psychology, psychiatry, and psychoanalysis would be good starting points, and I mentioned a number of exciting books to work with.

Needless to say, you will not wish to neglect other fields, and so I want to recommend, at this point, highly readable books in additional subjects. All these books will increase your familiarity with the world of ideas—all of them, therefore, will help you build a superior vocabulary.

**SEMANTICS**

*Language in Thought and Action*, by S. I. Hayakawa
*People in Quandaries*, by Wendell Johnson

**EDUCATION AND LEARNING**

*How to Survive in Your Native Land*, by James Herndon
*Education and the Endangered Individual*, by Brian V. Hill
*How Children Fail and What Do I Do Monday?*, by John Holt
*Teaching Human Beings*, by Jeffrey Schrank
*Education and Ecstasy*, by George B. Leonard
*Human Teaching for Human Learning*, by George Isaac Brown

**SEX, LOVE, MARRIAGE**

*Couple Therapy*, by Gerald Walker Smith and Alice I. Phillips
*Your Fear of Love*, by Marshall Bryant Hodge
*Sexual Suicide*, by George F. Gilder
*Intimacy*, by Gina Allen and Clement G. Martin, M.D.
*How to Live with Another Person*, by David Viscott, M.D.
*Pairing*, by George R. Bach and Ronald M. Deutsch
*The Intimate Enemy*, by George R. Bach and Peter Wyden
*The Rape of the Ape*, by Allan Sherman (Humor)
*The Hite Report*, by Shere Hite
*Sex in Human Loving*, by Eric Berne, M.D.

**WOMEN, FEMINISM, ETC.**

*Rebirth of Feminism*, by Judith Hole and Ellen Levine
*The Way of All Women*, by M. Esther Harding
*Knowing Woman*, by Irene Claremont de Castillejo
*Sexist Justice*, by Karen De Crow
*Our Bodies, Our Selves*, by The Boston Women’s Health Book Collective
All but one or two of these stimulating and informative books are available in inexpensive paperback editions—most of them can be found in any large public library. Any one of them will provide an evening of entertainment and excitement far more rewarding than watching TV, will possibly open for you new areas of knowledge and understanding, and will undoubtedly contain so many of the words you have learned in this
book that you will again and again experience the delicious shock of recognition that I spoke of in an earlier chapter.

Additionally, you may encounter words you have never seen before that are built on roots you are familiar with—and you will then realize how simple it is to figure out the probable meaning of even the most esoteric term once you have become an expert in roots, prefixes, and suffixes.

(End of Session 27)
DO YOU ALWAYS USE THE PROPER WORD?

The fact is that grammar is getting more liberal every day. Common usage has put a stamp of approval on many expressions which your grandmother would not have dared utter in her most intimate conversation—not if she believed she was in the habit of using good English. *It is me; have you got a cold?; it’s a nice day; can I have another piece of cake?; she is a most aggravating child; will everybody please remove their hats*—all these today represent perfectly correct grammar for everyday conversation. Modern grammar research reports that these expressions have become universal in educated speech.

However, such a liberal policy does not mean that all bars are down. Only a person whose speech borders on the illiterate would make such statements as: *can you learn me to swim?; he don’t live here no more; we ain’t working so good; me and my husband are glad to see you.* There are still certain minimum essentials of good English that the cultivated speaker carefully observes.

Is your grammar as good as the next person’s? Here’s a quick test by which you can measure your ability.

Check the preferable choice in each sentence, then compare your results with the key at the end. Allowing 4 per cent for each correct answer, consider 92–100 excellent, 76–88 good, 68–72 average.

1. What (a–effect, b–affect) does Farrah Fawcett-Majors have on you?
2. What’s the sense (a–in, b–of) looking for a needle in a haystack?
3. She won’t (a–leave, b–let) us meet her new boy friend.
4. What (a–kind of, b–kind of a) dress do you want?
5. Her (a–principle, b–principal) objection to neurotics is that they are difficult to live with.
6. The murderer was (a–hanged, b–hung) two hours before the governor’s pardon arrived.
8. For a light cake, use two (a–spoonfuls, b–spoonsful) of baking powder.
9. Everyone likes you but (a–she, b–her).
10. Sally sent a gift for (a–him and me, b–he and I).
11. The criteria you are using (a–is, b–are) not valid.
12. The cost of new houses (a–is, b–are) finally stabilizing.
13. Irene as well as her husband (a–has, b–have) come to see you.
14. (a–Is, b–Are) either of your sisters working?
15. As soon as the editor or her secretary (a–comes, b–come) in, let me know.
16. One or two of her features (a–is, b–are) very attractive.
17. Can you visit Mary and (a–I, b–me) tonight?
18. He is totally (a–uninterested, b–disinterested) in your personal affairs.
19. She (a–laid, b–lay) on the beach while her son splashed at the water’s edge.
20. (a–Who, b–Whom) would you rather be if you weren’t yourself?
21. You should not (a–have, b–of) spoken so harshly.
22. She is one of those women who (a–believes, b–believe) that husbands should share in
   doing housework and taking care of the children.
23. Was it you who (a–was, b–were) here yesterday?
24. What we need in this country (a–is, b–are) honest politicians.
25. I’m smarter than Gladys, but she’s richer than (a–I, b–me).
HOW TO INSULT YOUR ENEMIES

(Sessions 28–31)

TEASER PREVIEW

What do you call a person who:
insists on complete and blind obedience?
toadies to the rich or influential?
dabbles in the fine arts?
is a loud-mouthed, quarrelsome woman?
has a one-track mind?
sneers at other people’s cherished traditions?
does not believe in God?
has imaginary ailments?
SESSION 28

There are few of us who do not need warm and nourishing relationships to lead a fulfilled life.

Psychology makes clear that loving and being loved are important elements in emotional health, but also points out the necessity for expressing, rather than repressing, our hostilities. (You know how good you feel once you blow off steam? And how much closer you can become attached to someone once you directly and honestly vent your anger, resentment, or irritation instead of bottling it up and seething in fury?)

It is a mark of your own emotional maturity if you can accept hostility as well as dish it out. So let us pretend, in order to encourage you to become personally involved in the introductory ten words of this chapter, that each paragraph in the next few pages accurately describes you. What label exactly fits your personality?

IDEAS

1. slave driver

You make everyone toe the mark—right down to the last centimeter. You exact blind, unquestioning obedience; demand the strictest conformity to rules, however arbitrary or tyrannical; and will not tolerate the slightest deviation from your orders. You are, in short, the very epitome of the army drill sergeant.

You are a martinet.

2. bootlicker

You toady to rich or influential people, catering to their vanity, flattering their ego. You are the personification of the traditional ward heeler, you out-yes the Hollywood yes men. And on top of all these unpleasant characteristics, you’re a complete hypocrite. All your servile attentions and unceasing adulation spring from your own selfish desires to get ahead, not out of any sincere admiration. You cultivate people of power or property so that you can curry favor at the opportune moment.

You are a sycophant.

3. dabbler

Often, though not necessarily, a person of independent income, you engage superficially in the pursuit of one of the fine arts—painting, writing, sculpturing, composing, etc. You do
this largely for your own amusement and not to achieve any professional competence; nor are you at all interested in monetary rewards. Your artistic efforts are simply a means of passing time pleasantly.

You are a *dilettante*.

4. battle-ax

You are a loud-mouthed, shrewish, turbulent woman; you're quarrelsome and aggressive, possessing none of those gentle and tender qualities stereotypically associated with femininity. You're strong-minded, unyielding, sharp-tongued, and dangerous. You can curse like a stevedore and yell like a fishwife—and often do.

You are a *virago*.

5. superpatriot

Anything you own or belong to is better—simply because you own it or belong to it, although you will be quick to find more justifiable explanations. Your religion, whatever it may be, is far superior to any other; your political party is the only honest one; your neighborhood puts all others in the city in the shade; members of your own sex are more intelligent, more worthy, more emotionally secure, and in every way far better than people of the opposite sex; your car is faster, more fun to drive, and gets better gas mileage than any other, no matter in what price range; and of course your country and its customs leave nothing to be desired, and inhabitants of other nations are in comparison barely civilized. In short, you are exaggeratedly, aggressively, absurdly, and excessively devoted to your own affiliations—and you make no bones about advertising such prejudice.

You are a *chauvinist*.

6. fanatic

You have a one-track mind—and when you're riding a particular hobby, you ride it hard. You have such an excessive, all-inclusive zeal for one thing (and it may be your business, your profession, your husband or wife, your children, your stomach, your money, or whatever) that your obsession is almost absurd. You talk, eat, sleep that one thing—to the point where you bore everyone to distraction.

You are a *monomaniac*.

7. attacker

You are violently against established beliefs, revered traditions, cherished customs—such, you say, stand in the way of reform and progress and are always based on superstition and
irrationality. Religion, family, marriage, ethics—you weren’t there when these were started and you’re not going to conform simply because most unthinking people do.

You are an *iconoclast*.

8. skeptic

There is no God—that’s your position and you’re not going to budge from it.

You are an *atheist*.

9. self-indulger

You are, as a male, lascivious, libidinous, lustful, lewd, wanton, immoral—but more important, you promiscuously attempt to satisfy (and are often successful in so doing) your sexual desires with any woman within your arm’s reach.

You are a *lecher*.

10. worrier

You are always sick, though no doctor can find an organic cause for your ailments. You know you have ulcers, though medical tests show a healthy stomach. You have heart palpitations, but a cardiogram fails to show any abnormality. Your headaches are caused (you’re sure of it) by a rapidly growing brain tumor—yet X rays show nothing wrong. These maladies are not imaginary, however; to you they are most real, non-existent as they may be in fact. And as you travel from doctor to doctor futilely seeking confirmation of your imminent death, you become more and more convinced that you’re too weak to go on much longer. Organically, of course, there’s nothing the matter with you. Perhaps tensions, insecurities, or a need for attention is taking the form of simulated bodily ills.

You are a *hypochondriac*.

**USING THE WORDS**

Can you pronounce the words?

1. *martinet*  
   mahr-tə-NET′

2. *sycophant*  
   SIK′-ə-fənt

3. *dilettante*  
   dil′-ə-TANT

4. *virago*  
   və-RAH′-go
5. chauvinist
6. monomaniac
7. iconoclast
8. atheist
9. lecher
10. hypochondriac

Can you work with the words?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORDS</th>
<th>KEY IDEAS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. martinet</td>
<td>a. superficiality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. sycophant</td>
<td>b. patriotism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dilettante</td>
<td>c. godlessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. virago</td>
<td>d. single-mindedness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. chauvinist</td>
<td>e. antitraddition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. monomaniac</td>
<td>f. sex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. iconoclast</td>
<td>g. illness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. atheist</td>
<td>h. discipline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. lecher</td>
<td>i. turbulence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. hypochondriac</td>
<td>j. flattery</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words?

Does a *martinet* condone carelessness and neglect of duty?

YES  NO

Is a *sycophant* a sincere person?

YES  NO

Is a *dilettante* a hard worker?

YES  NO

Is a *virago* sweet and gentle?

YES  NO

Is a *chauvinist* modest and self-effacing?

YES  NO

Does a *monomaniac* have a one-track mind?

YES  NO

Does an *iconoclast* scoff at tradition?

YES  NO

Does an *atheist* believe in God?

YES  NO

Is a *lecher* misogynous?

YES  NO

Does a *hypochondriac* have a lively imagination?

YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

a person whose emotional disorder is reflected in non-organic or imaginary bodily ailments
1. H__________________

a strict disciplinarian
2. M__________________

a lewd and sexually aggressive male
3. L__________________

a toady to people of wealth or power
4. S__________________

a disbeliever in God
5. A__________________

a dabbler in the arts
6. D__________________

a shrewish, loud-mouthed female
7. V__________________

a scoffer at tradition
8. I__________________

person with a one-track mind
9. M__________________

a blatant superpatriot
10. C__________________
Can you use the words?

She scoffs at beliefs you have always held dear.
1. ______________

You know he’s hale and hearty—but he constantly complains of his illness.
2. ______________

She insists her political affiliations are superior to yours.
3. ______________

She insists on her subordinates toeing the mark.
4. ______________

He makes sexual advances to everyone else’s wife—and is too often successful.
5. ______________

He cultivates friends that can do him good—financially.
6. ______________

She dabbles with water colors.
7. ______________

She insists there is no Deity.
8. ______________

She’s a shrew, a harridan, a scold, and a nag.
9. ______________

His only interest in life is his fish collection—and he is fanatically, almost psychotically, devoted to it.
10. ______________
End of Session 28
SESSION 29

ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. the French drillmaster

Jean Martinet was the Inspector General of Infantry during the reign of King Louis XIV—and a stricter, more fanatic drillmaster France had never seen. It was from this time that the French Army’s reputation for discipline dated, and it is from the name of this Frenchman that we derive our English word *martinet*. The word is always used in a derogatory sense and generally shows resentment and anger on the part of the user. The secretary who calls his boss a *martinet*, the wife who applies the epithet to her husband, the worker who thus refers to the foreman—these speakers all show their contempt for the excessive, inhuman discipline to which they are asked to submit.

Since *martinet* comes from a man’s name (in the Brief Intermission which follows we shall discover that a number of picturesque English words are similarly derived), there are no related forms built on the same root. There is an adjective *martinetish* (mahr-tə-NET′-ish) and another noun form, *martinetism*, but these are used only rarely.

2. a Greek “fig-shower”

*Sycophant* comes to us from the Greeks. According to Shipley’s Dictionary of Word Origins:

When a fellow wants to get a good mark, he may polish up an apple and place it on teacher’s desk; his classmates call such a lad an apple-shiner. Less complimentary localities use the term bootlicker. The Greeks had a name for it: *fig-shower*. Sycophant is from Gr. *sykon*, fig, [and] *phanein*, to show. This was the fellow that informed the officers in charge when (1) the figs in the sacred groves were being taken, or (2) when the Smyrna fig-dealers were dodging the tariff.

Thus, a *sycophant* may appear to be a sort of “stool pigeon,” since the latter curries the favor of police officials by “peaching” on his fellow criminals. *Sycophants* may use this means of ingratiating themselves with influential citizens of the community; or they may use flattery, servile attentions, or any other form of insinuating themselves into someone’s good graces. A *sycophant* practices *sycophancy* (SIK′-ə-fən-see), and has a *sycophantic* (sik-ə-FAN′-tik) attitude. All three forms of the word are highly uncomplimentary—use them with care.

Material may be so delicate or fine in texture that anything behind it will show through. The Greek prefix *dia-* means through; and *phanein*, as you now know, means to show—hence such material is called *diaphanous* (di-ĂF′-ə-nəs). Do not use the adjective in reference to all
material that is transparent (for example, you would not call glass *diaphanous*, even though you can see right through it), but only material that is silky, gauzy, filmy, and, in addition, transparent or practically transparent. The word is often applied to female garments—nightgowns, negligees, etc.

3. just for one's own amusement

*Dilettante* is from the Italian verb *dilettare*, to delight. The *dilettante* paints, writes, composes, plays a musical instrument, or engages in scientific experiments purely for amusement—not to make money, become famous, or satisfy a deep creative urge (the latter, I presume, being the justifications for the time that professional artists, writers, composers, musicians, poets, and scientists spend at their chosen work). A *dilettantish* (dil-Ə-TAN′-tish) attitude is superficial, unprofessional; *dilettantism* (dil-Ə-TAN′-tiz-əm) is superficial, part-time dabbling in the type of activity that usually engages the full time and energy of the professional artist or scientist.

Do not confuse the *dilettante*, who has a certain amount of native talent or ability, with the *tyro* (TĪ′-rō), who is the inexperienced beginner in some art, but who may be full of ambition, drive, and energy. To call a person a *tyro* is to imply that he is just starting in some artistic, scientific, or professional field—he’s not much good yet because he has not had time to develop his skill, if any. The *dilettante* usually has some skill but isn’t doing much with it. On the other hand, anyone who has developed consummate skill in an artistic field, generally allied to music, is called a *virtuoso* (vur′-chƏ-Ô′-sō)—like Heifetz or Menuhin on the violin, Horowitz or Rubinstein on the piano. Pluralize *virtuoso* in the normal way—*virtuosos*; or if you wish to sound more sophisticated, give it the continental form—*virtuosi* (vur′-chƏ-Ô′-see). Similarly, the plural of *dilettante* is either *dilettantes* or *dilettanti* (dil-Ə-TAN′-tee).

The *i* ending for a plural is the Italian form and is common in musical circles. For example, *libretto*, the story (or book) of an opera, may be pluralized to *libretti*; *concerto*, a form of musical composition, is pluralized *concerti*. However, the Anglicized *librettos* and *concertos* are perfectly correct also. *Libretto* is pronounced lƏ-BRET′-ō; *libretti* is lƏ-BRET′-ee; *concerto* is kƏn-CHUR′-tō; and *concerti* is kƏn-CHUR′-tee. Suit your plural form, I would suggest, to the sophistication of your audience.

4. “masculine” women

*Virago* comes, oddly enough, from the Latin word for man, *vir*. Perhaps the derivation is not so odd after all; a *virago*, far from being stereotypically feminine (i.e., timid, delicate, low-spoken, etc.), is stereotypically masculine in personality—coarse, aggressive, loud-mouthed. *Termagant* (TUR′-mƏ-gant) and *harridan* (HAIR′-Ə-dən) are words with essentially the same uncomplimentary meaning as *virago*. To call a brawling woman a *virago*, a *termagant*, and a *harridan* is admittedly repetitious, but is successful in relieving one’s feelings.
Nicolas Chauvin, soldier of the French Empire, so vociferously and unceasingly aired his veneration of Napoleon Bonaparte that he became the laughingstock of all Europe. Thereafter, an exaggerated and blatant patriot was known as a chauvinist—and still is today. Chauvinism (SHŌ′-və-niz-əm), by natural extension, applies to blatant veneration of, or boastfulness about, any other affiliation besides one’s country.

To be patriotic is to be normally proud of, and devoted to, one’s country—to be chauvinistic (shō′-və-NIS′-tik) is to exaggerate such pride and devotion to an obnoxious degree.

We might digress here to investigate an etymological side road down which the word patriotic beckons. Patriotic is built on the Latin word pater, patris, father—one’s country is, in a sense, one’s fatherland.

Let us see what other interesting words are built on this same root.

1. patrimony (PAT′-rə-mō-nee)—an inheritance from one’s father. The -mony comes from the same root that gives us money, namely Juno Moneta, the Roman goddess who guarded the temples of finance. The adjective is patrimonial (pat′-rə-MŌ′-nee-əl).

2. patronymic (pat′-rə-NIM′-ik)—a name formed on the father’s name, like Johnson (son of John), Martinson, Aaronson, etc. The word combines pater, patris with Greek onyma, name. Onyma plus the Greek prefix syn-, with or together, forms synonym (SIN′-ə-nim), a word of the same name (or meaning), etymologically “a together name.” Onyma plus the prefix anti- against, forms antonym (AN′-tə-nim), a word of opposite meaning, etymologically “an against name.” Onyma plus Greek homos, the same, forms homonym (HOM′-ə-nim), a word that sounds like another but has a different meaning and spelling, like bare—bear, way—weigh, to—too—two, etc., etymologically “a same name.” A homonym is more accurately called a homophone (HOM′-ə-fōn′), a combination of homos, the same, and phone, sound. The adjective form of synonym is synonymous (sə-NON′-ə-məs). Can you write, and pronounce, the adjective derived from:
   - antonym? __________________
   - homonym? ________________
   - homophone? ______________

3. paternity (pə-TUR′-nə-tee)—fatherhood, as to question someone’s paternity, to file a paternity suit in order to collect child support from the assumed, accused, or self-acknowledged father. The adjective is paternal (pə-TUR′-nəl), fatherly. Paternalism (pə-TUR′-nə-liz-əm) is the philosophy or system of governing a country, or of managing a business or institution, so that the citizens, employees, or staff are treated in a manner suggesting a father-children relationship. (Such a system sounds, and often is, benign and protective, but plays havoc with the initiative, independence, and creativity of those in subordinate roles.) The adjective is paternalistic (pə-turn′-ə-LIS′-tik).

4. patriarch (PAY′-tree-ark′)—a venerable, fatherlike old man; an old man in a ruling, fatherlike position. Here pater, patris is combined with the Greek root archein, to rule. The adjective is patriarchal (pay′-tree-AHR′-kəl), the system is a patriarchy (PAY′-tree-ahr′-kee).

5. patricide (PAT′-rə-sid′)—the killing of one’s father. Pater, patris combines with -cide, a
suffix derived from the Latin verb *caedo*, to kill. The adjective is *patricidal* (pat-ɹə-SI'-dəl).

This list does not exhaust the number of words built on *pater*, father, but is sufficient to give you an idea of how closely related many English words are. In your reading you will come across other words containing the letters *pater* or *patr*—you will be able to figure them out once you realize that the base is the word *father*. You might, if you feel ambitious, puzzle out the relationship to the “father idea” in the following words, checking with a dictionary to see how good your linguistic intuition is:

1. patrician
2. patron
3. patronize
4. patronizing (adj.)
5. paterfamilias
6. padre

6. the old lady

*Pater, patris* is father. *Mater, matris* is mother.

For example:

1. *matriarch* (MAY′-tree-ahrk′)—the mother-ruler; the “mother person” that controls a large household, tribe, or country. This word, like *patriarch*, is built on the root *archein*, to rule. During the reign of Queen Elizabeth or Queen Victoria, England was a *matriarchy* (MAY′-tree-ahr′-kee). Can you figure out the adjective form? __________.

2. *maternity* (mə-TUR′-nə-tee)—motherhood

3. *maternal* (mə-TURN′-əl)—motherly

4. *matron* (MAY′-trən)—an older woman, one sufficiently mature to be a mother. The adjective *matronly* (MAY′-trən-lee) conjures up for many people a picture of a woman no longer in the glow of youth and possibly with a bit of added weight in the wrong places, so this word should be used with caution; it may be hazardous to your health if the lady you are so describing is of a tempestous nature, or is a *virago*.

5. *alma mater* (AL′-mə MAY′-tər or AHL′-mə MAH′-tər)—etymologically, “soul mother”; actually, the school or college from which one has graduated, and which in a sense is one’s intellectual mother.

6. *matrimony* (MAT′-rə-mō′-nee)—marriage. Though this word is similar to *patrimony* in spelling, it does not refer to *money* as *patrimony* does; unless, that is, you are cynical enough to believe that people marry for money. As the language was growing, marriage and children went hand in hand—it is therefore not surprising that the word for *marriage* should be built on the Latin root for *mother*. Of course, times have changed, but the sexist nature of the English language has not. The noun suffix -*mony* indicates state, condition, or result, as in *sanctimony, parsimony*, etc. The adjective is *matrimonial* (mat′-ɹə-MŌ′-nee-əl).

7. *matricide* (MAT′-rə-sīd′)—the killing of one’s mother. The adjective? __________.

7. murder most foul…
Murder unfortunately is an integral part of human life, so there is a word for almost every kind of killing you can think of. Let’s look at some of them.

1. *suicide* (soo'-ə-sid’)—killing oneself (intentionally); -cide plus sui, of oneself. This is both the act and the person who has been completely successful in performing the act (partially doesn’t count); also, in colloquial usage, *suicide* is a verb. The adjective? ____________.

2. *fratricide* (FRAT'-rə-sid’)—the killing of one’s brother; -cide plus frater, fratris, brother. The adjective? ____________.

3. *sororicide* (sə-RAWR'-ə-sid’)—the killing of one’s sister; -cide plus soror, sister. The adjective? ____________.

4. *homicide* (HOM'-ə-sid’)—the killing of a human being; -cide plus homo, person. In law, *homicide* is the general term for any slaying. If intent and premeditation can be proved, the act is *murder* and punishable as such. If no such intent is present, the act is called *manslaughter* and receives a lighter punishment. Thus, if your mate/lover/spouse makes your life unbearable and you slip some arsenic into his/her coffee one bright morning, you are committing murder—that is, if he/she succumbs. On the other hand, if you run your victim down—quite accidentally—with your car, bicycle, or wheelchair, with no intent to kill, you will be accused of *manslaughter*—that is, if death results and if you can prove you didn’t really mean it. It’s all rather delicate, however, and you might do best to put thoughts of justifiable *homicide* out of your mind. The adjective? ____________.

5. *regicide* (REJ'-ə-sid’)—the killing of one’s king, president, or other governing official. Booth committed *regicide* when he assassinated Abraham Lincoln. Adjective? ____________.

   Derivation: Latin rex, regis, king, plus -cide.

6. *uxoricide* (uk-SAWR'-ə-sid’)—the killing of one’s wife. Adjective? ____________.

   Derivation: Latin uxor, wife, plus -cide.

7. *mariticide* (mə-RIT'-ə-sid’)—the killing of one’s husband. Adjective? ____________.

   Derivation: Latin maritus, husband, plus -cide.

8. *infanticide* (in-FAN'-tə-sid’)—the killing of a newborn child. Adjective? ____________.

   Derivation: Latin infans, infantis, baby, plus -cide.

9. *genocide* (JEN'-ə-sid’)—the killing of a whole race or nation. This is a comparatively new word, coined in 1944 by a UN official named Raphael Lemkin, to refer to the mass murder of the Jews, Poles, etc. ordered by Hitler. Adjective? ____________.

   Derivation: Greek genos, race, kind, plus -cide.

10. *parricide* (PAIR'-ə-sid’)—the killing of either or both parents. Adjective? ____________.

   Lizzie Borden was accused of, and tried for, *parricide* in the 1890s, but was not convicted. A bit of doggerel that was popular at the time, and, so I have been told, little girls jumped
rope to, went somewhat as follows:

Lizzie Borden took an ax
And gave her mother forty whacks—
And when she saw what she had done,
She gave her father forty-one.

**REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sykon</td>
<td>fig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. phanein</td>
<td>to show</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dia-</td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. vir</td>
<td>man (male)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. pater, patris</td>
<td>father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. syn-</td>
<td>with, together</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. onyma</td>
<td>name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. anti</td>
<td>against</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. homos</td>
<td>the same</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. phone</td>
<td>sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. -ity</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. -ism
ENGLISH WORD
noun suffix

13. -al
ENGLISH WORD
adjective suffix

14. -ic
ENGLISH WORD
adjective suffix

15. archein
to rule
ENGLISH WORD

16. -cide
killing
ENGLISH WORD

17. mater, matris
mother
ENGLISH WORD

18. alma
soul
ENGLISH WORD

19. -mony
noun suffix
ENGLISH WORD

20. sui
of oneself
ENGLISH WORD

21. frater, fratris
brother
ENGLISH WORD

22. soror
sister
ENGLISH WORD

23. homo
person, human
ENGLISH WORD

24. rex, regis
king
ENGLISH WORD

25. uxor
wife
ENGLISH WORD

26. maritus
husband
27. **infans, infantis**

baby

28. **genos**

race, kind

---

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words? (I)**

1. **martinetish**

   mahr-tə-NEȚ′-ish

2. **sycophancy**

   SIK′-ə-fən-see

3. **sycophantic**

   sik′-ə-FAN′-tik

4. **diaphanous**

   dī-AF′-ə-nəs

5. **dilettanti**

   dil′-ə-TAN′-tee

6. **dilettantism**

   dil-ə-TAN′-tiz-əm

7. **dilettantish**

   dil-ə-TAN′-tish

8. **tyro**

   TĪ′-rō

9. **virtuoso**

   vur′-chō-Ö′-sō

10. **virtuosi**

    vur′-chō-Ö′-see

11. **termagant**

    TUR′-mə-gənt

12. **harridan**

    HAIR′-ə-dən

**Can you pronounce the words? (II)**

1. **chauvinism**

   SHŌ′-və-niz-əm

2. **chauvinistic**

   shō-və-NIS′-tik

3. **patrimony**

   PAT′-rə-mə-nə-nee

4. **patronymic**

   pat′-rə-NIM′-ik

5. **synonym**

   SIN′-ə-nim
6. **synonymous**

7. **antonym**

8. **antonymous**

9. **homonym**

10. **homonymous**

11. **homophone**

12. **homophonous**

Can you pronounce the words? (III)

1. **paternity**

2. **paternal**

3. **paternalism**

4. **paternalistic**

5. **patriarch**

6. **patriarchal**

7. **patriarchy**

8. **patricide**

9. **patricidal**

Can you pronounce the words? (IV)

1. **matriarch**

2. **matriarchy**

3. **matriarchal**

4. **maternity**

5. **maternal**

6. **matron**

7. **matronly**

8. **alma mater**
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>matrimony</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAT’-rə-mō-nee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>matrimonial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mat-rə-MŌ’-nee-əl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>matricide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAT’-rə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>matricidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mat-rə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can you pronounce the words? (V)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>suicide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Sōo’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>suicidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sōo-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>fratricide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FRAT’-rə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>fratricidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>frat-rə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>sororicide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sə-RAWR’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>sororicidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>sə-rawr’-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>homicide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>HOM’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>homicidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>hom’-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>regicide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>REJ’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>regicidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rej’-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Can you pronounce the words? (VI)

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>uxoricide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uk-SAWR’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>uxoricidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uk-sawr’-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>mariticide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mə-RIT’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>mariticidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>mə-rit’-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>infanticide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in-FAN’-tə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>infanticidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>in-fan’-tə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>genocide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>JEN’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>genocidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>jen’-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>parricide</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PAIR’-ə-sīd’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>parricidal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>pair’-ə-SĪ’-dəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. sycophancy</td>
<td>a. murder of one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. dilettantism</td>
<td>b. excessive patriotism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. chauvinism</td>
<td>c. murder of one’s ruler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. patrimony</td>
<td>d. inheritance from one’s father</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. patricide</td>
<td>e. murder of one’s sister</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. matricide</td>
<td>f. murder of one’s brother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. fratricide</td>
<td>g. murder of a person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. sororicide</td>
<td>h. toady</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. homicide</td>
<td>i. murder of one’s mother</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. regicide</td>
<td>j. dabbling</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. uxoricide  
2. infanticide  
3. genocide  
4. matrimony  
5. matriarch  
6. maternity  
7. matron  
8. alma mater  
9. paternity  
10. patriarch

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uxoricide</td>
<td>a. marriage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>infanticide</td>
<td>b. killing of one’s child</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>genocide</td>
<td>c. fatherhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matrimony</td>
<td>d. mother-ruler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matriarch</td>
<td>e. killing of one’s wife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maternity</td>
<td>f. older woman</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>matron</td>
<td>g. one’s school or college</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>alma mater</td>
<td>h. motherhood</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>paternity</td>
<td>i. old man in governing position</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patriarch</td>
<td>j. killing of whole groups of people</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (III)

1. parricide a. catering to people of power or position
2. patronymic b. name from father
3. chauvinistic c. dabblers
4. sycophantic d. an accomplished musician
5. diaphanous e. filmy, gauzy
6. dilettanti f. blatantly overpatriotic
7. tyro g. loud-mouthed woman
8. virtuoso h. a beginner
9. termagant i. killing of either or both parents
Can you work with the words? (IV)

1. synonyms
   a. system in which those in power have a father-child relationship with subordinates

2. antonyms
   b. like a strict disciplinarian

3. homonyms
   c. self-killing

4. paternalism
   d. fatherly

5. suicide
   e. referring to or like, those who “play at” an art

6. mariticide
   f. words that sound alike but are spelled differently and have unrelated meanings

7. martinetish
   g. words of similar meaning

8. dilettantish
   h. referring to, or like, an older woman

9. paternal
   i. husband-killing

10. matronly
    j. words of opposite meaning
Can you work with the words? (V)

1. harridan  
2. homophones  
3. maternal  
4. matrimonial  
5. synonymous  
6. antonymous  
7. homonymous  
8. patriarchal  
9. matriarchal  
10. homicidal

a. motherly  
b. similar in meaning  
c. referring to a system in which older men are in power  
d. the same in sound but not in spelling or meaning  
e. likely to kill; referring to the killing of a person  
f. referring to a system in which older women are in power  
g. virago  
h. opposite in meaning  
i. referring to marriage  
j. words that sound the same
### Do you understand the words?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Does a sycophantic attitude show sincere admiration?</th>
<th>YES</th>
<th>NO</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Is a diaphanous gown revealing?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does dilettantism show firmness and tenacity?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is a tyro particularly skillful?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is a violin virtuoso an accomplished musician?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is a termagant a pleasant person?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does chauvinism show modesty?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does a substantial patrimony obviate financial insecurity?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>If you know a person’s patronymic can you deduce his father’s name?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Is a patriarch a male?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does a matriarch have a good deal of power?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Does fratricide mean murder of one’s sister?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Did the assassin of Abraham Lincoln commit regicide?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do dictators and tyrants sometimes commit genocide?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Are an uxoricidal husband and his mariticial wife likely to have a peaceful and affectionate marriage?</td>
<td>YES</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you recall the words? (I)

father-killing (*noun*)

1. P__________________

wife-killing (*noun*)

2. U__________________

mature woman

3. M__________________

toadying to people of influence (*adj.*)

4. S__________________

skilled musician

5. V__________________

exaggerated patriotism

6. C__________________

turbulent female (three words)

7. T__________
   
   or H__________
   
   or V__________

name derived from father’s name

8. P__________________

powerful father figure in a ruling position

9. P__________________

powerful mother figure in a ruling position

10. M__________________

motherly

11. M__________________

motherhood

12. M__________________

marriage

13. M__________________

one’s school or college

14. A__________

attitude of catering to wealth or prestige (*noun*)

15. S__________

killing of a race or nation
16. dabbling in the fine arts (noun)
17. a beginner in a field
18. plural of virtuoso (Italian form)
19. having an attitude of excessive patriotism (adj.)
20. inheritance from father
21. sheer, transparent
22. mother-killing (noun)
23. brother-killing (noun)
24. sister-killing (noun)
25. killing of a human being
26. killing of one's ruler
27. killing of a baby
28. killing of one's husband
29. killing of either parent or of both parents
30. 
Can you recall the words? (II)

words of similar meaning
1. S____________s

words of opposite meaning
2. A____________s

words of the same sound
3. H____________s
or H____________s

fatherly
4. P____________

protective and fatherly toward one’s subordinates (adj.)
5. P____________

older woman
6. M____________

self-destructive
7. S____________

meaning the same (adj.)
8. S____________

having opposite meanings (adj.)
9. A____________

sounding the same but spelled differently (adj.)
10. H____________
or H____________
KEY:  1–synonyms, 2–antonyms, 3–homonyms or homophones, 4–paternal, 5–paternalistic, 6–matron, 7–suicidal, 8–synonymous, 9–antonymous, 10–homonymous or homophonomous

(End of Session 29)
1. **brothers and sisters, wives and husbands**

   *Frater*, brother; *soror*, sister; *uxor*, wife; and *maritus*, husband—these roots are the source of a number of additional English words:

   1. to *fraternize* (FRAT′-ə-r-niz′)—etymologically, to have a brotherly relationship (with). This verb may be used to indicate social intercourse between people, irrespective of sex, as in, “Members of the faculty often *fraternized* after school hours.”
   
   Additionally, and perhaps more commonly, there may be the implication of having a social relationship with one’s subordinates in an organization, or even with one’s so-called inferiors, as in, “The president of the college was reluctant to *fraternize* with faculty members, preferring to keep all her contacts with them on an exclusively professional basis”; or as in, “The artist enjoyed *fraternizing* with thieves, drug addicts, prostitutes, and pimps, partly out of social perversity, partly to find interesting faces to put in his paintings.”
   
   The verb also gained a new meaning during and after World War II, when soldiers of occupying armies had sexual relations with the women of conquered countries, as in, “Military personnel were strictly forbidden to *fraternize* with the enemy.” (How euphemistic can you get?)

Can you write the noun form of *fraternize*? ____________.

2. *fraternal* (frƏ-TUR′-nəl)—brotherly. The word also designates *non-identical* (twins).

3. *fraternity* (frƏ-TUR′-nə-tee)—a men’s organization in a high school or college, often labeled with Greek letters (the Gamma Delta Epsilon *Fraternity*); or any group of people of similar interests or profession (the medical *fraternity*, the financial *fraternity*).

4. *sorority* (sə-RAWR′-ə-tee)—a women’s organization in high school or college, again usually Greek-lettered; or any women’s social club.

5. *uxorious* (uk-SAWR′-ee-əs)—an adjective describing a man who excessively, even absurdly, caters to, dotes on, worships, and submits to the most outlandish or outrageous demands of, his wife. This word is *not* synonymous with *henpecked*, as the henpecked husband is dominated by his wife, perhaps because of his own fear or weakness, while the *uxorious* husband is dominated only by his neurosis, and quite likely the wife finds his *uxoriousness* (uk-SAWR′-ee-əs-nəs) comical or a pain in the neck. (There can, indeed, be too much of a good thing!)
6. **uxorial**—pertaining to, characteristic of, or befitting, a wife, as *uxorial* duties, privileges, attitudes, etc.

7. **marital** (MAIR′-ə-təl)—etymologically, pertaining or referring to, or characteristic of, a husband; but the meaning has changed to include the marriage relationship of both husband and wife (don’t ever let anyone tell you that our language is not sexist!), as *marital* duties, obligations, privileges, arguments, etc. Hence *extramarital* is literally outside the marriage, as in *extramarital* affairs (hanky-panky with someone other than one’s spouse). And *premarital* (Latin prefix *pre-*-, before) describes events that occur before a planned marriage, as *premarital* sex, a *premarital* agreement as to the division of property, etc.

2. **of cabbages and kings (without the cabbage)**

*Rex, regis* is Latin for king. *Tyrannosaurus rex* was the king (i.e., the largest) of the dinosaurs (etymologically, “king of the tyrant lizards”). Dogs are often named *Rex* to fool them into thinking they are kings rather than slaves. And *regal* (REE′-gəl) is royal, or fit for a king, hence magnificent, stately, imperious, splendid, etc., as in *regal* bearing or manner, a *regal* mansion, a *regal* reception, etc. The noun is *regality* (rə-GAL′-ə-tee).

*Regalia* (rə-GAYL′-ə), a plural noun, designated the emblems or insignia or dress of a king, and now refers to any impressively formal clothes; or, more commonly, to the decorations, insignia, or uniform of a rank, position, office, social club, etc. “The Shriners were dressed in full *regalia,*” “The five-star general appeared in full *regalia,*” etc.

3. **“madness” of all sorts**

The *monomaniac* develops an abnormal obsession in respect to one particular thing (Greek *monos*, one), but is otherwise normal. The obsession itself, or the obsessiveness, is *monomania* (mon′-ə-MAY′-nee-ə), the adjective is *monomaniacal* (mon′-ə-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl). *Monomaniacal*, like the adjective forms of various other manias, is tricky to pronounce—practice carefully to make sure you can say it correctly without stuttering.

Psychology recognizes other abnormal states, all designating obsessions, and built on Greek *mania*, madness.

1. **dipsomania** (dip′-sə-MAY′-nee-ə)—morbid compulsion to keep on absorbing alcoholic beverages (Greek *dipsa*, thirst). The *dipsomaniac* has been defined as the person for whom one drink is too many, a thousand not enough. Recent investigations suggest that *dipsomania*, or alcoholism, may not necessarily be caused by anxieties or frustrations, but possibly by a metabolic or physiological disorder.

   Adjective: *dipsomaniacal* (dip′-sə-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl).

2. **kleptomania** (klep′-tə-MAY′-nee-ə)—morbid compulsion to steal, not from any economic motive, but simply because the urge to take another’s possessions is irresistible. The *kleptomaniac* (Greek *klepte*, thief) may be wealthy, and yet be an obsessive shoplifter. The
kleptomaniac, for reasons that psychologists are still arguing about, is more often a female than a male, and may pinch her best friend’s valueless trinket, or a cheap ashtray or salt shaker from a restaurant, not because she wants, let alone needs, the article, but because she apparently can’t help herself; she gets carried away. (When she arrives home, she may toss it in a drawer with other loot, and never look at it again.)

Can you write (and correctly pronounce) the adjective?

3. pyromania (pi’-rə-MAY’-nee-ə)—morbid compulsion to set fires. Pyromania should not be confused with incendiari(ism) (in-SEN’-dee-ə-riz-əm), which is the malicious and deliberate burning of another’s property, and is not a compulsive need to see the flames and enjoy the thrill of the heat and the smoke. Some pyromaniacs join volunteer fire companies, often heroically putting out the very blazes they themselves have set. An incendiary (in-SEN’-dee-air-ee) is antisocial, and usually sets fires for revenge. Either of these two dangerous characters is called, colloquially, a “firebug.”

In law, setting fire to another’s, or to one’s own, property for the purpose of economic gain (such as the collection of the proceeds of an insurance policy) is called arson (AHR’-ən) and is a felony. The pyromaniac sets fire for the thrill; the incendiary for revenge; the arsonist (AHR’-ə-nist) for money.

Pyromania is built on Greek pyros, fire; incendiari(ism) on Latin incendo, incensus, to set fire; arson on Latin ardo, arsus, to burn.

Can you write, and pronounce, the adjective form of pyromaniac? __________________.

4. megalomania (meg’-ə-lə-MAY’-nee-ə)—morbid delusions of grandeur, power, importance, godliness, etc. Jokes accusing the heads of governments of megalomania are common. Here’s an old chestnut from the forties:

Churchill, Roosevelt, and Stalin were talking about their dreams.

Churchill: I dreamed last night that God had made me Prime Minister of the whole world.

Roosevelt: I dreamed that God had made me President of the whole world.

Stalin: How could you gentlemen have such dreams? I didn’t dream of offering you those positions!

Hitler, Napoleon, and Alexander the Great have been called megalomaniacs—all three certainly had delusions about their invincibility.

Can you write (and pronounce correctly!) the adjective derived from megalomaniac? ______________.

Megalomania is built on Greek megas, great, big, large, plus mania.

[Can you think of the word for what someone speaks through to make the sound (phone) of his voice greater? ______________.

5. nymphomania (nim’-fə-MAY’-nee-ə)—morbid, incessant, uncontrollable, and intense desire, on the part of a female, for sexual intercourse (from Greek nymphe, bride, plus mania).

The person? ______________.
6. satyromania (sə-tərˈə-MAYˈ-nee-ə)—the same morbid, incessant, etc. desire on the part of a male (from Greek satyros, satyr, plus mania).

The person? ______________.

The adjective? ______________.

A satyr (SAY′-tör) was a mythological Greek god, notorious for lechery. He had horns, pointed ears, and the legs of a goat; the rest of him was in human form. Satyromania is also called satyriasis (sat′-ə-RĪˈ-ə-sis).

4. and now phobias

So much for maniacs. There is another side to the coin. Just as personality disorders can cause morbid attraction toward certain things or acts (stealing, fire, power, sex, etc.), so also other emotional ills can cause violent or morbid repulsions to certain conditions, things, or situations. There are people who have irrational and deep-seated dread of cats, dogs, fire, the number thirteen, snakes, thunder or lightning, various colors, and so on almost without end:

1. claustrophobia (klaw′-strə-FŌˈ-bee-ə)—morbid dread of being physically hemmed in, of enclosed spaces, of crowds, etc. From Latin claustrum, enclosed place, plus Greek phobia, morbid fear. The person: claustrophobe (KLAW′-strə-fōb′). Adjective: claustrophobic (klaw′-strə-FŌˈ-bik).

The person? ______________.

The adjective? ______________.

2. agoraphobia (ag′-ə-rə-FŌˈ-bee-ə)—morbid dread of open space, the reverse of claustrophobia. People suffering from agoraphobia prefer to stay shut in their homes as much as possible, and become panic-stricken in such places as open fields, large public buildings, airport terminals, etc. From Greek agora, market place, plus phobia.

The person? ______________.

The adjective? ______________.

3. acrophobia (ak′-rə-FŌˈ-bee-ə)—morbid dread of high places. The victims of this fear will not climb ladders or trees, or stand on tops of furniture. They refuse to go onto the roof of a building or look out the window of one of the higher floors. From Greek akros, highest, plus phobia.

The person? ______________.

The adjective? ______________.
1. frater, fratris  
   brother

2. soror  
   sister

3. uxor  
   wife

4. maritus  
   husband

5. rex, regis  
   king

6. mania  
   madness

7. monos  
   one

8. -ac  
   noun suffix, “one who”

9. -al  
   adjective suffix

10. dipsa  
    thirst

11. klepte  
    thief

12. pyros  
    fire

13. incendo, incensus  
    to set fire

14. ardo, arsus  
    to burn

15. mega  
    great, large, big
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>English Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>phone</td>
<td>sound</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>satyros</td>
<td>satyr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>nympe</td>
<td>bride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>clastrum</td>
<td>enclosed place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>agora</td>
<td>market place</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>akros</td>
<td>highest</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>-ic</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td>phobia</td>
<td>morbid dread</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td>pre-</td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td>extra-</td>
<td>outside</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words? (I)**

1. fraternize  
   FRAT′-ər-niz′
2. fraternization  
   frat′-ər-nə-ZAY′-shən
3. fraternal  
   frə-TUR′-nəl
4. fraternize  a. pertaining to, characteristic of, or befitting, a wife
   5. fraternal                  b. outside the marriage
   6. sorority                   c. kingly, royal; splendid, stately, magnificent, etc.
   7. uxorious                  d. referring to marriage
   8. uxorial                   e. before marriage
   9. marital                   f. socialize
  10. extramarital              g. excessively indulgent to, or doting on, one’s wife
  11. premarital                h. brotherly
  12. regal                     i. badges, insignia, dress, etc. of rank or office
  13. regalia                   j. sisterhood
Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. monomania        monˈ-ə-MAYˈ-nee-ə
2. monomaniac       monˈ-ə-MAYˈ-nee-ak
3. monomaniacal     monˈ-ə-mə-NĪˈ-ə-kəl
4. dipsomania       dipˈ-sə-MAYˈ-nee-ə
5. dipsomaniac      dipˈ-sə-MAYˈ-nee-ak
6. dipsomaniacal    dipˈ-sə-mə-NĪˈ-ə-kəl
7. kleptomania      klepˈ-tə-MAYˈ-nee-ə
8. kleptomaniac     klepˈ-tə-MAYˈ-nee-ak
9. kleptomaniacal   klepˈ-tə-mə-NĪˈ-ə-kəl
10. pyromania       pīˈ-rə-MAYˈ-nee-ə
11. pyromaniac      pīˈ-rə-MAYˈ-nee-ak
12. pyromaniacal    pīˈ-rə-mə-NĪˈ-ə-kəl

Can you work with the words? (II)

1. monomania         a. obsession for alcohol
2. dipsomania        b. obsession for setting fires
3. kleptomania       c. obsession in one area
4. pyromania         d. obsession for thievery
Can you pronounce the words? (III)

1. incendiarism in-SEN′-dee-ə-riz-əm
2. incendiary in-SEN′-dee-air-ee
3. arson AHR′-sən
4. arsonist AHR′-sə-nist
5. megalomania meg′-ə-lə-MAY′-nee-ə
6. megalomaniac meg′-ə-lə-MAY′-nee-ak
7. megalomaniacal meg′-ə-lə-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl
8. nymphomania nim′-fə-MAY′-nee-ə
9. nymphomaniac nim′-fə-MAY′-nee-ak
10. nymphomaniacal nim′-fə-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl
11. satyromania sə-teer′-ə-MAY′-nee-ə
12. satyromaniacal sə-teer′-ə-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl
13. satyriasis sat′-ə-RĪ′-ə-sis

Can you pronounce the words? (IV)

1. claustrophobia klaw′-strə-FŌ′-bee-ə
2. claustrophobe KŁAW′-strə-fōb′
3. claustrophobic klaw′-strə-FŌ′-bik
4. agoraphobia ag′-ə-rə-FŌ′-bee-ə
5. agoraphobe AG′-ə-rə-fōb′
6. agoraphobic ag′-ə-rə-FŌ′-bik
7. acrophobia ak′-rə-FŌ′-bee-ə
8. acrophobe AK′-rə-fōb′
9. acrophobic ak′-rə-FŌ′-bik
<p>| | | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>incendiaryism</td>
<td>a. delusions of grandeur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>arson</td>
<td>b. compulsive sexual needs on the part of a male</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>megalomania</td>
<td>c. morbid dread of open spaces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>nymphomania</td>
<td>d. morbid dread of enclosed places</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>satyromania</td>
<td>e. malicious setting of fires, as for revenge, etc.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>claustrophobia</td>
<td>f. morbid dread of heights</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>agoraphobia</td>
<td>g. compulsive sexual needs on the part of a female</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>acrophobia</td>
<td>h. felony of setting fire for economic gain</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (IV)

1. incendiary  
   a. one who has delusions of greatness or power

2. arsonist  
   b. male compulsion for sexual intercourse

3. megalomaniac  
   c. one who fears shut-in or crowded places

4. nymphomaniac  
   d. one who sets fires out of malice

5. satyriasis  
   e. one who fears heights

6. claustrophobe  
   f. one who fears large or open spaces

7. agoraphobe  
   g. one who sets fires for economic and illegal profit

8. acrophobe  
   h. woman with compulsive, incessant sexual desire
Do you understand the words?

Is a sorority a men’s organization?
YES   NO

Is an uxorious husband likely to be psychologically dependent on his wife?
YES   NO

Are extramarital affairs adulterous?
YES   NO

Do VIPs often receive regal treatment?
YES   NO

Is an admiral of the fleet in regalia informally dressed?
YES   NO

Do monomaniacal people have varied interests?
YES   NO

Can a dipsomaniac safely indulge in social drinking?
YES   NO

Do people of pyromaniacal tendencies fear fire?
YES   NO

Is incendiarism an uncontrollable impulse?
YES   NO

Does an arsonist expect a reward for his actions?
YES   NO

Is it necessary to seduce a nymphomaniac?
YES   NO

Do megalomaniacs have low opinions of themselves?
YES   NO

Is a satyromaniac lecherous?
YES   NO

Are satyriasis and asceticism compatible conditions?
YES   NO

Does a claustrophobe enjoy cramped quarters?
YES   NO

Would an agoraphobe be comfortable in a small cell-like room?
YES   NO

Does an acrophobe enjoy mountain-climbing?
Can you recall the words?

to socialize
  1. F__________________
extremely indulgent to, and doting on, one's wife
  2. U__________________
full dress, with ribbons, insignia, badges of office, etc.
  3. R__________________
obsessed in one area or with one overriding interest (adj.)
  4. M__________________
having a compulsion to set fires (adj.)
  5. P__________________
having a psychological compulsion to steal (adj.)
  6. K__________________
person who sets fires for revenge
  7. I__________________
felony of putting the torch to property for economic profit
  8. A__________________
obsessive need for sexual gratification by a male
  9. S__________________
or S__________________
morbidly dreading enclosed or cramped places (adj.)
  10. C________________
morbidly dreading heights (adj.)
  11. A________________
morbidly dreading wide-open spaces (adj.)
  12. A________________
having delusions of grandeur or power (adj.)
  13. M________________
referring to a female who obsessively needs sexual gratification (adj.)
  14. N________________
alcoholism
  15. D________________
stealing for thrills or out of psychological compulsion (adj.)
  16. K________________
brotherly

17. F__________________
characteristic of, or befitting, a wife

18. U__________________
referring to, characteristic of, or involved in, the matrimonial relationship

19. M__________________
kingly; royal; splendid; etc.

20. R__________________
outside the marriage (adj.)

21. E__________________
before marriage (adj.)

22. P__________________

(End of Session 30)
1. no reverence

The *iconoclast* sneers at convention and tradition, attempts to expose our cherished beliefs, our revered traditions, or our stereotypical thinking as shams and myths. H. L. Mencken was the great *iconoclast* of the 1920s; Tom Wolfe (*The Kandy-Kolored Tangerine-Flake Streamline Baby*), of the 1960s.

Adolescence is that confused and rebellious time of life in which *iconoclasm* (i-KON’-ə-klaz’-əm) is quite normal—indeed the adolescent who is not *iconoclastic* (i-kon’-ə-KLAST’-ik) to some degree might be considered either immature or maladjusted. The words are from *eikon*, a religious image, plus *klaein*, to break. *Iconoclasm* is not of course restricted to religion.

2. is there a God?

*Atheist* combines the Greek negative prefix *a*- with *theos*, God. Do not confuse *atheism* (AY’-thee-iz-əm) with *agnosticism* (ag-NOS’-tə-siz-əm), the philosophy that claims that God is unknowable, that He may or may not exist, and that human beings can never come to a final conclusion about Him. The *agnostic* (ag-NOS’-tik) does not deny the existence of a deity, as does the *atheist*, but simply holds that no proof can be adduced one way or the other.

3. how to know

*Agnostic* (which is also an adjective) is built on the Greek root *gnostos*, known, and the negative prefix *a*-. An *agnostic* claims that all but material phenomena is unknown, and, indeed, unknowable.

A *diagnosis* (dī-ə-g-NŌ’-sis), constructed on the allied Greek root *gnosis*, knowledge, plus *dia*-, through, is a knowing through examination or testing. A *prognosis* (prog-NŌ’-sis), on the other hand, is etymologically a knowing beforehand, hence a prediction, generally, but not solely, as to the course of a disease. (The Greek prefix *pro*-, before, plus *gnosis*.)

Thus, you may say to a doctor: “What’s the *diagnosis*, Doc?”

“Diabetes.”

Then you say, “And what’s the *prognosis*?”

“If you take insulin and watch your diet, you’ll soon be as good as new.”

The doctor’s *prognosis*, then, is a forecast of the development or trend of a disease. The doctor knows beforehand, from previous similar cases, what to expect.
The verb form of *diagnosis* is *diagnose* (dī′-əg-NŌS′); the verb form of *prognosis* is *prognosticate* (prog-NOS′-tə-kayt′). To use the verb *prognosticate* correctly, be sure that your meaning involves the forecasting of developments from a consideration of symptoms or conditions—whether the problem is physical, mental, political, economic, psychological, or what have you.

In school, you doubtless recall taking *diagnostic* (dī′-əg-NOS′-tik) tests; these measured not what you were supposed to have learned during the semester, but your general knowledge in a field, so that your teachers would know what remedial steps to take, just as doctors rely on their *diagnosis* to decide what drugs or treatments to prescribe.

In a reading center, various *diagnostic* machines and tests are used—these tell the clinician what is wrong with a student’s reading and what measures will probably increase such a student’s reading efficiency.

The medical specialist in *diagnosis* is a *diagnostician* (dī′-əg-nos-TISH′-ən).

The noun form of the verb *prognosticate* is *prognostication* (prog-nos′-tə-KAY′-shən).

4. **getting back to God**

*Theos*, God, is also found in:

1. **Monotheism** (MON′-ə-thee-iz-əm)—belief in one God. (*Monos*, one, plus *theos*, God.)
   Using *atheism*, *atheist*, and *atheistic* as a model, write the word for the person who believes in one God: _________________. The adjective? _________________.

2. **Polytheism** (POL′-ee-thee-iz-əm)—belief in many gods, as in ancient Greece or Rome. (*Polys*, many, plus *theos.*)
   The person with such a belief? _________________. The adjective? _________________.

3. **Pantheism** (PAN′-thee-iz-əm)—belief that God is not in man’s image, but is a combination of all forces of the universe. (*Pan*, all, plus *theos.*) The person? _________________. The adjective? _________________.

4. **Theology** (thee-OL′-ə-jee)—the study of God and religion. (*Theos* plus *logos*, science or study.)
   The student is a *theologian* (thee′-ə-LŌ′-jən), the adjective is *theological* (thee′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

5. **of sex and the tongue**

A *lecher* practices lechery (LECH′-ər-e). The derivation is Old French *lechier*, to lick. The adjective *lecherous* (LECH′-ə-rəs) has many close or not-so-close synonyms, most of them also, and significantly, starting with the letter *l*, a sound formed with the tongue, supposedly the seat of sensation.

1. *libidinous* (lə-BID′-ə-nəs)—from *libido*, pleasure.
2. lascivious (lə-SIV'-ee-əs)—from lascivia, wantonness.

3. lubricious (lə-BRISH'-əs)—from lubricus, slippery, the same root found in lubricate. The noun is lubricity (lə-BRIS'-ə-tee).

4. licentious (lĭ-SEN'-shəs)—from licere, to be permitted, the root from which we get license, etymologically, “permission,” and illicit, etymologically, “not permitted.”

5. lewd—the previous four words derive from Latin, but this one is from Anglo-Saxon lewed, vile.

6. lustful—from an Anglo-Saxon word meaning pleasure, desire. Noun: lust.

Libidinous, lascivious, lubricious, licentious, lewd, lecherous, lustful are seven adjectives that indicate sexual desire and/or activity. The implication of all seven words is more or less derogatory.

Each adjective becomes a noun with the addition of the noun suffix -ness; lubricity and lust are alternate noun forms of two of the adjectives.

6. of sex and the itch

Prurient (PRör'-ee-ənt), from Latin prurio, to itch, to long for, describes someone who is filled with great sexual curiosity, desire, longing, etc. Can you form the noun? ______________.

Pruritis (prör-Ī'-tis), from the same root, is a medical condition in which the skin is very itchy, but without a rash or eruptions. (Scratch enough, of course, as you will be irresistibly tempted to do, and something like a rash will soon appear.) The adjective is pruritic (prör-IT'-ik).

7. under and over

Hypochondria (hī-pə-KON'-dree-ə) is built on two Greek roots: hypos, under, and chondros, the cartilage of the breastbone. This may sound farfetched until you realize that under the breastbone is the abdomen; the ancient Greeks believed that morbid anxiety about one’s health arose in the abdomen—and no one is more morbidly, unceasingly, and unhappily anxious about health than the hypochondriac.

Hypochondriac is also an adjective—an alternate and more commonly used adjective form is hypochondriacal (hī'-pə-kən-DRĪ'-ə-kəl).

Hypos, under, is a useful root to know. The hypodermic needle penetrates under the skin; a hypothyroid person has an underworking thyroid gland; hypotension is abnormally low blood pressure.

On the other hand, hyper is the Greek root meaning over. The hypercritical person is excessively fault-finding; hyperthyroidism is an overworking of the thyroid gland; hypertension is high blood pressure; and you can easily figure out the meanings of hyperacidity, hyperactive, hypersensitive, etc.
The adjective forms of *hypotension* and *hypertension* are *hypotensive* and *hypertensive*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>eikon</em></td>
<td>religious image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>klaein</em></td>
<td>to break</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>a-</em></td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>theos</em></td>
<td>God</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>gnostos</em></td>
<td>known</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>ism</em></td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>ic</em></td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <em>gnosis</em></td>
<td>knowledge</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <em>dia-</em></td>
<td>through</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>pro-</em></td>
<td>before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. <em>ate</em></td>
<td>verb suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. <em>ion</em></td>
<td>noun suffix for verbs ending in <em>-ate</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. <em>ician</em></td>
<td>one who; expert</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>monos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>polys</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>pan</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>logos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>-al</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td>prurio</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td>hypos</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td>hyper</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td>-ive</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**USING THE WORDS**

**Can you pronounce the words? (I)**

1. iconoclasm | i-KON-ə-klaz-əm
2. iconoclastic | i-kon-ə-KLAS-tik
3. atheism | AY'-thee-iz-əm
4. atheistic | ay'-thee-IS'-tik
5. agnostic | ag-NOS'-tik
6. agnosticism | ag-NOS'-tə-siz-əm
7. diagnosis  dī′-əg-NŌ′-sis
8. diagnose   DĪ′-əg-nōs′
9. diagnostic dī′-əg-NOS′-tik
10. diagnostician dī′-əg-nos-TISH′-ən
11. prognosis  prog-NŌ′-sis
12. prognostic prog-NOS′-tik
13. prognosticate prog-NOS′-tə-kayt′
14. prognostication prog-nos′-tə-KAY′-shən

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. monotheism MON′-ə-thee-iz-əm
2. monotheist MON′-ə-thee′-ist
3. monotheistic mon′-ə-thee-IS′-tik
4. polytheism POL′-ee-thee-iz-əm
5. polytheist POL′-ee-thee′-ist
6. polytheistic pol′-ee-thee-IS′-tik
7. pantheism PAN′-thee-iz-əm
8. pantheist PAN′-thee-ist
9. pantheistic pan′-thee-IS′-tik
10. theology thee-OL′-ə-jee
11. theologian thee′-ə-LŌ′-jən
12. theological thee′-ə-LOJ′-ə-kəl

Can you pronounce the words? (III)

1. lechery  LECH′-ər-eə
2. lecherous LECH′-ər-əs
3. libidinous lə-BID′-ə-nəs
4. lascivious lə-SIV′-ee-əs
5. lubricious  lə-BRISH'-əs
6. lubricity  lə-BRIS'-ə-tee
7. licentious  li-SEN'-shəs
8. lewd  LOOd
9. lustful  LUST'-fəl
10. lust  LUST

Can you pronounce the words? (IV)

1. prurient  PROOR'-ee-ənt
2. prurience  PROOR'-ee-əns
3. pruritis  prər-Ī'-tis
4. pruritic  prər-IT'-ik
5. hypochondria  hī-pə-KON'-dree-ə
6. hypochondriacal  hī'-pə-kən-DRĪ'-ə-kəl
7. hypotension  hī'-pō-TEN'-shən
8. hypertension  hī'-pər-TEN'-shən
9. hypotensive  hī'-pō-TEN'-siv
10. hypertensive  hī'-pər-TEN'-siv

This has been a long chapter, and we have discussed, more or less in detail, over one hundred words. Just to keep everything straight in your mind now, see how successfully you can work out the following matching exercises, which will concern any of the words discussed in this chapter.

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. martinet  a. lack of seriousness in an art or profession
2. sycophancy  b. harridan, shrew
3. dilettantism  c. excessive patriotism
4. tyro  d. name from father
5. virtuoso  e. venerable and influential old man
6. termagant  f. beginner
7. chauvinism  g. brilliant performer
8. patrimony  h. bootlicking
9. patronymic  i. inheritance from father
10. patriarch  j. strict disciplinarian
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>patricide</td>
<td>d. father-killing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>alma mater</td>
<td>h. school or college from which one has graduated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>matricide</td>
<td>c. wife-killing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>fratricide</td>
<td>d. father-killing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>uxoricide</td>
<td>e. tending to set fires</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>uxorious</td>
<td>f. alcoholic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>monomaniacal</td>
<td>g. wife-doting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>pyromaniacal</td>
<td>h. school or college from which one has graduated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>megalomaniacal</td>
<td>i. tending to delusions of grandeur</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>dipsomaniacal</td>
<td>j. brother-killing</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (III)

| 1. kleptomania | a. disbelief in God |
| 2. libidinous | b. belief in many gods |
| 3. atheism | c. lewd |
| 4. agnosticism | d. belief that God is nature |
| 5. polytheism | e. morbid anxiety about health |
| 6. monotheism | f. belief in one God |
| 7. theology | g. study of religion |
| 8. pantheism | h. obsessive thievery |
| 9. satyriasis | i. abnormal male sexual needs |
| 10. hypochondria | j. skepticism about God |
Can you work with the words? (IV)

1. hypotension
   a. high blood pressure
2. lascivious
   b. malicious fire-setting
3. hypertension
   c. abnormally low blood pressure
4. agnostic
   d. fire-setting for illegal gain
5. incendiarism
   e. to forecast (probable developments)
   f. a determination through examination or testing of the nature, type, causes, etc. of a condition
6. arson
   g. one who claims that ultimate reality is unknowable
7. iconoclasm
   h. sexually immoral
8. prognosticate
   i. a foretelling of probable developments
9. diagnosis
10. prognosis
    j. a scoffing at tradition
Can you work with the words? (V)

1. prurience
   a. abnormal need for sexual intercourse by a male

2. satyromania
   b. fear of enclosed places

3. agoraphobia
   c. student of religion

4. claustrophobia
   d. sexual longing or curiosity

5. acrophobia
   e. fear of heights

6. theologian
   f. fear of open spaces

7. lubricious
   g. having, or referring to, abnormally low blood pressure

8. hypochondriacal
   h. itching

9. hypotensive
   i. having, or referring to, high blood pressure

10. hypertensive
    j. sexually immoral; lewd

11. pruritis
    k. beset by anxieties about one’s health
Can you recall the words? (I)

I. manias and phobias

single fixed obsession
  1. M__________________
irresistible compulsion to set fires
  2. P__________________
unceasing desire, on the part of a woman, for sexual intercourse
  3. N__________________
obsessive desire to steal
  4. K__________________
delusions of grandeur
  5. M__________________
alcoholism
  6. D__________________
compulsion for sexual intercourse by a male
  7. S__________________
or S__________________
dread of heights
  8. A__________________
dread of open spaces
  9. A__________________
dread of cramped quarters
  10. C__________________
Can you recall the words? (II)

II. sex

Write seven adjectives; all starting with L, more or less meaning “sexually immoral, desirous, etc.”; write the adjective starting with P meaning “sexually curious or longing.”

1. L__________________
2. L__________________
3. L__________________
4. L__________________
5. L__________________
6. L__________________
7. L__________________
8. P__________________
III. God

study of religion
  1. T________________
belief that God is the sum total of natural forces
  2. P________________
belief that there is no God
  3. A________________
belief that God's existence is unknowable
  4. A________________
belief in one God
  5. M________________
belief in many gods
  6. P________________
Can you recall the words? (IV)

morbid anxiety about one's health
  1. H____________
high blood pressure
  2. H____________
malicious fire-setting
  3. I____________
the felony of setting fire for economic gain
  4. A____________
sneering contempt for convention or tradition
  5. I____________
a forecast of development (of a disease, etc.)
  6. P____________
designed to discover causes or conditions (adj.)
  7. D____________
abnormally low blood pressure
  8. H____________
to forecast (probable future developments) by examining present conditions
  9. P____________
to determine the nature of a disease, condition, or state by examination
10. D____________
the act of forecasting (probable future developments) by examining present conditions
11. P____________
doctor who is an expert at recognizing the nature of a disease or condition
12. D____________
possessed of, or referring to, high blood pressure
13. H____________
possessed of, or referring to, abnormally low blood pressure
14. H____________
one who studies religion
15. T____________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

Disciplinarian:
(a) martinet, (b) virago, (c) dilettante

Bootlicker:
(a) chauvinist, (b) sycophant, (c) lecher

Scoffer at tradition:
(a) monomaniac, (b) hypochondriac, (c) iconoclast

Disbeliever in God:
(a) agnostic, (b) atheist, (c) chauvinist

Accomplished musician:
(a) tyro, (b) dilettante, (c) virtuoso

Sheer, flimsy:
(a) diaphanous, (b) uxorious, (c) paternal

Abusive woman:
(a) termagant, (b) virtuoso, (c) matriarch

Murder of one’s wife:
(a) genocide, (b) uxoricide, (c) sororicide

Old man in ruling position:
(a) matriarch, (b) patricide, (c) patriarch

Morbid compulsion to steal:
(a) dipsomania, (b) nymphomania, (c) kleptomania

Delusions of grandeur:
(a) megalomania, (b) egomania, (c) pyromania

Lewd, lustful:
(a) prurient, (b) agnostic, (c) hypochondriac

Belief in many gods:
(a) polytheism, (b) monotheism, (c) agnosticism

Setting fire for economic gain:
(a) pyromania, (b) incendiarism, (c) arson

Morbid fear of heights:
(a) agoraphobia, (b) acrophobia, (c) claustrophobia

High blood pressure:
(a) hypotension, (b) hypertension, (c) hypochondria

Abnormal need for sexual intercourse by a male:
(a) lechery, (b) lubricity, (c) satyriasis
### B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sykon</td>
<td>sycophant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. phanein</td>
<td>diaphanous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vir</td>
<td>virago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pater, patris</td>
<td>paternal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. onyma</td>
<td>synonym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. homos</td>
<td>homonym</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. phone</td>
<td>homophone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. archein</td>
<td>matriarchy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. mater, matris</td>
<td>maternity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. alma</td>
<td>alma mater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. sui</td>
<td>suicide</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. *caedo* (-cide)  
EXAMPLE parricide

13. *frater, fratris*  
EXAMPLE fraternity

14. *soror*  
EXAMPLE sorority

15. *homo*  
EXAMPLE homicide

16. *rex, regis*  
EXAMPLE regal

17. *uxor*  
EXAMPLE uxorious

18. *maritus*  
EXAMPLE mariticide

19. *infans, infantis*  
EXAMPLE infanticide

20. *genos*  
EXAMPLE genocide

21. *mania*  
EXAMPLE egomania

22. *monos*  
EXAMPLE monomania

23. *dipsa*  
EXAMPLE dipsomania

24. *klepte*  
EXAMPLE kleptomania

25. *pyros*  
EXAMPLE pyromania

26. *incendo, incensus*
inciendiarism

ardo, arsus

arson

mega

megalomaniac

satyros

satyriasis

nymphe

nymphomaniac

clastrum

claustrophobia

agora

agoraphobia

akros

acrophobia

phobia

zoophobia

eikon

iconoclastic

klaein

iconoclasm

theos

monotheism

gnostos

agnostic

gnosis

prognosis

polys

polytheism
41. *pan*  
   EXAMPLE  pantheism

42. *logos*  
   EXAMPLE  theology

43. *prurio*  
   EXAMPLE  pruritis

44. *hypos*  
   EXAMPLE  hypotension

45. *hyper*  
   EXAMPLE  hypertension
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. If a patronymic is a name derived from the name of one’s father, can you figure out the word for a name derived from one’s mother’s name? __________________.

2. Incendo, incensus, to set on fire, is the origin of the adjective incendiary, the noun incense, and the verb to incense.

   (a) What is an incendiary statement or speech? ________________.
   (b) Why do people use incense, and why is it called incense? ________________.
   (c) If someone incenses you, or if you feel incensed, how does the meaning of the verb derive from the root? ________________.

3. Ardo, arsus, to burn, is the source of ardent and ardor. Explain these two words in terms of the root.

   (a) ardent: ________________.
   (b) ardor: ________________.

4. What is used to make sound greater (use the roots for great and sound)? ________________.

5. A metropolis, by etymology, is the mother city (Greek meter, mother, plus polis, city, state). Construct a word for a great city (think of megalomania, delusions of greatness): ________________.

6. Polis, city, state, is the origin of the word for the uniformed group guarding the city or state. The English word? ________________. Can you think of the word from the same root for the art of governing the city or state? ________________.

7. What is a bibliokleptomaniac? ________________. Coin a word for one who has an irresistible compulsion to steal women: ________________. To steal children (use the Greek, not the Latin, root for child): ________________. To steal males (use the Greek root): ________________. To steal people (use the Greek root): ________________.

8. What word can you coin for someone who has an obsession to reach the highest places? ________________. To be in the market place, or in wide-open spaces? ________________. To be in confined places? ________________.

9. Coin a word for one who has a morbid dread of thieves: ________________; of fire:
10. Guess at the meaning, thinking of the roots you have learned, of gnosiology: ______________.

11. Wolfgang Amadeus Theophilus Gottlieb Mozart was a famous eighteenth-century Austrian composer. You can recognize the roots in Theophilus. How are his other two middle names similar to Theophilus? ________________.

12. Thinking of the root phanein, define cellophane: ________________.

13. Recognizing the root hypos, can you define hypoglycemia? ________________. Construct a word that is the opposite of hypoglycemia: ________________.

14. Pan, all, occurs in Pantheon, pandemonium, and panorama. Can you figure out the meanings?

(a) Pantheon: ________________.
(b) pandemonium: ________________.
(c) panorama: ________________.

15. Recognizing the roots in monarchy, define the word: ________________.

(Answers in Chapter 18)

MAGAZINES THAT WILL HELP YOU

When a pregnant woman takes calcium pills, she must make sure also that her diet is rich in vitamin D, since this vitamin makes the absorption of the calcium possible. In building your vocabulary by learning great quantities of new words, you too must take a certain vitamin, metaphorically speaking, to help you absorb, understand, and remember these words. This vitamin is reading—for it is in books and magazines that you will find the words that we have been discussing in these pages. To learn new words without seeing them applied in the context of your reading is to do only half the job and to run the risk of gradually forgetting the additions to your vocabulary. To combine your vocabulary-building with increased reading is to make assurance doubly sure.

You are now so alert to the words and roots we have discussed that you will find that most of your reading will be full of the new words you have learned—and every time you do see one of the words used in context in a book or magazine, you will understand it more fully and will be taking long steps toward using it yourself.

Among magazines, I would like particularly to recommend the following, which will act both to keep you mentally alert and to set the new words you are learning:

1. Harper’s Magazine
2. Atlantic Monthly
3. The New Yorker
4. Time
5. Newsweek
6. Esquire
These periodicals are aimed at the alert, verbally sophisticated, educated reader; you will see in them, without fail, most of the words you have been studying in this book—not to mention hosts of other valuable words you will want to add to your vocabulary, many of which you will be able to figure out once you recognize their etymological structure.

(End of Session 31)

1 For some of these esoteric phobias, see Appendix.
SOME INTERESTING DERIVATIONS

PEOPLE WHO MADE OUR LANGUAGE

Bloomers

Mrs. Elizabeth Smith Miller invented them in 1849, and showed a working model to a famous women’s rights advocate, Amelia J. Bloomer. Amelia was fascinated by the idea of garments that were both modest (they then reached right down to the ankles) and convenient—and promptly sponsored them.

Boycott

Charles C. Boycott was an English land agent whose difficult duty it was to collect high rents from Irish farmers. In protest, the farmers ostracized him, not even allowing him to make purchases in town or hire workers to harvest his crops.

Marcel

Marcel was an ingenious Parisian hairdresser who felt he could improve on the button curls popular in 1875. He did, and made a fortune.

Silhouette

Finance Minister of France just before the Revolution, Etienne de Silhouette advocated the simple life, so that excess money could go into the treasury instead of into luxurious living. And the profile is the simplest form of portraiture, if you get the connection.

Derrick

A seventeenth-century English hangman, Derrick by name, hoisted to their death some of the most notorious criminals of the day.

Sadist
Because *Count de Sade*, an eighteenth-century Frenchman, found his greatest delight in torturing friends and mistresses, the term *sadist* was derived from his name. His works shocked his nation and the world by the alarming frankness with which he described his morbid and bloodthirsty cruelty.

**Galvanism**

_Luigi Galvani_, the Italian physiologist, found by accident that an electrically charged scalpel could send a frog’s corpse into muscular convulsions. Experimenting further, he eventually discovered the principles of chemically produced electricity. His name is responsible not only for the technical expressions *galvanism, galvanized iron*, and *galvanometer*, but also for that highly graphic phrase, “*galvanized into action.*”

**Guppies**

In 1868, *R. J. Lechmere Guppy*, president of the Scientific Association of Trinidad, sent some specimens of a tiny tropical fish to the British Museum. Ever since, fish of this species have been called *guppies*.

**Nicotine**

Four hundred years ago, *Jean Nicot*, a French ambassador, bought some tobacco seeds from a Flemish trader. Nicot’s successful efforts to popularize the plant in Europe brought him linguistic immortality.

**PLACE THAT MADE OUR LANGUAGE**

**Bayonne, France**

Where first was manufactured the daggerlike weapon that fits over the muzzle end of a rifle—the *bayonet*.

**Cantalupo, Italy**

The first place in Europe to grow those luscious melons we now call *cantaloupes*.

**Calicut, India**

The city from which we first imported a kind of cotton cloth now known as *calico*. 
Tuxedo Park, New York

In the country club of this exclusive and wealthy community, the short (no tails) dinner coat for men, or tuxedo, was popularized.

Egypt

It was once supposed that the colorful, fortunetelling wanderers, or Gypsies, hailed from this ancient land.

Damascus, Syria

Where an elaborately patterned silk, damask, was first made.

Tzu-t’ing, China

Once a great seaport in Fukien Province. Marco Polo called it Zaitun, and in time a silk fabric made there was called satin.

Frankfurt, Germany

Where the burghers once greatly enjoyed their smoked beef and pork sausages, which we now ask for in delicatessen stores and supermarkets by the name of frankfurters, franks, or hot dogs.
TEASER PREVIEW

What adjective aptly describes people who are:

friendly and easy to get along with?
tireless?
simple, frank, aboveboard?
keen-minded?
generous, noble, and forgiving?
able to do many things skillfully?
unflinching in the face of pain or disaster?
brave, fearless?
charming and witty?
smooth, polished, cultured?
Words are the symbols of emotions, as well as ideas. You can show your feeling by the tone you use (“You’re silly” can be an insult, an accusation, or an endearment, depending on how you say it) or by the words you choose (you can label a quality either “childish” or “childlike,” depending on whether you admire it or condemn it—it’s the same quality, no matter what you call it).

In Chapter 11 we discussed ten basic words that you might use to show your disapproval. In this chapter we discuss ten adjectives that indicate wholehearted approval.

Consider the interesting types of people described in the following paragraphs, then note how accurately the adjective applies to each type.

IDEAS

1. put the kettle on, Polly

They are friendly, happy, extroverted, and gregarious—the sort of people who will invite you out for a drink, who like to transact business around the lunch table, who put the coffee to perking as soon as company drops in. They’re sociable, genial, cordial, affable—and they like parties and all the eating and drinking that goes with them.

The adjective is: **convivial**

2. you can’t tire them

Arnold Bennett once pointed out that we all have the same amount of time—twenty-four hours a day. Strictly speaking, that’s as inconclusive an observation as Bennett ever made. It’s not time that counts, but energy—and of that wonderful quality we all have very different amounts, from the persons who wake up tired, no matter how much sleep they’ve had, to lucky, well-adjusted mortals who hardly ever need to sleep.

Energy comes from a healthy body, of course; it also comes from a psychological balance, a lack of conflicts and insecurities.

Some people apparently have boundless, illimitable energy—they’re on the go from morning to night, and often far into the night, working hard, playing hard, never tiring, never “pooped” or “bushed”—and getting twice as much done as any three other human beings.

The adjective is: **indefatigable**

3. no tricks, no secrets
They are pleasingly frank, utterly lacking in pretense or artificiality, in fact quite unable to hide their feelings or thoughts—and so honest and aboveboard that they can scarcely conceive of trickery, chicanery, or dissimulation in anyone. There is, then, about them the simple naturalness and unsophistication of a child.

The adjective is: *ingenuous*

4. sharp as a razor

They have minds like steel traps; their insight into problems that would confuse or mystify people of less keenness or discernment is just short of amazing.

The adjective is: *perspicacious*

5. no placating necessary

They are most generous about forgiving a slight, an insult, an injury. Never do they harbor resentment, store up petty grudges, or waste energy or thought on means of revenge or retaliation. How could they? They’re much too big-hearted.

The adjective is: *magnanimous*

6. one-person orchestras

The range of their aptitudes is truly formidable. If they are writers, they have professional facility in poetry, fiction, biography, criticism, essays—you just mention it and they’ve done it, and very competently. If they are musicians, they can play the oboe, the bassoon, the French horn, the bass viol, the piano, the celesta, the xylophone, even the clavichord if you can dig one up. If they are artists, they use oils, water colors, *gouache*, charcoal, *pen* and ink—they can do anything! Or maybe the range of their abilities cuts across all fields, as in the case of Michelangelo, who was an expert sculptor, painter, poet, architect, and inventor. In case you’re thinking “Jack of all trades...,” you’re wrong—they’re *masters* of all trades.

The adjective is: *versatile*

7. no grumbling

They bear their troubles bravely, never ask for sympathy, never yield to sorrow, never wince at pain. It sounds almost superhuman, but it’s true.

The adjective is: *stoical*

8. no fear
There is not, as the hackneyed phrase has it, a cowardly bone in their bodies. They are strangers to fear, they’re audacious, dauntless, contemptuous of danger and hardship.

The adjective is: intrepid

9. no dullness

They are witty, clever, delightful; and naturally, also, they are brilliant and entertaining conversationalists.

The adjective is: scintillating

10. city slickers

They are cultivated, poised, tactful, socially so experienced, sophisticated, and courteous that they’re at home in any group, at ease under all circumstances of social intercourse. You cannot help admiring (perhaps envying) their smoothness and self-assurance, their tact and congeniality.

The adjective is: urbane

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. convivial kən-VĪ′-ee-əl
2. indefatigable in′-də-FAT′-ə-gə-bəl
3. ingenuous in-JEN′-yoo-əs
4. perspicacious pur′-spə-KAY′-shəs
5. magnanimous məg-NAN′-ə-məs
6. versatile VUR′-sə-təl
7. stoical STÖ′-ə-kəl
8. intrepid in-TREP′-id
9. scintillating SIN′-tə-layt-ing
10. urbane ur-BAYN′

Can you work with the words?
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjective</th>
<th>Synonym</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>convivial</td>
<td>a. frank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>indefatigable</td>
<td>b. unflinching</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ingenuous</td>
<td>c. noble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perspicacious</td>
<td>d. capable in many directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>magnanimous</td>
<td>e. tireless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versatile</td>
<td>f. fearless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoical</td>
<td>g. keen-minded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrepid</td>
<td>h. witty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scintillating</td>
<td>i. friendly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>urbane</td>
<td>j. polished, sophisticated</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words? (I)

*Convivial* people are unfriendly.
TRUE FALSE

Anyone who is *indefatigable* tires easily.
TRUE FALSE

An *ingenious* person is artful and untrustworthy.
TRUE FALSE

A *perspicacious* person is hard to fool.
TRUE FALSE

A *magnanimous* person is easily insulted.
TRUE FALSE

A *versatile* person does many things well.
TRUE FALSE

A *stoical* person always complains of his hard lot.
TRUE FALSE

An *intrepid* explorer is not easily frightened.
TRUE FALSE

A *scintillating* speaker is interesting to listen to.
TRUE FALSE

Someone who is *urbane* is always making enemies.
TRUE FALSE
Do you understand the words? (II)

convivial—hostile
SAME   OPPOSITE
indefatigable—enervated
SAME   OPPOSITE
ingenuous—worldly
SAME   OPPOSITE
perspicacious—obtuse
SAME   OPPOSITE
magnanimous—petty
SAME   OPPOSITE
versatile—well-rounded
SAME   OPPOSITE
stoical—unemotional
SAME   OPPOSITE
intrepid—timid
SAME   OPPOSITE
scintillating—banal
SAME   OPPOSITE
urbane—erude
SAME   OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words?

witty
  1. S______________
noble, forgiving
  2. M______________
capable in many fields
  3. V______________
keen-minded
  4. P______________
uncomplaining
  5. S______________
friendly
  6. C______________
poised; polished
  7. U______________
courageous
  8. I______________
tireless
  9. I______________
simple and honest; frank
10. I______________
KEY: 1–scintillating, 2–magnanimous, 3–versatile, 4–perspicacious, 5–stoical, 6–convivial, 7–urbane, 8–intrepid, 9–indefatigable, 10–ingenuous

(End of Session 32)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. eat, drink, and be merry

The Latin verb *vivo*, to live, and the noun *vita*, life, are the source of a number of important English words.

*Convivo* is the Latin verb to *live together*; from this, in Latin, was formed the noun *convivium* (don’t get impatient; we’ll be back to English directly), which meant a *feast* or *banquet*; and from *convivium* we get our English word *convivial*, an adjective that describes the kind of person who likes to attend feasts and banquets, enjoying (and supplying) the jovial good fellowship characteristic of such gatherings.

Using the suffix -*ity* can you write the noun form of the adjective *convivial*? ______________. (Can you pronounce it?)

2. living it up

Among many others, the following English words derive from Latin *vivo*, to live:

1. *vivacious* (vi-VAY′-shə)—full of the joy of living; animated; peppy—a *vivacious* personality. Noun: *vivacity* (vi-VAS′-ə-tee). You can, as you know, also add -*ness* to any adjective to form a noun. Write the alternate noun form of *vivacious*: ______________.

2. *vivid*—possessing the freshness of life; strong; sharp—a *vivid* imagination; a *vivid* color. Add -*ness* to form the noun: ______________.

3. *revive* (rə-VĪ′)—bring back to life. In the 1960s, men’s fashions of the twenties were *revived*. Noun: *revival* (rə-VĪ′-vəl).

4. *vivisection* (viv′-ə-SEK′-shən)—operating on a live animal. *Sect-* is from a Latin verb meaning to *cut*. *Vivisection* is the process of experimenting on live animals to discover causes and cures of disease. *Antivivisectionists* object to the procedure, though many of our most important medical discoveries were made through *vivisection*.

5. *Viviparous* (vi-VIP′-ə-rəs)—producing live babies. Human beings and most other mammals are *viviparous*. *Viviparous* is contrasted to *oviparous* (ō-VIP′-ə-rəs), producing young from eggs. Most fish, fowl, and other lower forms of life are *oviparous*.

The combining root in both these adjectives is Latin *pareo*, to give birth (*parent* comes from the same root). In *oviparous*, the first two syllables derive from Latin *ovum*, egg.

*Ovum*, egg, is the source of *oval* and *ovoid*, egg-shaped; *ovulate* (ō′-vyl-ə-layt′), to release an egg from the *ovary*: *ovum* (ō-vəm), the female germ cell which, when fertilized by a sperm, develops into an embryo, then into a *fetus* (FEE′-təs), and finally, in about 280 days in the case of humans, is born as an infant.

The adjective form of *ovary* is *ovarian* (ō-VAIR′-ee-ən); of *fetus*, *fetal* (FEE′-təl). Can you...
write the noun form of the verb *ovulate*? ______________.

*Love*, you may or may not be surprised to hear, also comes from *ovum*.

No, not the kind of love you’re thinking of. Latin *ovum* became *oeuf* in French, or with “the” preceding the noun (*the* egg), *Voeuf*, pronounced something like *LOOF*. Zero (picture it for a moment) is shaped like an egg (0), so if your score in tennis is *fifteen*, and your opponent’s is zero, you shout triumphantly, “Fifteen love! Let’s go!”

### 3. more about life

Latin *vita*, life, is the origin of:

1. **vital** (VĪ′-təl)—essential to life; of crucial importance—a vital matter; also full of life, strength, vigor, etc. Add the suffix -*ity* to form the noun: ______________. Add a verb suffix to construct the verb: ______________ (meaning: to give life to). Finally, write the noun derived from the verb you have constructed: ______________.

2. **Revitalize** (ree-VĪ′-tə-līz′) is constructed from the prefix *re-*—again, back, the root *vita*, and the verb suffix. Meaning? ______________. Can you write the noun formed from this verb? ______________.

3. The prefix *de-* has a number of meanings, one of which is essentially negative, as in *defrost*, *decompose*, *declassify*, etc. Using this prefix, can you write a verb meaning to rob of life, to take life from? ______________. Now write the noun form of this verb: ______________.

4. **Vitamin**—one of the many nutritional elements on which life is dependent. Good eyesight requires vitamin A (found, for example, in carrots); strong bones need vitamin D (found in sunlight and cod-liver oil); etc.

 *Vitalize*, *revitalize*, and *devitalize* are used figuratively—for example, a program or plan is vitalized, revitalized, or devitalized, according to how it’s handled.

### 4. French life

Sometimes, instead of getting our English words directly from Latin, we work through one of the Latin-derived or Romance languages. (As you will recall, the Romance languages—French, Spanish, Italian, Portuguese, and Romanian—are so called because they were originally dialects of the old Roman tongue. English, by the way, is not a Romance language, but a Teutonic one. Our tongue is a development of a German dialect imposed on the natives of Britain by the Angles, Saxons, and Jutes of early English history. Though we have taken over into English more than 50 per cent of the Latin vocabulary and almost 30 per cent of the classical Greek vocabulary as roots and prefixes, our basic language is nevertheless German).

The French, using the same Latin root *vivo*, to live, formed two expressive phrases much used in English. French pronunciation is, of course, tricky, and if you are not at least superficially acquainted with that language, your pronunciation may sound a bit awkward to the sophisticated ear—but try it anyway. These phrases are:

1. **joie de vivre**—pronounced something like *zhwahd′-VEEV′* (zh is identical in sound to the *s* of *pleasure*).
Literally *joy of living*, this phrase describes an immense delight in being alive, an effervescent keenness for all the daily activities that human beings indulge in. People who possess *joie de vivre* are never moody, depressed, bored, or apathetic—on the contrary, they are full of sparkle, eager to engage in all group activities, and, most important, always seem to be having a good time, no matter what they are doing. *Joie de vivre* is precisely the opposite of *ennui* (this is also a word of French origin, but is easy to pronounce: AHN′-wee), which is a feeling of boredom, discontent, or weariness resulting sometimes from having a jaded, oversophisticated appetite, sometimes from just finding all of life tedious and unappetizing, and sometimes implying in addition physical lassitude and general inactivity. Young children and simple people rarely experience *ennui*—to them life is always exciting, always new.

2. *bon vivant*, pronounced something like BŌNG′-vee-VAHNG′—the -NG a muted nasal sound similar to the -ng in *sing*.

A *bon vivant* is a person who lives luxuriously, especially in respect to rich food, good liquor, expensive theater parties, operas, and other accouterments of upper-class life. *Bon vivant* means, literally, a *good liver*; actually, a *high liver*, one who lives a luxurious life. When you think of a *bon vivant* (usually, language being sexist, a male), you get the picture of someone attired in top hat, “soup and fish” or tuxedo, raising his cane to call a taxi while a beautiful, evening-gowned and sophisticated-looking woman, sparkling in diamonds and furs, waits at his side. They’re going to a champagne and partridge supper at an outrageously expensive restaurant, etc.—fill in your own details of the high life.

The *bon vivant* is of course a *convivial* person—and also likely to be a *gourmet* (gōr-MAY′), another word from French.

5. food and how to enjoy it

The *gourmand* (GōR′-mænd) enjoys food with a sensual pleasure. To *gourmands* the high spots of the day are the times for breakfast, lunch, dinner, and midnight supper; in short, they like to eat, but the eating must be good. The verb form, *gormandize* (GAWR′-mān-dīz′), however, has suffered a degeneration in meaning—it signifies to stuff oneself like a pig.

A *gourmand* is significantly different from a *gourmet*, who has also a keen interest in food and liquor, but is much more fastidious, is more of a connoisseur, has a most discerning palate for delicate tastes, flavors, and differences; goes in for rare delicacies (like hummingbirds’ tongues and other such absurdities); and approaches the whole business from a scientific, as well as a sensual, viewpoint. *Gourmet* is always a complimentary term, *gourmand* somewhat less so.

The person who eats voraciously, with no discernment whatever, but merely for the purpose of stuffing himself (“I know I haven’t had enough to eat till I feel sick”), is called a *glutton* (GLUT′-ən)—obviously a highly derogatory term. The verb *gluttonize* is stronger than *gormandize*; the adjective *gluttonous* (GLUT′-ə-nəs) is about the strongest epithet you can apply to someone whose voracious eating habits you find repulsive. Someone who has a voracious, insatiable appetite for money, sex, punishment, etc. is also called a *glutton.*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix, Root, Suffix</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
<th>English Word</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. vivo</td>
<td>to live</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ous</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. re-</td>
<td>again, back</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sectus</td>
<td>cut</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. anti-</td>
<td>against</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. ovum</td>
<td>egg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. pareo</td>
<td>to give birth, produce</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. vita</td>
<td>life</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. -ize</td>
<td>verb suffix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. -ation</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>added to verbs</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ending in -ize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. de-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. bon</td>
<td>good</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. -ate

** USING THE WORDS **

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. **conviviality**
   
2. **vivacious**
   
3. **vivacity**
   
4. **vivid**
   
5. **vividness**
   
6. **revive**
   
7. **revival**
   
8. **vivisection**
   
9. **antivivisectionist**
   
10. **viviparous**
   
11. **oviparous**
   
12. **oval**
   
13. **ovoid**
   
14. **ovary**
   
15. **ovarian**
   
16. **ovulate**
   
17. **ovulation**

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. **vital**
   
2. **vitality**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>vitalize</td>
<td>VĪ'-tə-liz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>vitalization</td>
<td>vī'-tə-lə-ZAY'-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>revitalize</td>
<td>ree-VĪ'-tə-liz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>revitalization</td>
<td>ree-vī'-tə-lə-ZAY'-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>devitalize</td>
<td>dee-VĪ'-tə-liz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>devitalization</td>
<td>dee-vī'-tə-lə-ZAY'-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>joie de vivre</td>
<td>zhwahd'-VEEV'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>ennui</td>
<td>AHN'-wee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>bon vivant</td>
<td>BŌNG' vee-VAHNGT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12.</td>
<td>gourmand</td>
<td>GōoR'-mənd</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td>gourmet</td>
<td>gōr-MAY'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td>gormandize</td>
<td>GAWR'-mən-diz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td>glutton</td>
<td>GLUT'-ən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td>gluttonous</td>
<td>GLUT-ə-nəs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td>gluttonize</td>
<td>GLUT'-ə-nīz'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td>vitamin</td>
<td>VĪ'-tə-min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can you work with the words? (I)**

1. oval, ovoid  
   a. peppy  
2. revitalize  
   b. bearing live young  
3. gluttonous  
   c. strong, sharp  
4. vivacious  
   d. piggish; greedy  
5. vivid  
   e. egg-shaped  
6. viviparous  
   f. bearing young in eggs  
7. oviparous  
   g. give new life to
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. conviviality
2. vivisection
3. antivivisectionist
4. ovulation
5. vitality
6. joie de vivre
7. ennui
8. bon vivant
9. gourmand
10. gourmet
11. glutton

a. release of the egg
b. a “high liver”
c. experimentation on live animals
d. one who is a connoisseur of good food
e. effervescence; joy of living
f. one who enjoys food
g. one who eats greedily; one who is greedy (as for punishment, etc.)
h. boredom
i. congeniality
j. strength, vigor
k. one who is against experimentation on live animals
Can you work with the words? (III)

1. revive  
   a. rob of life or strength
2. vital  
   b. nutritional element necessary for life
3. vitalize  
   c. important, crucial
4. devitalize  
   d. stuff oneself like a pig
5. gluttonize  
   e. breathe life into
6. vitamin  
   f. bring back to life
Do you understand the words? (I)

conviviality—asceticism
SAME    OPPOSITE
vivacious—apathetic
SAME    OPPOSITE
vivid—dull
SAME    OPPOSITE
revive—kill
SAME    OPPOSITE
revitalize—rejuvenate
SAME    OPPOSITE
ennui—boredom
SAME    OPPOSITE
bon vivant—“man about town”
SAME    OPPOSITE
gormandize—starve
SAME    OPPOSITE
glutton—ascetic
SAME    OPPOSITE
joie de vivre—boredom
SAME    OPPOSITE
Do you understand the words? (II)

vivacity—liveliness
SAME   OPPOSITE

revival—renewal
SAME   OPPOSITE

vivisection—experimentation on corpses
SAME   OPPOSITE

ovulation—egg-releasing
SAME   OPPOSITE

devitalize—reinvigorate
SAME   OPPOSITE

vitality—fatigue
SAME   OPPOSITE

gluttonous—greedy
SAME   OPPOSITE

gourmand—ascetic
SAME   OPPOSITE

ovoid—egg-shaped
SAME   OPPOSITE
Do you understand the words? (III)

Humans are *viviparous*.
TRUE FALSE

Cows are *oviparous*.
TRUE FALSE

*Ovulation* takes places in females only when they are married.
TRUE FALSE

An *antivivisectionist* believes in experimenting on live animals.
TRUE FALSE

*Vitamins* are essential to good health.
TRUE FALSE

A *bon vivant* lives like a hermit.
TRUE FALSE

A *gourmet* stuffs himself with food.
TRUE FALSE

It is normal for young children to be overwhelmed with *ennui*.
TRUE FALSE

People who are keenly alive possess *joie de vivre*.
TRUE FALSE
Can you recall the words?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Function</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>bearing young by eggs (adj.)</td>
<td>O________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bearing live young (adj.)</td>
<td>V________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>good-fellowship</td>
<td>C________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>operating on live animals</td>
<td>V________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one who is opposed to such an activity</td>
<td>A________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>the process of releasing an egg from the ovary</td>
<td>O________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to remove life or vigor from</td>
<td>D________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>joy of living</td>
<td>J________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one who eats like a pig</td>
<td>G________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a “high liver”</td>
<td>B________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one who is a connoisseur of good food</td>
<td>G________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>one who gets a sensual enjoyment from good food</td>
<td>G________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>to stuff oneself like a pig; to eat greedily</td>
<td>G________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boredom; discontent; tedium</td>
<td>E________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>liveliness, pep</td>
<td>V________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boredom; discontent; tedium</td>
<td>V________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boredom; discontent; tedium</td>
<td>V________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>boredom; discontent; tedium</td>
<td>V________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>egg-shaped</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16. O_____________
   to bring renewed life or vigor to
17. R_____________
   or O_____________
   referring to the ovary (*adj.*)
18. O_____________
   essential to life; crucial; of utmost importance
19. V_____________
KEY: 1–oviparous,  2–viviparous,  3–conviviality,  4–vivisection,  5–antivivisectionist,  6–ovulation,  7–devitalize,  8–joie de vivre,  9–glutton,  10–bon vivant,  11–gourmet,  12–gourmand,  13–gluttonize or gormandize,  14–ennui,  15–vivacity,  vivaciousness, or vitality,  16–oval or ovoid,  17–revitalize or revive,  18–ovarian,  19–vital

(End of Session 33)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. no fatigue

*Indefatigable* is a derived form of *fatigue*—*in-* is a negative prefix, the suffix *-able* means *able to be*; hence, literally, *indefatigable* means *unable to be fatigued*. The noun is *indefatigability* (in′-do-fat′-ə-gə-BIL′-ə-tee).

2. how simple can one be?

*Ingenuous* is a complimentary term, though its synonyms *naïve*, *gullible*, and *credulous* are faintly derogatory.

To call people *ingenuous* implies that they are frank, open, artless—in other words, not likely to try to put anything over on you, nor apt to hide feelings or thoughts that more sophisticated persons would consider it wise, tactful, or expedient to conceal.

*Ingenuous* should not be confused with *ingenious* (in-JEEN′-yəs)—note the slight difference in spelling—which on the contrary means *shrewd, clever, inventive*.

The noun form of *ingenuous* is *ingenuousness*; of *ingenious*, *ingenuity* (in′-jə-NÖ′-ə-tee) or *ingeniousness*.

To call people *naïve* (nah-EEV′) is to imply that they have not learned the ways of the world, and are therefore idealistic and trusting beyond the point of safety; such idealism and trust have probably come from ignorance or inexperience. The noun is *naïveté* (nah-eev-TAY′).

*Credulous* (KREJ′-ə-ləs) implies a willingness to believe almost anything, no matter how fantastic. *Credulity* (krə-JÖO′-lə-tee), like *naïveté*, usually results, again, from ignorance or inexperience, or perhaps from an inability to believe that human beings are capable of lying.

*Gullible* (GUL′-ə-bəl) means *easily tricked, easily fooled, easily imposed on*. It is a stronger word than *credulous* and is more derogatory. *Gullibility* (gul′-ə-BIL′-ə-tee) results more from stupidity than from ignorance or inexperience.

These four synonyms, *ingenuous*, *naïve*, *credulous*, and *gullible*, are fairly close, but they contain areas of distinction worth remembering. Let’s review them:

1. *ingenuous*—frank, not given to concealment
2. *naïve*—inexperienced, unsophisticated, trusting
3. *credulous*—willing to believe; not suspicious or skeptical
4. *gullible*—easily tricked
3. belief and disbelief

Credulous comes from Latin credo, to believe, the same root found in credit (if people believe in your honesty, they will extend credit to you; they will credit what you say). -Ous is an adjective suffix that usually signifies full of. So, strictly, credulous means full of believingness.

Do not confuse credulous with credible. (KRED′-ə-bəl). In the latter word we see combined the root credo, believe, with -ible, a suffix meaning can be. Something credible can be believed.

Let’s chart some differences:

Credulous listeners—those who fully believe what they hear
A credible story—one that can be believed
An incredulous (in-KREJ′-ə-ləs) attitude—an attitude of skepticism, of non-belief
An incredible (in-KRED′-ə-bəl) story—one that cannot be believed
Incredible characters—persons who are so unique that you can scarcely believe they exist.

Nouns are formed as follows:

credulous—credulity (krə-JOO′-ə-tee)
incredulous—incredulity (in-krə-JOO′-ə-tee)
credible—credibility (kred′-ə-BIL′-ə-tee)
incredible—incredibility (in-kred′-ə-BIL′-ə-tee)

To check your understanding of these distinctions, try the next test.

Can you use these words correctly?

Use credulous, credible, or corresponding negative or noun forms in the following sentences:

1. She listened ___________ly to her husband’s confession of his frequent infidelity, for she had always considered him a paragon of moral uprightness.
2. He told his audience an ___________ and fantastic story of his narrow escapes.
3. He’ll believe you—he’s very ___________.
4. Make your characters more ___________ if you want your readers to believe in them.
5. We listened dumb-struck, full of ___________, to the shocking details of corruption and vice.
6. He has the most ___________ good luck.
7. The ___________ of it! How can such things happen?
8. Naïve people accept with complete ___________, whatever anyone tells them.
9. “Do you believe me?” “Sure—your story is ___________ enough.”
10. I’m not objecting to the total ___________ of your story, but only to your thinking that
I’m ____________ enough to believe it!
4. what people believe in

*Credo*, to believe, is the origin of four other useful English words.

1. **Credo** (KREE′-do)—personal belief, code of ethics; the principles by which people guide their actions.
2. **Creed**—a close synonym of *credo*; in addition, a religious belief, such as Catholicism, Judaism, Protestantism, Hinduism, etc.
3. **Credence** (KREE′-dəns)—belief, as in, “I place no *credence* in his stories.” or “Why should I give any *credence* to what you say?”
4. **Credentials** (krə-DEN′-shəls)—a document or documents proving a person’s right to a title or privilege (i.e., a right to be believed), as in, “The new ambassador presented his *credentials* to the State Department.”

5. heads and tails

We can hardly close our book on the words suggested by *ingenuous* without looking at the other side of the coin. If *ingenuous* means *frank, open*, then *disingenuous* (dis-in-JEN′-yoo-əs) should mean *not frank or open*. But *disingenuous* people are far more than simply *not ingenuous*. They are crafty, cunning, dishonest, artful, insincere, untrustworthy—and they are all of these while making a pretense of being simple, frank, and aboveboard. You are thinking of a wolf in sheep’s clothing? It’s a good analogy.

Similarly, a remark may be *disingenuous*, as may also a statement, an attitude, a confession, etc.

Add *-ness* to form the noun derived from *disingenuous*: ______________.

**REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. in-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. -ness</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. credo</td>
<td>to believe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ENGLISH WORD

4. -ous

ENGLISH WORD

5. -ible

ENGLISH WORD

6. -ity

ENGLISH WORD

7. -ence

ENGLISH WORD

8. dis-

ENGLISH WORD

9. indefatigability

ENGLISH WORD

10. ingenuousness

ENGLISH WORD

11. ingenious

ENGLISH WORD

12. ingenuity

ENGLISH WORD

13. naïve

ENGLISH WORD

14. naïveté

ENGLISH WORD

15. credulous

ENGLISH WORD

16. incredulous

ENGLISH WORD

17. gullible

ENGLISH WORD

18. gullibility

ENGLISH WORD

19. credible

ENGLISH WORD

20. incredible

ENGLISH WORD

21. credulity

ENGLISH WORD

22. incredulity

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. indefatigability

2. ingenuousness

3. ingenious

4. ingenuity

5. naïve

6. naïveté

7. credulous

8. incredulous

9. gullible

10. gullibility

11. credible

12. incredible

13. credulity

14. incredulity
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORDS</th>
<th>DEFINITIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. indefatigability</td>
<td>a. cunning</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ingenuousness</td>
<td>b. skepticism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. disingenuousness</td>
<td>c. personal code of ethics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. naïveté</td>
<td>d. frankness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. credibility</td>
<td>e. belief, trust</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. incredulity</td>
<td>f. tirelessness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. credence</td>
<td>g. believability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. credo</td>
<td>h. inexperience; unworldliness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. inexperience</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. unworldliness</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22. credo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. ingenious  
   a. easily tricked
2. credulous  
   b. religious belief
3. gullible   
   c. inexperienced; unworldly
4. incredible 
   d. document proving privileges, identity, etc.
5. creed      
   e. unbelievable
6. credentials 
   f. shrewdness; cleverness
7. ingenuity  
   g. clever; inventive; shrewd
8. naïve      
   h. willing to believe
Do you understand the words?

Is *indefatigability* a sign of physical and emotional health?
YES   NO

Is *ingenuousness* a normal quality of young childhood?
YES   NO

Is *ingenuity* a characteristic of inventors?
YES   NO

Are some adolescents *naïve*?
YES   NO

Are unintelligent people often *gullible*?
YES   NO

Is *incredulity* the mark of the agnostic?
YES   NO

Does an *incredible* story invite belief?
YES   NO

Do people generally live by a *credo*?
YES   NO

Does our Constitution guarantee certain rights to Americans irrespective of their *creed*?
YES   NO

Are *ingenious* people sometimes *disingenuous*?
YES   NO

Do we generally give *credence* to *incredible* statements?
YES   NO
Can you recall the words?

inexperience; unsophistication
  1. N__________________
believing (adj.)
  2. C__________________
religious belief
  3. C__________________
believable
  4. C__________________
great reservoir of energy
  5. I__________________
frankness
  6. I__________________
crafty; dishonest
  7. D__________________
innovative; clever
  8. I__________________
easily tricked
  9. G__________________
skeptical
10. I__________________
unbelievable
11. I__________________
personal code
12. C__________________

(End of Session 34)
1. how to look

The Latin root *specto*, to look, is the source of a host of common English words: *spectacle*, *spectator*, *inspect*, *retrospect* (a looking back), *prospect* (a looking ahead), etc. In a variant spelling, *spic-* , the root is found in *conspicuous* (easily seen or looked at), *perspicacious*, and *perspicuous*.

A *perspicacious* (*pur′-spə-KAY′-shəs*) person is keen-minded, mentally sharp, astute. *Per-* is a prefix meaning *through*; so the word etymologically means *looking through* (matters, etc.) keenly, intelligently. The noun: *perspicacity* (*pur′-spə-KAS′-ə-tee*). Write an alternate noun ending in *-ness*:

*Perspicacity* is a synonym of *acumen* (*AK′-yoo′-mən*), mental keenness, sharpness, quickness; keen insight. The root is Latin *acuo*, to sharpen.

2. sharpness

From *acuo*, to sharpen, come such words as *acute*, sharp, sudden, as *acute pain*, an *acute* attack of appendicitis, *acute* reasoning, etc; and *acupuncture* (*AK′-yoo-punk′-chər*), the insertion of a (sharp) needle into the body for medical purposes. The noun form of *acute*, referring to the mind or thinking, is *acuteness* or *acuity* (*ə-KYOO-ə-tee*); in other contexts, *acuteness* only.

*Acupuncture* combines *acuo*, to sharpen, with *punctus*, point. When you *punctuate* a sentence, you put various *points* (periods, commas, etc.) where needed; when lightning *punctuates* the storm, or when the silence is *punctuated* by the wailing of police sirens, again *points*, etymologically speaking, interrupt the atmosphere, the quiet, etc.

If you are *punctual*, you’re right on the point of time (noun: *punctuality*); if you’re *punctilious* (*punk-TIL′-ee-əs*), you are exact, scrupulous, very careful to observe the proper *points* of behavior, procedure, etc. (noun: *punctiliousness*). And to *puncture* something, of course, is to make a hole in it with a sharp *point*—as to *puncture* someone’s tire, or figuratively, illusions, fantasies, or ego. *Pungent* (*PUN′-jənt*) comes from another form of the root *punctus* (*pungo*, to pierce sharply), so a *pungent* smell or taste is sharp, spicy, pricking the nose or taste buds, so to speak; and a *pungent* wit sharply pierces one’s sense of humor. Can you write the noun forms of this adjective? _______________ or ______________.

3. some more looking
Perspicacious should not be confused with perspicuous (pər-SPIK′-yoo′-səs). Here is the important distinction:

Perspicacious means smart, sharp, able to look through and understand quickly. This adjective applies to persons, their reasoning, minds, etc.

Perspicuous is the obverse side of the coin—it means easily understood from one look, and applies to writing, style, books, and like things that have to be understood. Hence it is a synonym of clear, simple, lucid. If you write with perspicuous style, your language is clear, easy to understand. If you are perspicacious, you understand quickly, easily.

The noun form of perspicuous is perspicuity (pur′-spə-KYOO′-ə-tee), or, of course, perspicuousness.

A spectacle is something to look at; spectacles (eyeglasses) are the means by which you get a comfortable and accurate look at the world. Anything spectacular is, etymologically, worth looking at.

A spectator is one who looks at what’s happening.

To inspect is to look into something.

Retrospect (RET′-rə-spekt′) is a backward look—generally the word is preceded by the preposition in, for instance, “His life in retrospect seemed dreary and dull,” or “Most experiences seem more enjoyable in retrospect than in actuality” (retro-, backward).

Prospect (PROS′-pekt′) is a forward look; prospective (prə-SPEK′-tiv) is the adjective. What’s the prospect for inflation, for world peace, for the domestic energy supply? Your prospective mother-in-law is the one you can look forward to if you marry a certain person; similarly, your prospective bride, groom, child, job, vacation, etc. is the person, thing, or activity in the future that you look forward to. (The prefix is pro-, forward, ahead, before.)

If you enjoy looking at yourself, figuratively speaking, then you like to examine your mental processes and emotional reactions, in the intense way characteristic of the introvert (see Chapter 3). Your mind’s eye turns inward, and you spend a good deal of time analyzing yourself, your character, your personality, your actions. Hence, since you look inward, you are introspective (in′-trə-SPEK′-tiv)—the prefix is intro-, inside, within. If you introspect (in′-trə-SPEKT′), you look inward and examine your inner reactions. Too much introspection (in′-trə-SPEKT′-shən) or introspectiveness may lead to unhappiness or to depressing thoughts or feelings of anxiety—few people have the courage to see themselves as they really are.

There are times when you have to look around most carefully; you must then be circumspect (SUR′-kəm-spekt′)—watchful, cautious, alert (circum-, around).

The noun is circumspection (sur′-kəm-SPEK′-shən) or circumspectness.

If something looks good or sensible, but actually is not, we call it specious (SPEE′-shəs). A specious argument sounds plausible, but in reality is based on an error, a fallacy, or an untruth. The noun is speciousness.

**REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>intro-</td>
<td>inside, within</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pro-</td>
<td>forward, ahead, before</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>retro-</td>
<td>backward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>specious</td>
<td>plausible, but actually not</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. specto
   to look

2. per-
   through

3. acuo
   to sharpen

4. punctus
   point

5. -ate
   verb suffix

6. -al
   adjective suffix

7. pungo
   to pierce sharply

8. -ent
   adjective suffix

9. -ence, -ency
   noun suffixes

10. -ness
    noun suffix

11. -ity
    noun suffix

12. retro-
    backward

13. pro-
    forward, ahead, before

14. intro-
    inside, within

15. -ion
    noun suffix
ENGLISH WORD  __________
16. -ive adjective suffix

ENGLISH WORD  __________
17. circum- around

ENGLISH WORD  __________

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. perspicacious  pur′-spə-KAY′-shəs
2. perspicacity  pur′-spə-KAYS′-ə-tee
3. acumen  AK′-yOO′-mən
4. acute  ə-KYOO′T′
5. acuity  ə-KYOO′-ə-tee
6. acupuncture  AK′-yOO-punk′-chər
7. punctuate  PUNK′-choo-ayt′
8. punctilious  punk-TIL′-ee-əs
9. puncture  PUNK′-chər
10. pungent  PUN′-jənt
11. pungence  PUN′-jənς
12. pungency  PUN′-jən-see

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. perspicuous  pər-SPIK′-yoo-əs
2. perspicuity  pur′-spə-KYOO′-ə-tee
3. retrospect  RET′-rə-spekt′
4. prospect  PROS′-pekt′
5. prospective  prə-SPEK′-tɪv
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>introspective</td>
<td>in′-trə-SPEK′-tiv</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>introspect</td>
<td>in′-trə-SPEKT′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8.</td>
<td>introspection</td>
<td>in′-trə-SPEK′-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9.</td>
<td>circumspect</td>
<td>SUR′-kəm-spekt′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10.</td>
<td>circumspection</td>
<td>sur′-kəm-SPEK′-shən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11.</td>
<td>specious</td>
<td>SPEE′-shəs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can you work with the words? (I)**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>perspicacious</td>
<td>a. extremely careful, exact, or proper in procedure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>acumen</td>
<td>b. clear; easy to understand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>acupuncture</td>
<td>c. a forward look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>punctilious</td>
<td>d. looking inside, or examining or analyzing, oneself</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>pungent</td>
<td>e. keen-minded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>perspicuous</td>
<td>f. sharp; spicy; piercing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>retrospect</td>
<td>g. careful, watchful, wary, cautious; “looking around”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>prospect</td>
<td>h. sharpness of mind or thinking</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>introspective</td>
<td>i. a backward look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>circumspect</td>
<td>j. medical insertion of needles</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. acute
   a. pierce; make a hole in; (noun) a small hole

2. acuity
   b. clarity; lucidity; ability to be understood quickly and easily

3. punctuate
   c. sounding plausible, or looking right, but actually false or untrue

4. puncture
   d. in the future; describing that which, or one who, can be looked forward to

5. pungence, pungency
   e. care; watchfulness; caution

6. perspicuity
   f. sharp; sudden; keen-minded

7. prospective
   g. tending to examine and to think about one’s motives, feelings, etc.

8. introspective
   h. interrupt sharply or suddenly

9. circumspection
   i. sharpness or spiciness of taste, smell, wit, etc.

10. specious
    j. keenness of mind, thinking, or intellect
Do you understand the words?

perspicacious—dull-witted
SAME          OPPOSITE
acumen—stupidity
SAME          OPPOSITE
acute—sharp
SAME          OPPOSITE
acuity—perspicacity
SAME          OPPOSITE
punctilious—casual
SAME          OPPOSITE
pungent—flat, dull
SAME          OPPOSITE
perspicuous—clear
SAME          OPPOSITE
retrospect—backward look
SAME          OPPOSITE
prospect—expectation
SAME          OPPOSITE
introspective—extroverted
SAME          OPPOSITE
prospective—in the past
SAME          OPPOSITE
circumspect—careless
SAME          OPPOSITE
specious—true
SAME          OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words? (I)

plausible, but false or incorrect
1. S__________________
spiciness, sharpness; piercing quality
2. P__________________
or P__________________
clear; easily understood
3. P__________________
sharpness of mind or of intelligence
4. A__________________
or A__________________
or A__________________
care and caution; wariness
5. C__________________
or C__________________
piercing of the skin with needles for medical purposes
6. A__________________
tending to examine one’s motives, etc.; looking inward (adj.)
7. I__________________
extact in the observance of proper procedure
8. P__________________
to pierce and make a small hole in
9. P__________________
a backward look or view
10. R__________________
Can you recall the words? (II)

keenness of mind
1. P__________
or P__________
2. A__________
to interrupt suddenly
3. P__________
spicy; piercing in taste, smell, wit, etc.
4. P__________
clarity; clearness of style or language
5. P__________
or P__________
keen-minded; perceptive
6. P__________
a look forward
7. P__________
act or process of looking inward
8. I__________
carefully looking around; cautious; wary
9. C__________
anticipated; “to be”; looked forward to (adj.)
10. P__________
KEY:  1–perspicacity or perspicaciousness, 2–acute, 3–punctuate, 4–pungent, 5–perspicuity or perspicuousness, 6–perspicacious, 7–prospect, 8–introspection, 9–circumspect, 10–prospective

(End of Session 35)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. the great and the small

You are familiar with Latin \textit{animus}, mind. \textit{Animus} and a related root, \textit{anima}, life principle, soul, spirit (in a sense, these meanings are all very similar), are the source of such words as \textit{animal}, \textit{animate} and \textit{inanimate}, \textit{animated}, and \textit{animation}; knowing the meaning of the roots, you have a better understanding of any word built on them.

\textit{Magnanimous} contains, in addition to \textit{animus}, mind, the root \textit{magnus}, large, great, which you recall from \textit{magniloquent}. \textit{Magnanimous} people have such great, noble minds or souls that they are beyond seeking petty revenge.

The noun is \textit{magnanimity} (mag′-nə-NIM′-ə-tee).

On the other hand, people who have tiny, tiny minds or souls are \textit{pusillanimous} (pyəʊ′-sə-LAN′-ə-mes)—Latin \textit{pusillus}, tiny. Hence, they are contemptibly petty and mean. The noun is \textit{pusillanimity} (pyəʊ′-sə-lə-NIM′-ə-tee).

Other words built on \textit{animus}, mind:

1. \textit{unanimous} (yə-NAN′-ə-məs)—of one mind. If the Supreme Court hands down a \textit{unanimous} opinion, all the judges are of one mind (Latin \textit{unus}, one). The noun is \textit{unanimity} (yə′-nə-NIM′-ə-tee).

2. \textit{equanimity} (ee′-kwə-NIM′-ə-tē or ek′-wə-NIM′-ə-tee)—etymologically, “equal (or balanced) mind.” Hence, evenness or calmness of mind; composure. If you preserve your \textit{equanimity} under trying circumstances, you keep your temper, you do not get confused, you remain calm (Latin \textit{aequus}, equal).

3. \textit{animus} (AN′-ə-məs)—hostility, ill will, malevolence. Etymologically, \textit{animus} is simply \textit{mind}, but has degenerated, as words often do, to mean \textit{unfriendly mind}. The word is most often used in a pattern like, “I bear you no \textit{animus}, even though you have tried to destroy me.” (Such a statement shows real \textit{magnanimity}!) 

4. \textit{animosity} (an′-ə-MOS′-ə-tee)—ill will, hostility. An exact synonym of \textit{animus}, and a more common word. It is used in patterns like, “You feel a good deal of \textit{animosity}, don’t you?”, “There is real \textit{animosity} between Bill and Ernie,” “If you bear me no \textit{animosity}, why do you treat me so badly?”

2. turning

\textit{Versatile} comes from \textit{vertō}, \textit{versus}, to turn—\textit{versatile} people can turn their hand to many things successfully. The noun is \textit{versatility} (vər′-sə-TIL′-ə-tee).
3. Zeno and the front porch

Centuries ago, in ancient Greece, the philosopher Zeno lectured on a topic that still piques the human mind, to wit: “How to Live a Happy Life.” Zeno would stand on a porch (the Greek word for which is *stoa*) and hold forth somewhat as follows: people should free themselves from intense emotion, be unmoved by both joy and sorrow, and submit without complaint to unavoidable necessity.

Today, psychologists suggest pretty much the exact opposite—let your emotions flow freely, express your love or animosity, don’t bottle up your feelings. But in the fourth century B.C., when Zeno was expounding his credo, his philosophy of control of the passions fell on receptive ears. His followers were called *Stoics*, after the *stoa*, or porch, from which the master lectured.

If we call people *stoical*, we mean that they bear their pain or sorrow without complaint, they meet adversity with unflinching fortitude. This sounds very noble, you will admit—actually, according to modern psychological belief, it is healthier not to be so *stoical*. *Stoicism* (STŌ′-ə-siz-əm) may be an admirable virtue (mainly because we do not then have to listen to the stoic’s troubles), but it can be overdone.

4. Fear and trembling

*Intrepid* is from Latin *trepidio*, to tremble. *Intrepid* people exhibit courage and fearlessness (and not a single tremble!) when confronted by dangers from which you and I would run like the cowards we are. (You recognize the negative prefix *in*-.)

The noun: *intrepidity* (in′-trə-PID′-ə-tee), or, of course, *intrepidness*.

*Trepid* is the source also of *trepidation* (trep′-ə-DAY′-shən)—great fear, trembling, or alarm.

5. Quick flash

*Scintilla*, in Latin, is a quick, bright spark; in English the word *scintilla* (sin-TIL′-ə) may also mean a *spark*, but more commonly refers to a very small particle (which, in a sense, a spark is), as in, “There was not a *scintilla* of evidence against him.”

In the verb *scintillate* (SIN′-tə-layt′), the idea of the spark remains; someone who *scintillates* sparkles with charm and wit, flashes brightly with humor. The noun is *scintillation* (sin′-tə-LAY′-shən).

6. City and country

People who live in the big city go to theaters, attend the opera, visit museums and picture galleries, browse in bookstores, and shop at Robinson’s, Bloomingdale’s, Marshall Field, or other large department stores. These activities fill them with culture and sophistication.

Also, they crowd into jammed subway trains or buses, squeeze into packed elevators,
cross the street in competition with high-powered motorcars, patiently stand in line outside of movie houses, and then wait again in the lobby for seats to be vacated.

Also, they have the privilege of spending two hours a day going to and coming from work.

As a result, city-dwellers are refined, polished, courteous—or so the etymology of *urbane* (from Latin *urbs*, city) tells us. (And you must be absurdly credulous, if not downright gullible, to believe it.) The noun is *urbanity* (ur-BAN'-ə-tee).

So *urbane* people are gracious, affable, cultivated, suave, tactful—add any similar adjectives you can think of.

*Urban* (UR′-bən) as an adjective simply refers to cities—*urban* affairs, *urban* areas, *urban* populations, *urban* life, *urban* development, etc.

Consider some prefixes: *sub*-, near; *inter*-, between; *intra*-, inside, within; *ex*-, out.

Add each prefix to the root *urbs*, using the adjective suffix -an:

- sub__________________: near the city
  
  *(Sub- has a number of meanings: under, near, close to, etc.)*

- inter__________________: between cities

- intra__________________: within a city

- ex__________________: out of the city

The *suburbs* are residential sections, or small communities, close to a large city; Larchmont is a *suburb* of New York City, Whittier a *suburb* of Los Angeles.

*Suburbia* (sə-BUR′-bee-ə) may designate *suburbs* as a group; *suburban* residents, or *suburbanites* (sə-BUR′-bə-nətəz′), as a group; or the typical manners, modes of living, customs, etc. of suburban residents.

An *interurban* bus travels *between* cities, an *intraurban* bus *within* a single city.

An *exurb* (EKS′-urb) lies well beyond, way outside, a large city, and generally refers to a region inhabited by well-to-do families. *Exurb* has derived forms corresponding to those of *suburb*. Can you construct them?

- Plural noun: ______________________
- Adjective: ______________________
- Resident: ______________________
- As a group; manners, customs, etc.: ______________________

*Urbs* is the city; Latin *rus*, *ruris* is the country, i.e., farmland, fields, etc. So *rural* (Rū′l) refers to country or farm regions, agriculture, etc.—a wealthy *rural* area.

*Rustic* (RUS′-tik) as an adjective may describe furniture or dwellings made of roughhewn wood, or furnishings suitable to a farmhouse; or, when applied to a person, is an antonym of *urbane*—unsophisticated, boorish, lacking in social graces, uncultured. Noun: *rusticity* (rus-TIS′-ə-tee). *Rustic* is also a noun designating a person with such characteristics, as in, “He was considered a *rustic* by his classmates, all of whom came from cultured and wealthy
Urbane and rustic, when applied to people, are emotionally charged words. **Urbane** is complimentary, **rustic** derogatory.¹

To **rusticate** (RUS′-tə-kayt′) is to spend time in the country, away from the turmoil and tensions of big-city life. Can you construct the noun? ____________.

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. animus</td>
<td>mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. anima</td>
<td>soul, spirit, life principle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. magnus</td>
<td>large, great</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pusillus</td>
<td>tiny</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. unus</td>
<td>one</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. aequus (equ-)</td>
<td>equal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. verto, versus</td>
<td>to turn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. stoa</td>
<td>porch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. in-</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. trepido</td>
<td>to tremble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. scintilla</td>
<td>a spark</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English Word</td>
<td>________________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. urbs  
ENGLISH WORD __________ city

13. sub-  
ENGLISH WORD __________ near, close to, under

14. inter-  
ENGLISH WORD __________ between

15. intra-  
ENGLISH WORD __________ within, inside

16. ex-  
ENGLISH WORD __________ out

17. rus, ruris  
ENGLISH WORD __________ country, farmlands

18. -ate  
ENGLISH WORD __________ verb suffix

19. -ion  
ENGLISH WORD __________ noun suffix added to -ate verbs

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. magnanimity mag′-nə-NIM′-ə-tee
2. pusillanurous pyə-sə-LAN′-ə-məs
3. pusillanimity pyə-sə-lə-NIM′-ə-tee
4. unanimous yə-nə-NAN′-ə-məs
5. unanimity yə-nə-NIM′-ə-tee
6. equanimity eek′ (or ek′)-wə-NIM′-ə-tee
7. animus AN′-ə-məs
8. animosity an′-ə-MOS′-ə-tee
9. versatility vur′-sə-TIL′-ə-tee
10. stoic \(\text{STŌ}^\prime\text{-ik}\)
11. stoicism \(\text{STŌ}^\prime\text{-ə-siz-əm}\)

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. intrepidity \(\text{in}^\prime\text{-trə-PID}^\prime\text{-ə-tee}\)
2. trepidation \(\text{trep}^\prime\text{-ə-DAY}^\prime\text{-shən}\)
3. scintilla \(\text{sin-TIL}^\prime\text{-ə}\)
4. scintillate \(\text{SIN}^\prime\text{-tə-layt}^\prime\)
5. scintillation \(\text{sin}^\prime\text{-tə-LAY}^\prime\text{-shən}\)
6. urbanity \(\text{ur-BAN}^\prime\text{-ə-tee}\)
7. suburbia \(\text{sə-BUR}^\prime\text{-bee-ə}\)
8. interurban \(\text{in}^\prime\text{-tər-UR}^\prime\text{-bən}\)
9. intraurban \(\text{in}^\prime\text{-trə-UR}^\prime\text{-bən}\)
10. exurbs \(\text{EKS}^\prime\text{-urbz}\)
11. exurban \(\text{eks-UR}^\prime\text{-bən}\)
12. exurbanite \(\text{eks-UR}^\prime\text{-bən-ɪt}^\prime\)
13. exurbia \(\text{eks-UR}^\prime\text{-bee-ə}\)

Can you pronounce the words? (III)

1. rural \(\text{Roor}^\prime\text{-əl}\)
2. rustic \(\text{RUS}^\prime\text{-tik}\)
3. rusticity \(\text{rus-TIS}^\prime\text{-ə-tee}\)
4. rusticate \(\text{RUS}^\prime\text{-tə-kayt}^\prime\)
5. rustication \(\text{rus}^\prime\text{-tə-KAY}^\prime\text{-shən}\)
6. pejorative \(\text{pə-JAWR}^\prime\text{-ə-tiv}\)

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. magnanimity a. calmness, composure
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Term</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>pusillanimity</td>
<td>b. ability either to do many different things well, or to function successfully in many areas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>unanimity</td>
<td>c. fearlessness; great courage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equanimity</td>
<td>d. unemotionality; bearing of pain, etc. without complaint</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>animosity</td>
<td>e. big-heartedness; generosity; quality of forgiving easily</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>versatility</td>
<td>f. a sparkling with wit or cleverness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>stoicism</td>
<td>g. fear and trembling; alarm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>intrepidity</td>
<td>h. complete agreement, all being of one mind</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trepidation</td>
<td>i. petty-mindedness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>scintillation</td>
<td>j. anger, hostility, resentment, hatred</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. **urbanity**  
   a. referring to the countryside

2. **suburbia**  
   b. word with negative or derogatory connotation; describing such a word or words

3. **exurbia**  
   c. to spend time in the country

4. **animus**  
   d. residential areas near big cities; customs, etc. of the inhabitants of such areas

5. **interurban**  
   e. residential areas far from big cities; customs, etc. of the inhabitants of such areas

6. **intraurban**  
   f. between cities

7. **rural**  
   g. roughhewn, farmlike; unsophisticated, uncultured

8. **rustic**  
   h. sophistication, courtesy, polish, etc.

9. **rusticate**  
   i. anger, hatred, hostility

10. **pejorative**  
    j. within one city
(End of Session 36)
SESSION 37

READY FOR A STRONG REVIEW?

Drill, drill, drill! This is the important secret of learning words thoroughly. Review, review, review! This is the secret of remembering, assimilating, digesting, and keeping as permanent acquisitions all the new words you have learned. So pitch in with enthusiasm to the rest of this chapter, made up of a series of valuable tests on all the chapter words. Ready?

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. retrospect a. complete agreement
2. acumen b. pettiness
3. magnanimity c. malevolence
4. pusillanimity d. backward look
5. unanimity e. calmness
6. equanimity f. ability in many fields
7. animosity g. mental keenness
8. versatility h. generosity
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>English</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>stoicism</td>
<td>d. uncomplaining attitude to pain or trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>intrepidity</td>
<td>b. sparkle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>trepidation</td>
<td>c. inward look</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>scintillation</td>
<td>d. uncomplaining attitude to pain or trouble</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>urbanity</td>
<td>e. falsity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>introspection</td>
<td>f. polish, cultivation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>circumspection</td>
<td>g. care, cautiousness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>speciousness</td>
<td>h. fear</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can you work with the words? (II)**
Can you work with the words? (III)

1. exurbs                       a. of one mind
2. pusillanimous                b. ill will
3. unanimous                   c. pertaining to the city
4. animus                      d. petty
5. rustic                      e. self-analytical
6. urban                       f. regions far from the city
7. introspective                g. cautious
8. circumspect                 h. false, though plausible
9. specious                    i. countrified
Can you work with the words? (IV)

1. perspicacity       a. clearness
2. perspicuity        b. to be witty
3. stoic              c. spend time in the country
4. scintilla          d. one who controls his emotions
5. scintillate        e. to look inward
6. rural              f. a very small amount
7. rusticate          g. keen intelligence
8. introspect         h. clear, understandable
9. perspicuous        i. keen-minded
10. perspicacious      j. pertaining to the country.
Do you understand the words? (I)

Does life often seem pleasanter in *retrospect*?
YES  NO

Are people of *acuity* gullible?
YES  NO

Is *perspicacity* a common characteristic?
YES  NO

Is a person of *acumen* likely to be naïve?
YES  NO

Is a *perspicuous* style of writing easy to read?
YES  NO

Should all writers aim at *perspicuity*?
YES  NO

Is *magnanimity* a characteristic of small-minded people?
YES  NO

Does a person of *pusillanimous* mind often think of petty revenge?
YES  NO

Is a *unanimous* opinion one in which all concur?
YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (II)

Is it easy to preserve one’s **equanimity** under trying circumstances?

YES  NO

Do we bear **animus** toward our enemies?

YES  NO

Do we usually feel great **animosity** toward our friends?

YES  NO

Do we admire **versatility**?

YES  NO

Does a **stoic** usually complain?

YES  NO

Is **stoicism** a mark of an uninhibited personality?

YES  NO

Do cowards show **intrepidity** in the face of danger?

YES  NO

Do cowards often feel a certain amount of **trepidation**?

YES  NO

Is a **scintilla** of evidence a great amount?

YES  NO

Do dull people **scintillate**?

YES  NO

Is **urbanity** a characteristic of boorish people?

YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (III)

Is New York City a *rural* community?
YES  NO

Is a village an *urban* community?
YES  NO

Do you *rusticate* in the city?
YES  NO

Are extroverts very *introspective*?
YES  NO

Does an introvert spend a good deal of time in *introspection*?
YES  NO

In dangerous circumstances, is it wise to be *circumspect*?
YES  NO

Do *specious* arguments often sound convincing?
YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (IV)

retrospect—prospect
SAME   OPPOSITE

acute—perspicacious
SAME   OPPOSITE

acumen—stupidity
SAME   OPPOSITE

dim—acumen
SAME   OPPOSITE

perspicuous—confused
SAME   OPPOSITE

magnanimous—noble
SAME   OPPOSITE

pusillanimous—petty
SAME   OPPOSITE

unanimous—divided
SAME   OPPOSITE

equanimity—nervousness
SAME   OPPOSITE

animosity—hostility
SAME   OPPOSITE

animus—friendliness
SAME   OPPOSITE

versatility—monomania
SAME   OPPOSITE

stoicism—cowardice
SAME   OPPOSITE

intrepidity—fear
SAME   OPPOSITE

trepidation—courage
SAME   OPPOSITE

scintilla—slight amount
SAME   OPPOSITE

urbanity—refinement
SAME   OPPOSITE

rustic—crude
SAME  OPPOSITE
rural—urban
SAME  OPPOSITE
introspective—self-analytic
SAME  OPPOSITE
circumspect—careless
SAME  OPPOSITE
specious—true
SAME  OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words? (I)

ability in many fields
1. V__________________

pertaining to the city (adj.)
2. U__________________

to spend time in the country
3. R__________________

merest spark; small amount
4. S__________________
courage
5. I__________________
Can you recall the words? (II)

unflinching fortitude
  1. S__________

countrified; unpolished
  2. R__________

pertaining to the countryside (adj.)
  3. R__________

a looking back to the past
  4. R__________

nobleness of mind or spirit
  5. M__________
Can you recall the words? (III)

keen-mindedness
1. A___________
clear, lucid
2. P_____________
petty, mean
3. P_____________
all of one mind or opinion
4. U_____________
ill will
5. A_____________
or A_____________
Can you recall the words? (IV)

4. keenness of mind
   1. P__________________
   or P__________________
   2. A_______________
   3. A_______________
   4. A_______________

clearness of style or language
   5. P_______________

one who keeps his emotions, during times of trouble, hidden
   6. S_______________
sophistication, courtesy, refinement
   7. U_______________

KEY: 1–acuity, 2–perspicuous, 3–pusillanimous, 4–unanimous, 5–animus or animosity
Can you recall the words? (V)

pettiness of character
1. P_____________
noun form of unanimous
2. U_____________
mental calmness, balance
3. E_____________
fear and trembling
4. T_____________
to sparkle with wit and humor
5. S_____________
Can you recall the words? (VI)

a looking inward; an examining of one’s mental processes or emotional reactions
1. I ____________

cautious
2. C ____________

seemingly true, actually false
3. S ____________

to think of one’s mental processes
4. I ____________

care, watchfulness
5. C ____________
THREE FURTHER TESTS

I. matching

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>WORD</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. convivial</td>
<td>a. frank</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. indefatigable</td>
<td>b. noble, forgiving</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. ingenuous</td>
<td>c. unflinching; unemotional</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. perspicacious</td>
<td>d. courteous; polished; suave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. magnanimous</td>
<td>e. companionable, gregarious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. versatile</td>
<td>f. witty</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. stoical</td>
<td>g. capable in many directions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. intrepid</td>
<td>h. brave</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. scintillating</td>
<td>i. keen-minded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. urbane</td>
<td>j. tireless</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
II. same or opposite?

vivacious—sluggish
SAME    OPPOSITE
vital—crucial
SAME    OPPOSITE
ennui—boredom
SAME    OPPOSITE
*bon vivant*—gourmand
SAME    OPPOSITE
gourmet—ascetic
SAME    OPPOSITE
ingenuous—crafty
SAME    OPPOSITE
naïve—sophisticated
SAME    OPPOSITE
credulous—skeptical
SAME    OPPOSITE
disingenuous—insincere
SAME    OPPOSITE
credo—belief
SAME    OPPOSITE
III. changing parts of speech

Change these adjectives to nouns not ending in -ness.

indefatigable
perspicacious
stoical
urbane
naïve
incredulous
incredible
perspicuous
magnanimous
pusillanimous
A. Do you recognize the words?

Tireless:
   (a) convivial, (b) indefatigable, (c) versatile
Frank, unsophisticated:
   (a) ingenuous, (b) ingenious, (c) intrepid
Unflinching, uncomplaining:
   (a) perspicacious, (b) urbane, (c) stoical
Noble, forgiving, generous:
   (a) pusillanimous, (b) unanimous, (c) magnanimous
Between cities:
   (a) interurban, (b) intraurban, (c) exurban
Giving birth to live young:
   (a) oviparous, (b) ovulation, (c) viviparous
Tedium, boredom:
   (a) ennui, (b) joie de vivre, (c) vitality
Connoisseur of choice food:
   (a) gourmet, (b) gourmand, (c) glutton
Inexperienced in the ways of the world:
   (a) credulous, (b) naïve, (c) credible
Easily tricked:
   (a) gullible, (b) incredulous, (c) ingenious
Backward look:
   (a) prospect, (b) retrospect, (c) introspection
Clearness:
   (a) perspicacity, (b) perspicuity, (c) intrepidity
Resentment:
   (a) animosity, (b) stoicism, (c) urbanity
Countrified:
   (a) rustic, (b) specious, (c) circumspect
### B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>EXAMPLE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>vivo</em></td>
<td>vivacious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>sectus</em></td>
<td>vivisection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>pareo</em></td>
<td>viviparous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>ovum</em></td>
<td>oviparous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>vita</em></td>
<td>vital</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. <em>bon</em></td>
<td>bon vivant</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. <em>credo</em></td>
<td>credible</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. <em>specto</em></td>
<td>spectator</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. <em>acuo</em></td>
<td>acupuncture</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. <em>punctus</em></td>
<td>punctuate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. <em>pungo</em></td>
<td>pungent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. <em>animus</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. *pusillus* __________________

14. *magnus* __________________

15. *unus* __________________

16. *aequus* (*equ-*) __________________

17. *verto, versus* __________________

18. *stoa* __________________

19. *trepido* __________________

20. *scintilla* __________________

21. *urbs* __________________

22. *rus, ruris* __________________
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOL OLIST

1. Recalling the root *vivo*, to live, can you think of the verb that means *to live on*? _____________.
   Can you write the noun form? _____________.

2. How would you explain a *vivarium*? _____________.

3. Recalling the meanings of Latin *vita*, what would you understand if someone asked you for your *vita* before you appeared for an interview for a professional position? _____________.

4. *Unus* is Latin for *one*. Can you use this root to construct words meaning:
   (a) animal with *one* horn: _____________.
   (b) of *one* form: _____________.
   (c) to make *one*: _____________.
   (d) *oneness*: _____________.
   (e) *one*-wheeled vehicle: _____________.

5. *Annus* is Latin for *year*; *verto*, *versus*, as you know, means *to turn*. Can you, then, explain the word *anniversary* in terms of its roots? _____________.

6. How about *universe* and *university* in terms of their roots (*unus*, one; *verto*, *versus*, to turn)?
   (a) universe: _____________.
   (b) university: _____________.

7. Use *inter-*, between, to form words of the following meanings:
   (a) *between* states (adj.): _____________.
   (b) *between* nations (adj.): _____________.
   (c) in the middle *between* elementary and advanced (adj.): _____________.
   (d) to break in (*between* people conversing): _____________.
   (e) *between* persons (adj.): _____________.
8. Use *intra-*-, within, to form words with the following meanings (all *adjectives*):

(a) *within* one state: __________________
(b) *within* one nation: __________________
(c) *within* one’s own person or mind: __________________
(d) *within* the muscles: __________________

*(Answers in Chapter 18)*

**WORDS INFLUENCE YOUR THINKING**

By now, you have thoroughly explored hundreds upon hundreds of valuable words and scores upon scores of important Greek and Latin roots.

As you went along you stopped at frequent intervals to say aloud, think about, work with, and recall the words you were adding to your vocabulary.

By now, therefore, the words you have been learning are probably old friends of yours; they have started to influence your thinking, have perhaps begun to appear in your conversation, and have certainly become conspicuous in your reading. In short, they have been effective in making changes in your intellectual climate.

Let us pause now for another checkup of the success of your study. In the next chapter, you will find a second Comprehensive Test. Take the test cold if you feel that all the material is at your fingertips; or spend a little time reviewing Chapters 9, 10, 11, and 12 if you believe such review is necessary.

*(End of Session 37)*

---

1 Incidentally, a word used with a derogatory connotation (*bitch, piggish, glutton, idiot*, etc.) is called a *pejorative* (pe-JAWR′-Ə-tiv). *Pejorative* is also an adjective, as in, “She spoke in *pejorative* terms about her ex-husband.” The derivation is Latin *pejor*, worse.
HOW TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Comprehensive Test II
## SESSION 38

### I—etymology

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. scribo, scriptus</strong></td>
<td>proscribe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. aequus (equ-)</strong></td>
<td>equivocal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. malus</strong></td>
<td>malign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. dico, dictus</strong></td>
<td>malediction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. volo</strong></td>
<td>malevolent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>6. facio</strong></td>
<td>malefactor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7. bonus, bene</strong></td>
<td>benevolent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>8. fides</strong></td>
<td>infidelity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9. dono</strong></td>
<td>condone</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>10. nox, noctis</strong></td>
<td>equinox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>11. equus</strong></td>
<td>equestrian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>12. libra</strong></td>
<td>equilibrium</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. *taceo*  
EXAMPLE *taciturn*  

14. *loquor*  
EXAMPLE *loquacious*  

15. *solus*  
EXAMPLE *soliloquy*  

16. *venter, ventris*  
EXAMPLE *ventral*  

17. *magnus*  
EXAMPLE *magniloquence*  

18. *verbum*  
EXAMPLE *verbatim*  

19. *volvo, volutus*  
EXAMPLE *voluble*  

20. *animus*  
EXAMPLE *pusillanimous*  

21. *dorsum*  
EXAMPLE *endorse*  

22. *vox, vocis*  
EXAMPLE *vocal*  

23. *fero*  
EXAMPLE *vociferous*  

24. *ambulo*  
EXAMPLE *somnambulist*  

25. *somnus*  
EXAMPLE *somnolent*  

II—more etymology
1. *phanein*
   EXAMPLE sycophant

2. *vir*
   EXAMPLE virago

3. *pater, patris*
   EXAMPLE patricide

4. *onyma*
   EXAMPLE synonym

5. *homos*
   EXAMPLE homonym

6. *phone*
   EXAMPLE homophone

7. *archein*
   EXAMPLE matriarch

8. *mater, matris*
   EXAMPLE matron

9. *caedo (-cide)*
   EXAMPLE suicide

10. *homo*
    EXAMPLE homicide

11. *uxor*
    EXAMPLE uxorious

12. *maritus*
    EXAMPLE mariticide

13. *pyros*
    EXAMPLE pyromania

14. *theos*
    EXAMPLE atheist

15. *vivo*
EXAMPLE  viviparous

16. _credo_  

EXAMPLE  credulous

17. _pungo_  

EXAMPLE  pungency

18. _unus_  

EXAMPLE  unanimous

19. _trepido_  

EXAMPLE  intrepid

20. _scintilla_  

EXAMPLE  scintillate

21. _urbs_  

EXAMPLE  urbanity

22. _rus, ruris_  

EXAMPLE  rural, rustic

23. _gnosis_  

EXAMPLE  prognosis

24. _pan_  

EXAMPLE  pantheism

25. _omnis_  

EXAMPLE  omniscient

III—same or opposite?

disparage—praise  
S   O

proscribe—prohibit  
S   O

placate—irritate  
S   O

taciturn—talkative  
S   O
cogent—brilliant

atheistic—religious

convivial—unfriendly

ingenuous—naïve

perspicacious—keen-minded

intrepid—fearful

malign—praise

inarticulate—verbal

verbose—laconic

tyro—virtuoso

megalomania—modesty

satyriasis—nymphomania

claustrophobia—agoraphobia

indefatigability—tirelessness

credulous—skeptical

animosity—hostility

IV—matching

1. is lewd and lustful  a. chauvinist
2. caters to the rich  b. sycophant
3. is an accomplished musician  c. dilettante
4. sneers at traditions  d. iconoclast
5. is the mother-ruler of a family tribe, or nation
6. has an irresistible urge to steal
7. is excessively patriotic
8. is a loud-mouthed woman
9. is a beginner
10. is a dabbler

e. lecher
f. tyro
g. virtuoso
h. termagant
i. matriarch
j. kleptomaniac

V—more matching

1. does not know whether or not God exists
2. is a criminal
3. is a connoisseur of good food
4. sets fires for revenge
5. meets adversity or pain without flinching
6. walks in his sleep
7. is obsessively addicted to drink
8. has imaginary ailments
9. compulsively sets fires
10. is a woman who is sexually insatiable

a. dipsomaniac
b. pyromaniac
c. agnostic
d. hypochondriac
e. gourmet
f. stoic
g. malefactor
h. somnambulist
i. nymphomaniac
j. incendiary

VI—recall a word

to make unnecessary
1. O__________
to flatter fulsomely
2. A__________
to spread slander about
3. M__________
economical in speech
4. L__________
trite and hackneyed
5. B__________
word for word
6. V__________
killing of masses of people
7. G_________
inheritance from one’s father
8. P__________
belief in many gods
9. P__________
a person aggressively fighting for a cause
10. M__________
sincere; valid; in good faith
11. B__________

F__________
babbling ceaselessly about trivia (adj.)
12. G__________
to speak to oneself, as in a play
13. S__________
masterpiece
14. M__________

O__________
unselfish; not revengeful
15. M__________
able to walk after being bedridden
16. A__________
inability to fall asleep
17. I__________
morbid fear of heights
18. A__________
the killing of one’s brother
19. F__________
opposite in meaning (adj.)
20. A__________
“joy of life”
21. J________D____

V__________
to rob of life or vigor
22. D__________
inexperience, unsophistication
23. N__________
scrupulously careful in the observance of proper procedure
24. P__________
clear, understandable (of style or language)
25. P__________________
wary, cautious, watchful
26. C__________________
a backward look
27. R__________________
all of one mind (*adj.*)
28. U__________________
uncomplaining in face of pain, misfortune, or emotional difficulties (*adj.*)
29. S__________________
between cities (*adj.*)
30. I__________________
KEY: A correct answer counts one point. Score your points for each part of the test, then add for a total.

I
1–to write, 2–equal, 3–bad, evil, 4–to say or tell, 5–to wish, 6–to do or make, 7–good, well, 8–faith, 9–to give, 10–night, 11–horse, 12–balance, pound, 13–to be silent, 14–to speak, 15–alone, 16–belly, 17–big, large, great, 18–word, 19–to roll, 20–mind, 21–back, 22–voice, 23–to bear or carry, 24–to walk, 25–sleep

Your score: __________

II
1–to show, 2–man, male, 3–father, 4–name, 5–the same, 6–sound, 7–to rule, 8–mother, 9–to kill, killing, 10–person, 11–wife, 12–husband, 13–fire, 14–God, 15–to live, 16–to believe, 17–to pierce sharply, 18–one, 19–to tremble, 20–spark, 21–city, 22–country (countryside), 23–knowledge, 24–all, 25–all

Your score: __________

III

Your score: __________

IV
1–e, 2–b, 3–g, 4–d, 5–i, 6–j, 7–a, 8–h, 9–f, 10–c

Your score: __________

V
1–c, 2–g, 3–e, 4–j, 5–f, 6–h, 7–a, 8–d, 9–b, 10–i

Your score: __________

VI

Your score: __________

Your total score: __________
Significance of Your Total Score:

100–120: Masterly work; you are ready to move right along.

80– 99: Good work; this review was useful to you.

65– 79: Average work; you’re getting a good deal out of your study, but perhaps you should review thoroughly after each session.

50– 64: Barely acceptable; work harder.

35– 49: Poor; further review is suggested before you go on.

0– 34: You can do much better if you really try.

You might turn back for a moment to Chapter 8, in which you recorded your score on the first Comprehensive Test. Did you do better this time? Let’s make a record of both scores at this point for the sake of comparison and to give you a mark to shoot at in the Comprehensive Test you will take in Chapter 17.

SCORES

Test I (Chapter 8): ____________ out of 120
Test II (Chapter 13): ____________ out of 120

(End of Session 38)
PART THREE

FINISHING WITH A FEELING OF COMPLETE SUCCESS
TEASER PREVIEW

What word aptly describes:
dire poverty?
emotion experienced without direct participation?
something which lasts a very short time?
an inoffensive word for an unpleasant idea?
light and easy banter?
someone who is cowlike in his stolidity?
homesickness?
harsh sound?
a meat-eating animal?
something kept secret?
This world, Robert Louis Stevenson once claimed—with, I think, questionable logic—is so full of a number of things that we should all be as happy as kings.

I doubt very strongly that happiness comes from the outside, or that kings are necessarily happy. But I will go this far (and no further) with Stevenson: the world is certainly full of a number of things. For instance, poverty and misery, hospitals and insane asylums, slums and racial restrictions, cut-down forests and once fertile lands becoming progressively more arid, war and death and taxes and bumbling diplomats. I know that Stevenson had a different sort of thing in mind, for romantic poets tend to view the world through rose-tinted spectacles, but it is often necessary to counter one extreme with another—and I simply wish to set the record straight.

In this chapter we are going to discuss a number of things to be found in the world and in the minds of its inhabitants—poverty and wealth; secondhand emotions; the relativity of time; praise of various sorts; small talk and how to indulge in it; animals; longings for the past; sounds; eating habits; and many kinds and conditions of secrecy.

As you see, when you start exploring ideas, as we constantly do in these chapters, you never know what will turn up.

IDEAS

1. for want of the green stuff

There are those people who are forced (often through no fault of their own) to pursue an existence not only devoid of such luxuries as radios, television sets, sunken bathtubs, electric orange-juice squeezers, automobiles, Jacuzzis, private swimming pools, etc., but lacking also in many of the pure necessities of living—sufficient food, heated homes, hot water, vermin- and rodent-free surroundings, decent clothing, etc.

Such people live:

    in penury

2. at least watch it

All normal people want and need love and at least a modicum of excitement in their lives—so say the psychologists. If no one loves them, and if they can find no one on whom to lavish their own love, they may often satisfy their emotional longings and needs by getting their feelings secondhand—through reading love stories, attending motion pictures, watching soap operas, etc.

These are:
3. time is fleeting

During the late winter and early spring of 1948–49, great numbers of people went practically berserk joining and forming “pyramid clubs.” If you have not heard of this amazing phenomenon, I won’t attempt to describe it in any of its multifarious ramifications, but the main point was that you paid two dollars, treated some people to coffee and doughnuts, and shortly thereafter (if you were gullible enough to fall for this get-rich-quick scheme) supposedly received a return of some fantastic amount like $2,064 for your investment.

For a short time, pyramid clubs were a rage—soon they had vanished from the American scene.

Anything that lasts for but a short time and leaves no trace is:

ephemeral

4. how not to call a spade...

Words are only symbols of things—they are not the things themselves. (This, by the way, is one of the basic tenets of semantics.) But many people identify the word and the thing so closely that they fear to use certain words that symbolize things that are unpleasant to them.

I know that this is confusing, so let me illustrate.

Words having to do with death, sex, certain portions of the anatomy, excretion, etc. are avoided by certain people.

These people prefer circumlocutions—words that “talk around” an idea or that mean or imply something but don’t come right out and say so directly.

For example:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORD</th>
<th>CIRCUMLOCUTION</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>die</td>
<td>expire; depart this life; pass away; leave this vale of tears</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sexual intercourse</td>
<td>(intimate) relations; “playing house”; “shacking up”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>prostitute</td>
<td>lady of the evening; fille de joie; painted woman; lady of easy virtue; fille de nuit; streetwalker; hooker</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>house of prostitution</td>
<td>house of ill-fame; bawdyhouse; house of ill-repute; bagnio; brothel; bordello; “house”; “massage parlor”</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>buttocks, behind</td>
<td>derrière; rear end; butt; tail</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>breasts</td>
<td>bosom; bust; curves</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The left-hand column is the direct, non-pussyfooting word. The right-hand column is made up of:

euphemisms

5. small talk

“Whenever I’m in the dumps, I get a new suit.”
“Oh, so that’s where you get them!”
“Lend me a dime—I want to phone one of my friends.”
“Here’s a quarter—call them all.”
“The doctor says I have snoo in my blood!”
“Snoo? What’s snoo?”
“Not a darn! What’s new with you?”
“What are twins?”
“Okay, what are twins?”
“Womb mates!”
“I took a twip yesterday.”
“A twip?”
“Yes, I took a twip on a twain!”
These are examples of:

badinage

6. everything but give milk

You’ve seen a cow contentedly munching its cud. Nothing seems capable of disturbing this animal—and the animal seems to want nothing more out of life than to lead a simple, vegetable existence.

Some people are like a cow—calm, patient, placid, phlegmatic, vegetable-like. They are:

bovine

7. good old days

Do you sometimes experience a keen, almost physical, longing for associations or places of the past?

When you pass the neighborhood in which you were born and where you spent your early years, do you have a sharp, strange reaction, almost akin to mild nausea?

When you are away from home and friends and family, do pleasant remembrances crowd in on your mind to the point where your present loneliness becomes almost unbearable,
and you actually feel a little sick?

This common feeling is called:

nostalgia

8. sounds that grate

Some sounds are so harsh, grating, and discordant that they offend the ear. They lack all sweetness, harmony, pleasantness. Traffic noises of a big city, electronic rock music, chalk squeaking on a blackboard.

Such blaring, ear-splitting, or spine-tingling sounds are called:

 cacophonous

9. eating habits

Lions, tigers, wolves, and some other mammals subsist entirely on flesh. No spinach, salad greens, whole-wheat cereals, sugar, or spices—just good, red meat.

These mammals are:

carnivorous

10. private and public

There are certain things most of us do in private, like taking a bath. Some people like to engage in other activities in complete privacy—eating, reading, watching TV, sleeping, for example.

The point is that, while these activities may be conducted in privacy, there is never any reason for keeping them secret.

But there are other activities that are kept not only private, but well-shrouded in secrecy and concealed from public knowledge. These activities are unethical, illegal, or unsafe—like having an affair with someone whose spouse is your best friend, betraying military secrets to the enemy, trading in narcotics, bribing public officials, etc.

Arrangements, activities, or meetings that fall under this category are called:

clandestine

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. penury PEN′-yə-ree
2. vicarious vi-KAĪR′-ee-əs
3. ephemeral ə-FEM′-ə-rəl
4. euphemism YOO′-fə-mız-əm
5. badinage BAD′-ə-nəj
6. bovine BŌ′-vin′
7. nostalgia nə-STAL′-jə
8. cacophony kə-KOF′-ə-nee
9. carnivorous kahr-NIV′-ər-əs
10. clandestine klan-DES′-tin

Can you work with the words?

1. penury a. impermanent
2. vicarious b. banter
3. ephemeral c. homesickness
4. euphemism d. meat-eating
5. badinage e. circumlocution
6. bovine f. harsh noise
7. nostalgia g. poverty
8. cacophony h. secret
9. carnivorous i. placid; stolid; cowlike
10. clandestine j. secondhand
Do you understand the words? (I)

Do wealthy people normally live in *penury*?

YES  NO

Is a *vicarious* thrill one that comes from direct participation?

YES  NO

Do *ephemeral* things last a very short time?

YES  NO

Is a *euphemism* the substitution of an inoffensive term for another of the same meaning that may sound offensive, vulgar, or indelicate?

YES  NO

Does *badinage* show lighthearted frivolity?

YES  NO

Are *bovine* people high-strung and nervous?

YES  NO

Does one get a feeling of *nostalgia* for past occurrences and relationships?

YES  NO

Is *cacophony* pleasant and musical?

YES  NO

Do *carnivorous* animals eat meat?

YES  NO

Is a *clandestine* meeting conducted in secrecy?

YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (II)

penury—affluence
SAME   OPPOSITE
vicarious—actual
SAME   OPPOSITE
ephemeral—eternal
SAME   OPPOSITE
euphemism—less offensive word
SAME   OPPOSITE
badinage—light, teasing talk
SAME   OPPOSITE
bovine—high-strung
SAME   OPPOSITE
nostalgia—longing for the past
SAME   OPPOSITE
cacophony—euphony
SAME   OPPOSITE
carnivorous—herbivorous
SAME   OPPOSITE
clandestine—hidden
SAME   OPPOSITE
(The new words used in this test will be discussed in later sections of this chapter.)

Can you recall the words?

harsh sound
1. C____________

having a short life
2. E____________

dire poverty
3. P____________

substitution of an indirect or pleasant word or phrase for a possibly offensive one of the same meaning
4. E____________

experienced as a spectator, rather than as a participant
5. V____________

acute feeling of homesickness
6. N____________

light, half-teasing banter
7. B____________

subsisting solely on meat
8. C____________

cowlike; stolid
9. B____________

secret; concealed
10. C____________
KEY:  1–cacophony, 2–ephemeral, 3–penury, 4–euphemism, 5–vicarious, 6–nostalgia, 7–badinage, 8–carnivorous, 9–bovine, 10–clandestine

(End of Session 39)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. money, and what it will buy

The modern world operates largely by means of a price structure—wealth and poverty are therefore words that indicate the possession, on the one hand, or the lack, on the other, of money. Penury, from Latin *penuria*, need, neediness, is dire, abject poverty, complete lack of financial resources. It is one of the two strongest English words there are to denote absence of money. The adjective form, *penurious* (pə-NGY-or′-ee-əs or pə-NYOR′ ee-əs), strangely enough, *may* mean poverty-stricken, but more commonly signifies stingy, close-fisted, niggardly; so sparing in the use of money as to give the appearance of *penury*.

*Penurious* is a synonym of *parsimonious* (pər′-sə-MŌ′-nee-əs), but is much stronger in implication. A *parsimonious* person is stingy; a *penurious* person is twice as stingy. *Penury*, then, is poverty; *penuriousness* is stinginess, excessive frugality. The noun form of *parsimonious* is *parsimony* (PAHR′-sə-mō′-nee).

A somewhat milder word than *penury* for poverty (if you can imagine a mild degree of poverty) is *indigence* (IN′-də-jən). *Indigent* (IN′-də-jənt) people are not absolutely penniless—they are simply living in reduced circumstances, forgoing many creature comforts, forced to undergo the type of hardships that may accompany a lack of sufficient funds.

On the other hand, a close synonym of *penury*, and one of equal strength, is *destitution* (des′-tə-TOO′-shən). *Destitute* (DES′-tə-tət) people do not even have the means for mere subsistence—as such, they are perhaps on the verge of starvation. *Penury* and *destitution* are not merely straitened circumstances—they are downright desperate circumstances.

To turn now to the brighter side of the picture, the possession of money, especially in increasing amounts, is expressed by *affluence* (AF′-lə-əns). *Affluent* (AF′-lə-ənt) people, people of *affluence*, or those living in *affluent* circumstances, are more than comfortable; in addition, there is the implication that their wealth is increasing. People who live in *affluence* probably own large and costly homes, run big, new cars, belong to expensive golf or country clubs, etc.

A much stronger term is *opulence* (OP′-yə-ləns), which not only implies much greater wealth than *affluence*, but in addition suggests lavish expenditures and ostentatiously luxurious surroundings. People of *opulence* own estates; drive only outrageously expensive and specially equipped cars (Rolls-Royces, Mercedes-Benzes, Porsches, etc.); have a corps of servants, including a major-domo; belong to golf and yacht and country clubs, etc., etc. Embroider the fantasy as much as you wish to. *Opulent* (OP′-yə-lənt) may describe people, surroundings, styles of life, or the like.

*Affluent* is a combination of the prefix *ad-*, to, toward (changing to *af-* before a root beginning with *f*), plus the Latin verb *fluor*, to flow—*affluence* is that delightful condition in
which money keeps flowing to us, and no one ever turns off the spigot. Other words from the same root, *fluo*, to flow, are *fluid*, *influence*, *confluence* (a “flowing together”), *fluent* (the words flow smoothly), etc.

*Opulent* is from Latin *opulentus*, wealthy. No other English words derive from this root.

2. **doing and feeling**

If you watch a furious athletic event, and you get tired, though the athletes expend all the energy—that’s *vicarious* fatigue.

If your friend goes on a bender, and as you watch him absorb one drink after another, you begin to feel giddy and stimulated, that’s *vicarious* intoxication.

If you watch a mother in a motion picture or dramatic play suffer horribly at the death of her child, and you go through the same agony, that’s *vicarious* torment.

You can experience an emotion, then, in two ways: firsthand, through actual participation; or *vicariously*, by becoming empathetically involved in another person’s feelings.

Some people, for example, lead essentially dull and colorless lives. Through their children, through reading or attending the theater, however, they can experience all the emotions felt by others whose lives move along at a swift, exciting pace. These people live at second hand; they live *vicariously*.

3. **time is relative**

Elephants and turtles live almost forever; human beings in the United States have a life expectancy in general of sixty-eight to seventy-six years (though the gradual conquest of disease is constantly lengthening our span); dogs live from seven to ten years; and some insects exist for only a few hours or days.

One such short-lived creature is the dayfly, which in Greek was called *ephemera*. Hence anything so short-lived, so unenduring that it scarcely seems to outlast the day, may be called *ephemeral*.

A synonym of *ephemeral* is *evanescent* (ev-ə-NES'-ənt), fleeting, staying for a remarkably short time, vanishing. Something intangible, like a feeling, may be called *evanescent*; it’s here, and before you can quite comprehend it, it’s gone—vanished.

The noun is *evanescence* (ev'-ə-NES'-əns); the verb is to *evanesce* (ev-ə-NES').

*Evanescent* is built on the prefix *e*-(ex-), out, the root *vanesco*, to vanish, and the adjective suffix -*ent*.

The suffix -esce often, but not always, means *begin to*. -Escent may mean *becoming* or *beginning to*. Thus:

*adolescent*—beginning to grow up;

*beginning to become an adult*

*evanesce*—begin to vanish

*convalesce*—begin to get well after illness
4. an exploration of various good things

A euphemism is a word or expression that has been substituted for another that is likely to offend—it is built on the Greek prefix eu-, good, the root pheme, voice, and the noun suffix -ism. (Etymologically, “something said in a good voice!”) Adjective: euphemistic (yu′-fə-MIS′-tik)

Other English words constructed from the prefix eu-:

1. euphony (YOO′-fə-nee)—good sound; pleasant lilt or rhythm (phone, sound)
   Adjective: euphonic (yu′-FON′-ik) or euphonious (yu′-FŌ′-nee-əs)

2. eulogy (YOO′-lə-je) — etymologically, “good speech”; a formal speech of praise, usually delivered as a funeral oration. Logos in this term means word or speech, as it did in philology (Chapter 6). Logos more commonly means science or study, but has the alternate meaning in eulogy, philology, monologue, dialogue, epilogue (words upon the other words, or “after-words”), and prologue (words before the main part, “before-words,” or introduction).
   Adjective: eulogistic (yu′-lə-JIS′-tik); verb: eulogize (YOO′-lə-jīz′); person who delivers an eulogy: eulogist (YOO′-lə-jist)

3. euphoria (yu′-FAWR′-ee-ə)—good feeling, a sense of mental buoyancy and physical well-being
   Adjective: euphoric (yu′-FAWR′-ik)

4. euthanasia (yu′-thə-NAY′-zhə)—etymologically, “good death”; method of painless death inflicted on people suffering from incurable diseases—not legal at the present time, but advocated by many people. The word derives from eu- plus Greek thanatos, death.

5. exploration of modes of expression

Badinage is a half-teasing, non-malicious, frivolous banter, intended to amuse rather than wound. Badinage has a close synonym, persiflage (PUR′-sə-flahzh′), which is a little more derisive, a trifle more indicative of contempt or mockery—but still totally unmalicious.

In line with badinage and persiflage, there are four other forms of expression you should be familiar with: cliché (klee-SHAY′), bromide (BRŌ′-mīd′), platitude (PLAT′-ə-tōd), and anodyne (AN′-ə-din′).

A cliché is a pattern of words which was once new and fresh, but which now is so old, worn, and threadbare that only banal, unimaginative speakers and writers ever use it. Examples are: fast and furious; unsung heroes; by leaps and bounds; conspicuous by its absence; green with envy; etc. The most devastating criticism you can make of a piece of writing is to say, “It is full of clichés”; the most pointed insult to a person’s way of talking is, “You speak in clichés.”

A bromide is any trite, dull, and probably fallacious remark that shows little evidence of original thinking, and that therefore convinces a listener of the total absence of
perspicacity on the part of the speaker.

For instance, some cautious, dull-minded individual might warn you not to take a chance in these words: “Remember it’s better to be safe than sorry!”

Your sneering response might be: “Oh, that old bromide!”

A *platitude* is similar to a *cliché* or *bromide*, in that it is a dull, trite, hackneyed, unimaginative pattern of words—but, to add insult to injury (*cliché*), the speaker uses it with an air of novelty—as if he just made it up, and isn’t he the brilliant fellow!

An *anodyne*, in the medical sense, is a drug that allays pain without curing an illness, like aspirin or morphine. Figuratively, an *anodyne* is a statement made to allay someone’s fears or anxieties, not believed by the speaker, but intended to be believed by the listener. “Prosperity is just around the corner” was a popular *anodyne* of the 1930s.

A *bromide* is also a drug, formerly used as a sedative. Sedatives dull the senses—the statement labeled a *bromide* comes from a speaker of dull wit and has a sedative effect on the listener. The adjective is *bromidic* (brō-MID′-ik), as in “his *bromidic* way of expressing himself.”

*Platitude* derives from Greek *platys*, broad or flat, plus the noun suffix -*tude*. Words like *plateau* (flat land), *plate* and *platter* (flat dishes), and *platypus* (flat foot) all derive from the same root as *platitude*, a flat statement, i.e., one that falls flat, despite the speaker’s high hopes for it. The adjective is *platitudinous* (plat′-ə-TOO-də-nəs), as in, “What a *platitudinous* remark.”

*Anodyne* is a combination of the negative prefix *an*- with Greek *odyne*, pain. *Anodines*, as drugs, lessen pain; as statements, they are intended to reduce or eliminate emotional pain or anxiety.

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. penuria</td>
<td>need, neediness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ad- (af-)</td>
<td>to, toward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. fluo</td>
<td>to flow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. opulentus</td>
<td>wealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. ephemera</td>
<td>dayfly</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>__________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. e-, ex-</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. vanesco to vanish
8. -esce begin to
9. -ent adjective suffix
10. -ence noun suffix
11. eu- good
12. pheme voice
13. -ism noun suffix
14. phone sound
15. -ic adjective suffix
16. -ous adjective suffix
17. logos word, speech
18. -ize verb suffix
19. thanatos death
20. platys broad or flat
21. an- negative prefix
ENGLISH WORD __________

22. odyne pain
ENGLISH WORD __________

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. penurious pə-NYəR′-ee-əs or pə-NYəR′-ee-əs
2. penuriousness pə-NYəR′-ee-əs-nəs or pə-NYəR′-ee-əs-nəs
3. parsimonious pahr′-ə-MÖ′-nee-əs
4. parsimony PAHR′-ə-mō′-nee
5. indigence IN′-də-jəns
6. indigent IN′-də-jənt
7. destitution des′-tə-TOO′-shən
8. destitute DES′-tə-tət
9. affluence AF′-loo-əns
10. affluent AF′-loo-ənt
11. opulence OP′-yə-ləns
12. opulent OP′-yə-lənt

Can you pronounce the words? (II)

1. evanescent ev′-ə-NES′-ənt
2. evanescence ev′-ə-NES′-əns
3. evanesce ev′-ə-NES′
4. euphemistic yOO′-fə-MIS′-tik
5. euphony YOO′-fə-neə
6. euphonic  
yoo-FON′-ik  
7. euphonious  
yoo-FŌ′-nee-əs  
8. eulogy  
YOO′-lə-jee  
9. eulogistic  
yoo′-lə-JIS′-tik  
10. eulogize  
YOO′-lə-jiz′  

Can you pronounce the words? (III)  
1. euphoria  
yoo-FAWR′-ee-ə  
2. euphoric  
yoo-FAWR′-ik  
3. euthanasia  
yoo′-θə-NAY′-zha  
4. persiflage  
PUR′-sə-flahzh′  
5. cliché  
klee-SHAY′  
6. bromide  
BRŌ′-mīd′  
7. bromidic  
brō-MID′-ik  
8. platitude  
PLAT′-ə-tōd  
9. platitudinous  
plat′-ə-TOO′-də-nəs  
10. anodyne  
AN′-ə-din′  

Can you work with the words? (I)  
1. penurious  
a. poor; of limited means  
2. indigent  
b. inoffensive  
3. affluent  
c. flat, trite  
4. evanescent  
d. feeling tiptop  
5. euphemistic  
e. wealthy  
6. euphonious  
f. pleasant in sound  
7. euphoric  
g. stingy; tight-fisted  
8. platitudinous  
h. fleeting
### Can you work with the words? (II)

1. parsimony  
   a. lavish luxury  
2. destitution  
   b. painless death  
3. opulence  
   c. pleasant sound  
4. evanescence  
   d. trite remark  
5. euphony  
   e. impermanence  
6. euphoria  
   f. feeling of well-being  
7. euthanasia  
   g. stinginess  
8. platitude  
   h. poverty
Can you work with the words? (III)

1. anodyne a. light, teasing banter
2. bromide b. tightfistedness
3. persiflage c. statement intended to allay anxiety
4. eulogy d. poverty, want
5. penuriousness e. high, formal praise
6. indigence f. wealth
7. affluence g. trite statement
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. parsimonious</td>
<td>a. begin to vanish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. destitute</td>
<td>b. stingy, frugal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. opulent</td>
<td>c. highly praising</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. vicarious</td>
<td>d. hackneyed phrase</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. euphonic</td>
<td>e. ostentatiously wealthy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. eulogistic</td>
<td>f. stilted in expression</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. evanesce</td>
<td>g. pleasant-sounding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. eulogize</td>
<td>h. in want</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. bromidic</td>
<td>i. secondhand</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. cliché</td>
<td>j. praise</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words? (I)

Do *penurious* people satisfy their extravagant desires?
YES NO

Is *penuriousness* the characteristic of a miser?
YES NO

If you are *parsimonious* with praise, do you lavish it on others?
YES NO

Are people with extremely low incomes forced to live a life of *parsimony*?
YES NO

Is *indigence* a sign of wealth?
YES NO

Are *indigent* people often aided by state welfare?
YES NO

If you live in a state of *destitution*, do you have all the money you need?
YES NO

Is a completely *destitute* person likely to have to live in want?
YES NO

Does a person of *affluence* generally have petty money worries?
YES NO

Are *opulent* surroundings indicative of great wealth?
YES NO
Do you understand the words? (II)

Can you engage in vicarious exploits by reading spy novels?
YES  NO

Does an evanescent feeling remain for a considerable time?
YES  NO

Do parents generally indulge in euphemisms in front of young children?
YES  NO

Is poetry generally euphonious?
YES  NO

Does a sincere eulogy indicate one’s feeling of admiration?
YES  NO

Is euphoria a feeling of malaise?
YES  NO

Is euthanasia practiced on animals?
YES  NO

Is persiflage an indication of seriousness?
YES  NO

Does a liberal use of clichés show original thinking?
YES  NO

Is an anodyne intended to relieve fears?
YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (III)

Is a *platitude* flat and dull?

YES  NO

If a person uses *bromides*, is he likely to be an interesting conversationalist?

YES  NO

If you indulge in *persiflage*, are you being facetious?

YES  NO

Are the works of Beethoven considered *euphonious*?

YES  NO

Can parents receive a *vicarious* thrill from their children’s triumphs?

YES  NO
Can you recall the words?

a statement, usually untrue, meant to alleviate fear
1. A__________

light banter
2. P__________

a hackneyed phrase
3. C__________

fleeting—lasting a very short time (adj.)
4. E__________

laudatory—delivered in tones of formal praise (adj.)
5. E__________

process of painlessly putting to death a victim of an incurable disease
6. E__________

stingy (adj.)
7. P__________
or P__________
in want (adj.)
8. D__________

wealth
9. A__________

immense wealth
10. O__________

adverb describing the manner of responding empathetically to another’s acts
11. V__________

stinginess (noun)
12. P__________
or P__________

poverty
13. I__________

14. D__________

impermanence
15. E__________

pleasing sound
16. E__________

substituting inoffensive words (adj.)
17. sense of well-being
18. trite remark
19. banal remark
20. begin to vanish (v.)
21. poverty-stricken (adj.)
22. wealthy (two adjs.)
23. feeling tiptop (adj.)
24. pleasant in sound (adj.)
25. formal praise
26. trite (adj.)
27. flat, dull (adj.)
28. to praise
1. people are the craziest animals

*Bovine*, placid like a cow, stolid, patient, unexcitable, is built on the Latin word for *ox* or *cow*, *bovis*, plus the suffix *-ine*, like, similar to, or characteristic of. To call someone *bovine* is of course far from complimentary, for this adjective is considerably stronger than *phlegmatic*, and implies a certain mild contempt on the part of the speaker. A *bovine* person is somewhat like a vegetable: eats and grows and lives, but apparently is lacking in any strong feelings.

Humans are sometimes compared to animals, as in the following adjectives:

1. **leonine** (LEE′-ə-nīn′)—like a lion in appearance or temperament.
2. **canine** (KAY′-nīn′)—like a dog. As a noun, the word refers to the species to which dogs belong. Our *canine* teeth are similar to those of a dog.
3. **feline** (FEE′-līn′)—catlike. We may speak of *feline* grace; or (insultingly) of *feline* temperament when we mean that a person is “catty.”
4. **porcine** (PAWR′-sīn′)—piglike.
5. **vulpine** (VUL′-pīn′)—foxlike in appearance or temperament. When applied to people, this adjective usually indicates the shrewdness of a fox.
6. **ursine** (UR′-sīn′)—bearlike.
7. **lupine** (LOO′-pīn′)—wolflike.
8. **equine** (EE′-kwīn′)—horselike; “horsy.”
9. **piscine** (PIS′-īn′)—fishlike.

All these adjectives come from the corresponding Latin words for the animals; and, of course, each adjective also describes, or refers to, the specific animal as well as to the person likened to the animal.

1. *leo*  
   lion
2. *canis*  
   dog
3. *felis*  
   cat
4. *porcus*  
   pig
5. *vulpus*  
   fox
6. *ursus*  
   bear
7. *lupus*  
   wolf
8. *equus*  
   horse
The word for meat from a pig—pork—derives, obviously, from porcus. Ursa Major and Ursa Minor, the Great Bear and the Little Bear, the two conspicuous groups of stars in the northern sky (conspicuous, of course, only on a clear night), are so labeled because in formation they resemble the outlines of bears. The feminine name Ursula is, by etymology, “a little bear,” which, perhaps, is a strange name to burden a child with. The skin disease lupus was so named because it eats into the flesh, as a wolf might.

2. you can’t go home again

Nostalgia, built on two Greek roots, nostos, a return, and algos, pain (as in neuralgia, cardialgia, etc.), is a feeling you can’t ever understand until you’ve experienced it—and you have probably experienced it whenever some external stimulus has crowded your mind with scenes from an earlier day.

You know how life often seems much pleasanter in retrospect? Your conscious memory tends to store up the pleasant experiences of the past (the trauma and unpleasant experiences may get buried in the unconscious), and when you are lonely or unhappy you may begin to relive these pleasant occurrences. It is then that you feel the emotional pain and longing that we call nostalgia.

The adjective is nostalgic (nos-TAL′-jik), as in “motion pictures that are nostalgic of the fifties,” or as in, “He feels nostalgic whenever he passes 138th Street and sees the house in which he grew up.”

3. soundings

Cacophony is itself a harsh-sounding word—and is the only one that exactly describes the unmusical, grating, ear-offending noises you are likely to hear in man-made surroundings: the New York subway trains thundering through their tunnels (they are also, these days in the late 1970s, eye-offending, for which we might coin the term cacopsis, noun, and cacoptic, adjective), the traffic bedlam of rush hours in a big city, a steel mill, an automobile factory, a blast furnace, etc. Adjective: cacophonous (kə-KOP′-ə-nəs).

These words are built on the Greek roots kakos, bad, harsh, or ugly, and phone, sound. Phone, sound, is found also in:

1. telephone—etymologically, “sound from afar”
2. euphony—pleasant sound
3. phonograph—etymologically, “writer of sound”
4. saxophone—a musical instrument (hence sound) invented by Adolphe Sax
5. xylophone—a musical instrument; etymologically, “sounds through wood” (Greek xylon, wood)
6. phonetics (fə-NET′-iks)—the science of the sounds of language; the adjective is phonetic (fə-NET′-ik), the expert a phonetician (fō′-nə-TISH′-ən)
7. phonics—the science of sound; also the method of teaching reading by drilling the sounds of letters and syllables
4. the flesh and all

*Carnivorous* combines *carnis*, flesh, and *voro*, to devour. A *carnivorous* animal, or *carnivore* (KAHR′-nə-vawr′), is one whose main diet is meat.

*Voro*, to devour, is the origin of other words referring to eating habits:

1. *herbivorous* (hur-BIV′-ər-əs)—subsisting on grains, grasses, and other vegetation, as cows, deer, horses, etc. The animal is a *herbivore* (HUR′-bə-vawr′). Derivation: Latin *herba*, herb, plus *voro*, to devour

2. *omnivorous* (om-NIV′-ər-əs)—eating everything: meat, grains, grasses, fish, insects, and anything else digestible. The only species so indiscriminate in their diet are humans and rats, plus, of course, some cats and dogs that live with people (in contrast to *felines* and *canines*—lions, tigers, bobcats, wolves, etc.—that are not domesticated). *Omnivorous* (combining Latin *omnis*, all, with *voro*, plus the adjective suffix *-ous*) refers not only to food. An *omnivorous* reader reads everything in great quantities (that is, devours all kinds of reading matter).

3. *voracious* (vaw-RAY′-shəs)—devouring; hence, greedy or gluttonous; may refer either to food or to any other habits. One may be a *voracious* eater, *voracious* reader, *voracious* in one’s pursuit of money, pleasure, etc. Think of the two noun forms of *loquacious*. Can you write two nouns derived from *voracious?* (1) ____________, (2) ____________.

5. “allness”

Latin *omnis*, all, is the origin of:

1. *omnipotent* (om-NIP′-ə-tənt)—all-powerful, an adjective usually applied to God; also, to any ruler whose governing powers are unlimited, which allows for some exaggeration, as King Canute the Great proved to his sycophantic courtiers when he ordered the tide to come so far up the beach and no further. He got soaking wet! (*Omnis* plus Latin *potens*, potentis, powerful, as in *potentate*, a powerful ruler; *impotent* (IM′-pə-tənt), powerless; *potent*, powerful; and *potential*, possessing power or ability not yet exercised). Can you write the noun form of *omnipotent?*

2. *omniscient* (om-NISH′-ənt)—all-knowing: hence, infinitely wise. (*Omnis* plus *sciens*, knowing.) We have discussed this adjective in a previous chapter, so you will have no problem writing the noun: ____________.

3. *omnipresent* (om′-nə-PREZ′-ənt)—present in all places at once. Fear was *omnipresent* in Europe during 1939 just before World War II. A synonym of *omnipresent* is *ubiquitous* (yoo-BIK′-wə-təs), from Latin *ubique*, everywhere. The *ubiquitous* ice cream vendor seems to be *everywhere* at the same time, tinkling those little bells, once spring arrives. The *ubiquitous* little red wagon rides around *everywhere* in airports to refuel departing planes. “*Ubiquitous* laughter greeted the press secretary’s remark,” i.e., laughter was heard *everywhere* in the room. The noun forms are *ubiquity* (yoo-BIK′-wə-tee) or ____________. (Can you think of the alternate form?)

4. *omnibus* (OM′-nə-bəs)—etymologically, “for all, including all.” In the shortened form *bus* we have a public vehicle for all who can pay; in a John Galsworthy *omnibus* we have a
book containing all of Galsworthy’s works; in an omnibus legislative bill we have a bill containing all the miscellaneous provisions and appropriations left out of other bills.

6. more flesh

Note how *carnis*, flesh, is the building block of:

1. *carnelian* (kahr-NEEL’-yən)—a reddish color, the color of red flesh.

2. *carnival* (KAHR’-nə-vəl)—originally the season of merrymaking just before Lent, when people took a last fling before saying “Carne vale!” “Oh flesh, farewell!” (Latin *vale*, farewell, goodbye). Today a *carnival* is a kind of outdoor entertainment with games, rides, side shows, and, of course, lots of food—also any exuberant or riotous merrymaking or festivities.

3. *carnal* (KAHR’-nəl)—most often found in phrases like “*carnal* pleasures” or “*carnal* appetites,” and signifying pleasures or appetites of the *flesh* rather than of the spirit—hence, sensual, lecherous, lascivious, lubricious, etc. The noun is *carnality* (kahr-NAL’-ə-tē).

4. *carnage* (KAHR’-nəj)—great destruction of life (that is, of human flesh), as in war or mass murders.

5. *reincarnation* (ree’-in-kahr-NAY′-shən)—a rebirth or reappearance. Believers in *reincarnation* maintain that one’s soul persists after it has fled the *flesh*, and eventually reappears in the body of a newborn infant or animal, or in another form. Some of us, according to this interesting philosophy, were once Napoleon, Alexander the Great, Cleopatra, etc. The verb is to *reincarnate* (ree-in-KAHR′-nayt), to bring (a soul) back in another bodily form.

6. *incarnate* (in-KAHR′-nət)—in the *flesh*. If we use this adjective to call someone “the devil *incarnate*,” we mean that here is the devil in the *flesh*. Or we may say that someone is evil *incarnate*, that is, the personification of evil, evil invested with human or bodily form. The verb to *incarnate* (in-KAHR′-nayt) is to embody, give bodily form to, or make real.

7. dark secrets

*Clandestine* comes from Latin *clam*, secretly, and implies secrecy or concealment in the working out of a plan that is dangerous or illegal. *Clandestine* is a close synonym of *surreptitious* (sur′-əp-TISH′-əs), which means *stealthy*, *sneaky*, *furtive*, generally because of fear of detection.

The two words cannot always, however, be used interchangeably. We may speak of either *clandestine* or *surreptitious* meetings or arrangements; but usually only of *clandestine* plans and only of *surreptitious* movements or actions. Can you write the noun form of *surreptitious*? __________.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. -ine</td>
<td>like, similar to, characteristic of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. leo</td>
<td>lion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. felis</td>
<td>cat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. porcus</td>
<td>pig</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. canis</td>
<td>dog</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. vulpus</td>
<td>fox</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. ursus</td>
<td>bear</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. lupus</td>
<td>wolf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. equus</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. piscis</td>
<td>fish</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. nostos</td>
<td>a return</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. algos</td>
<td>pain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13. -ic</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
14. *kakos*  
bad, harsh, ugly

15. *phone*  
sound

16. *xylon*  
wood

17. *carnis*  
flesh

18. *voro*  
to devour

19. *herba*  
herb

20. *omnis*  
all

21. *-ous*  
adjective suffix

22. *potens, potentis*  
powerful

23. *sciens*  
knowing

24. *ubique*  
everywhere

25. *-ity*  
noun suffix

26. *vale*  
farewell

27. *-al*  
adjective suffix
28. re- again, back

ENGLISH WORD __________

29. -ate verb suffix

ENGLISH WORD __________

30. in- in

ENGLISH WORD __________

31. clam secretly

ENGLISH WORD __________

32. -ent adjective suffix

ENGLISH WORD __________

33. -ence noun suffix

ENGLISH WORD __________

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words? (I)

1. leonine LEE'-ə-nīn'
2. canine KAY'-nīn'
3. feline FEE'-līn'
4. porcine PAWR'-sīn'
5. vulpine VUL'-pīn'
6. ursine UR'-sīn'
7. lupine LÔO'-pīn'
8. equine EE'-kwīn'
9. piscine PIS'-īn'
10. nostalgic nos-TAL'-jik

Can you pronounce the words? (II)
1. cacophonous kə-KOF′-ə-nəs
2. phonetics fə-NET′-iks
3. phonetic fə-NET′-ik
4. phonetician fə-ne-TISH′-ən
5. carnivore KAHR′-nə-vawr′
6. herbivore HUR′-bə-vawr′
7. herbivorous hur-BIV′-ər-əs
8. omnivorous om-NIV′-ər-əs
9. voracious vaw-RAY′-shəs
10. voracity vaw-RAS′-ə-tee
11. omnipotent om-NIP′-ə-tənt
12. impotent IM′-pə-tənt
13. impotence IM′-pə-təns
14. omnipotence om-NIP′-ə-təns

Can you pronounce the words? (III)

1. omniscient om-NISH′-ənt
2. omniscience om-NISH′-əns
3. omnipresent om′-nə-PREZ′-ənt
4. omnipresence om′-nə-PREZ′-əns
5. ubiquitous yoo-BIK′-wə-təs
6. ubiquity yoo-BIK′-wə-tee
7. ubiquitousness yoo-BIK′-wə-təs-nəs
8. omnibus OM′-nə-bəs

Can you pronounce the words? (IV)

1. carnelian kahr-NEEL′-yən
2. carnal KAHR′-nəl
3. carnality  
   kahr-NAL-ə-tee

4. carnage  
   KAHR-əj

5. reincarnation  
   ree′-in-kahr-NAY′-shən

6. reincarnate (v.)  
   ree′-in-KAHR′-nayt

7. incarnate (adj.)  
   in-KAHR′-nət

8. incarnate (v.)  
   in-KAHR′-nayt

9. surreptitious  
   sur′-əp-TISH′-əs

10. surreptitiousness  
    sur′-əp-TISH′-əs-nəs

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. leonine  
   a. doglike

2. canine  
   b. greedy, devouring

3. feline  
   c. foxlike

4. porcine  
   d. all-powerful

5. vulpine  
   e. stealthy, clandestine

6. ursine  
   f. lionlike

7. voracious  
   g. all-knowing

8. omnipotent  
   h. bearlike

9. omniscient  
   i. catlike

10. surreptitious  
    j. piglike
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. nostalgic a. harsh-sounding
2. cacophonous b. eating everything
3. herbivorous c. lewd, lecherous, lubricious
4. omnivorous d. found everywhere
5. ubiquitous e. homesick
6. carnal f. grass-eating
7. incarnate g. in the flesh
Can you work with the words? (III)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. phonetics</td>
<td>a. universality</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. carnivore</td>
<td>b. a color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. voracity</td>
<td>c. infinite power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. omnipotence</td>
<td>d. furtiveness; stealth; sneakiness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. omniscience</td>
<td>e. lechery, lasciviousness, lubricity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. omnipresence</td>
<td>f. infinite wisdom</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. omnibus</td>
<td>g. science of speech sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. carnelian</td>
<td>h. slaughter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. carnality</td>
<td>i. a collection of all things</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. carnage</td>
<td>j. greediness</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. surreptitiousness</td>
<td>k. meat-eater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. reincarnation</td>
<td>1. a return to life in a new body or form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (IV)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Definition</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lupine</td>
<td>a. fishlike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>equine</td>
<td>b. powerless</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piscine</td>
<td>c. wolflike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phonetician</td>
<td>d. bring back into a new body or form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>impotent</td>
<td>e. occurrence, or existence, everywhere</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubiquity</td>
<td>f. horselike</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reincarnate (v.)</td>
<td>g. expert in speech sounds</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>incarnate (v.)</td>
<td>h. embody; make real; put into bodily form</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Do you understand the words? (I)

A person of leonine appearance looks like a tiger.
TRUE    FALSE

Canine habits refers to the habits of dogs.
TRUE    FALSE

Feline grace means catlike grace.
TRUE    FALSE

Porcine appearance means wolflike appearance.
TRUE    FALSE

Vulpine craftiness means foxlike craftiness.
TRUE    FALSE

Ursine means bearlike.
TRUE    FALSE

Nostalgic feelings refer to a longing for past experiences.
TRUE    FALSE

Cacophonous music is pleasant and sweet.
TRUE    FALSE

An elephant is a carnivore.
TRUE    FALSE

Deer are herbivorous.
TRUE    FALSE
Do you understand the words? (II)

An omnivorous reader does very little reading.
TRUE   FALSE
A voracious eater is gluttonous.
TRUE   FALSE
True omnipotence is unattainable by human beings.
TRUE   FALSE
No one is omniscient.
TRUE   FALSE
Fear of economic ruin was practically omnipresent in the early nineteen-thirties.
TRUE   FALSE
When an airplane lands for refueling, the ubiquitous little red gasoline wagon comes rolling up.
TRUE   FALSE
An author’s omnibus contains all his published writings.
TRUE   FALSE
Carnelian is a deep blue color.
TRUE   FALSE
Carnality is much respected in a puritanical society.
TRUE   FALSE
There is considerable carnage in war.
TRUE   FALSE
A surreptitious glance is meant to be conspicuous.
TRUE   FALSE
A person who is evil incarnate is a vicious character.
TRUE   FALSE
Can you recall the words?

I—adverbs

2. secretly (two forms)
   1. C______________
   2. S______________
   in a harsh and noisy manner
   3. C______________
   in a homesick manner
   4. N______________
   in a greedy, devouring manner
   5. V______________
II—nouns

greediness
  1. V__________________
unlimited power
  2. O__________________
infinite knowledge
  3. O__________________
a gathering of all things
  4. O__________________
lechery; indulgence in fleshly pleasures
  5. C__________________
slaughter
  6. C__________________
stealthiness; secretiveness
  7. S__________________
harsh sound
  8. C__________________
science of speech sounds
  9. P__________________
a return to life in new form
10. R__________________
III—adjectives

<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>lionlike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doglike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>catlike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cowlike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>foxlike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bearlike</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>homesick</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grating in sound</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>meat-eating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>grass-eating</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>all-eating; indiscriminate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>devouring; greedy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in the flesh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV. more adjectives

all-powerful
1. O____________

all-knowing
2. O____________

present or existing everywhere
3. O____________

found everywhere
4. U____________

lewd, lascivious, lecherous
5. C____________

secret
6. C____________
V. final mop-up

wolflike
1. L__________________
horselike
2. E__________________
fishlike
3. P__________________
referring to speech sounds
4. P__________________
expert in speech sounds
5. P__________________
powerless
6. I__________________
existence everywhere
7. U__________________
or U__________________
8. O__________________
to bring back into another body or form
9. R__________________
to embody, make real, or put into bodily form
10. I__________________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

Utter want:
(a) affluence, (b) opulence, (c) penury

Experienced secondhand:
(a) ephemeral, (b) vicarious, (c) evanescent

Inoffensive circumlocution:
(a) badinage, (b) persiflage, (c) euphemism

Homesick:
(a) nostalgic, (b) bromide, (c) clandestine

Meat-eating:
(a) herbivorous, (b) voracious, (c) carnivorous

Stingy:
(a) indigent, (b) parsimonious, (c) opulent

Extreme financial need:
(a) destitution, (b) affluence, (c) parsimony

Great and increasing wealth:
(a) penuriousness, (b) affluence, (c) omnipresence

Remaining for a short time:
(a) euphemistic, (b) evanescent, (c) eulogistic

Sweet-sounding:
(a) euphonious, (b) cacophonous, (c) euphoric

Praise glowingly:
(a) evanesce, (b) eulogize, (c) reincarnate

Sense of physical well-being:
(a) euthanasia, (b) euphoria, (c) persiflage

Hackneyed expression:
(a) anodyne, (b) badinage, (c) cliché

Catlike:
(a) leonine, (b) feline, (c) canine

Bearlike:
(a) vulpine, (b) ursine, (c) porcine
All-knowing:
(a) omnipotent, (b) omniscient, (c) omnipresent

Found everywhere:
(a) ubiquitous, (b) omnivorous, (c) omnibus

Destruction:
(a) carnage, (b) carnality, (c) reincarnation

Stealthy:
(a) voracious, (b) surreptitious, (c) incarnate
B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MEANING</th>
<th>ROOT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. penuria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>penury</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. fluo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>affluent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. opulentus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>opulent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ephemera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>ephemeral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. vanesco</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>evanescent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. pheme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>euphemism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>phonetics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. logos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>eulogy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. thanatos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>euthanasia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. platys</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>platitude, platypus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. odyne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>anodyne</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. leo
EXAMPLE leonine

13. felis
EXAMPLE feline

14. porcus
EXAMPLE porcine

15. canis
EXAMPLE canine

16. vulpus
EXAMPLE vulpine

17. lupus
EXAMPLE lupine

18. equus
EXAMPLE equine

19. piscis
EXAMPLE piscine

20. nostos
EXAMPLE nostalgia

21. algos
EXAMPLE nostalgic

22. kakos
EXAMPLE cacophonous

23. xylon
EXAMPLE xylophone

24. carnis
EXAMPLE carnivorous

25. voro
EXAMPLE omnivorous

26. herba
27. *omnis*

28. *potens, potentis*

29. *sciens*

30. *ubiique*

31. *vale!*

32. *clam*
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. American poet William Cullen Bryant wrote a poem in 1811 called Thanatopsis. You are familiar with both roots in the word. Can you figure out the meaning? ____________.

2. If you wanted to coin a word for the study or science of death and dying, what would you come up with? ____________.

3. Pheme, as you know from euphemism, means voice. This root derives from a Greek verb phanai, to speak, which, as it traveled through Latin, Old French, and Middle English, finally took on the spelling phet-, phec-, or phes-. And you recall that the Greek prefix pro-means beforehand or ahead (as in prognosis, prologue, etc.). Can you now combine elements to form a word meaning:
   (a) to say beforehand; to foretell (an occurrence before it actually happens)? ____________.
   (b) the foretelling of such an occurrence? ____________.
   (c) the person who foretells? ____________.

4. Can you combine a Latin prefix and root to form words of the same meaning?
   (a) to foretell: ____________.
   (b) the act of foretelling: ____________.

5. An eminent psychoanalyst, Richard Karpe of Connecticut, has coined the term nostopathy (nos-TOP′-ə-thee) for an emotional disorder he diagnosed among a number of his patients who were returning veterans of World War II and of the Korean and Vietnam wars. You know both roots in the word. Can you figure out the meaning? ____________.

6. Coin a word that means:
   (a) the killing of foxes: ____________.
   (b) the killing of wolves: ____________.
   (c) the killing of lions, tigers, and other cats: ____________.
   (d) the killing of bears: ____________.

7. Figure out an adjective that means:
   (a) fish-eating: ____________.
   (b) insect-eating: ____________.

8. Have you ever wondered whether the Canary Islands were named after the Latin root canis, dog? They were. Large, wild dogs inhabited the area. Pretty songbirds also abounded there. What were these birds called? ____________.

9. A new verb was coined some years ago, based on the Latin root potens, potentis,
meaning (of a drug) to make more effective or powerful; to augment the effect of another drug. Can you figure out what this verb would be? ____________.

(Answers in Chapter 18)

GETTING USED TO NEW WORDS

Reference has been made, in previous chapters, to the intimate relationship between reading and vocabulary building. Good books and the better magazines will not only acquaint you with a host of new ideas (and, therefore, new words, since every word is the verbalization of an idea), but also will help you gain a more complete and a richer understanding of the hundreds of words you are learning through your work in this book. If you have been doing a sufficient amount of stimulating reading—and that means, at minimum, several magazines a week and at least three books of non-fiction a month—you have been meeting, constantly, over and over again, the new words you have been learning in these pages. Every such encounter is like seeing an old friend in a new place. You know how much better you understand your friends when you have a chance to see them react to new situations; similarly, you will gain a much deeper understanding of the friends you have been making among words as you see them in different contexts and in different places.

My recommendations in the past have been of non-fiction titles, but novels too are a rich source of additions to your vocabulary—provided you stay alert to the new words you will inevitably meet in reading novels.

The natural temptation, when you encounter a brand-new word in a novel, is to ignore it—the lines of the plot are perfectly clear even if many of the author's words are not.

I want to counsel strongly that you resist the temptation to ignore the unfamiliar words you may meet in your novel reading: resist it with every ounce of your energy, for only by such resistance can you keep building your vocabulary as you read.

What should you do? Don’t rush to a dictionary, don’t bother underlining the word, don’t keep long lists of words that you will eventually look up en masse—these activities are likely to become painful and you will not continue them for any great length of time.

Instead, do something quite simple—and very effective.

When you meet a new word, underline it with a mental pencil. That is, pause for a second and attempt to figure out its meaning from its use in the sentence or from its etymological root or prefix, if it contains one you have studied. Make a mental note of it, say it aloud once or twice—and then go on reading.

That’s all there is to it. What you are doing, of course, is developing the same type of mind-set toward the new word that you have developed toward the words you have studied in this book. And the results, of course, will be the same—you will begin to notice the word occurring again and again in other reading you do, and finally, having seen it in a number of varying contexts, you will begin to get enough of its connotation and flavor to come to a fairly accurate understanding of its meaning. In this way you will be developing alertness not only to the words you have studied in this book, but to all expressive and meaningful words. And your vocabulary will keep growing.
But of course that will happen only if you keep reading.

I do not wish to recommend any particular novels or novelists, since the type of fiction one enjoys is a very personal matter. You doubtless know the kind of story you like—mystery, science fiction, spy, adventure, historical, political, romantic, Western, biographical, one or all of the above. Or you may be entranced by novels of ideas, of sexual prowess, of fantasy, of life in different segments of society from your own. No matter. Find the kind of novel or novelist you enjoy by browsing in the public library or among the thousands of titles in bookstores that have a rich assortment of paperbacks as well as hardbacks.

And then read! And keep on the alert for new words! You will find them by the hundreds and thousands. Bear in mind: people with rich vocabularies have been reading omnivorously, voraciously, since childhood—including the ingredients listed in small print on bread wrappers and cereal boxes.

(End of Session 41)

---

1 Remember Ogden Nash’s delightful definition?

   The cow is of the bovine ilk,
   One end moo, the other end milk.

2 Latest figures, 1978, for the United States: males, 68.5 years; females, 76.4 years.
The spelling of English words is archaic, it’s confusing, it’s needlessly complicated, and, if you have a sense of humor, it’s downright comical. In fact, any insulting epithet you might wish to level against our weird methods of putting letters together to form words would probably be justified—but it’s our spelling, and we’re stuck with it.

How completely stuck we are is illustrated by a somewhat ludicrous event that goes back to 1906, and that cost philanthropist Andrew Carnegie $75,000.

Working under a five-year grant of funds from Carnegie, and headed by the esteemed scholar Brander Matthews, the Simplified Spelling Board published in that year a number of recommendations for bringing some small semblance of order out of the great chaos of English spelling. Their suggestions affected a mere three hundred words out of the half million then in the language. Here are a few examples, to give you a general idea:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPELLING THEN CURRENT</th>
<th>SIMPLIFIED SPELLING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mediaeval</td>
<td>medieval</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>doubt</td>
<td>dout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>debtor</td>
<td>dettor</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>head</td>
<td>hed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>though</td>
<td>tho</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>through</td>
<td>thru</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>laugh</td>
<td>laf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tough</td>
<td>tuf</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>knife</td>
<td>nife</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>theatre</td>
<td>theater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centre</td>
<td>center</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>phantom</td>
<td>fantom</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

These revisions seemed eminently sensible to no less a personage than the then President of the United States, Theodore Roosevelt. So delighted was he with the new garb in which
these three hundred words could be clothed that he immediately ordered that all
government documents be printed in simplified spelling. And the result? Such a howl went
up from the good citizens of the republic, from the nation’s editors and schoolteachers and
businessmen, that the issue was finally debated in the halls of Congress. Almost to a man,
senators and representatives stood opposed to the plan. Teddy Roosevelt, as you have
doubtless heard, was a stubborn fellow—but when Congress threatened to hold up the
White House stationery appropriation unless the President backed down, Teddy rescinded
the order. Roosevelt ran for re-election some time later, and lost. That his attitude toward
spelling contributed to his defeat is of course highly doubtful—nevertheless an opposition
New York newspaper, the day the returns were in, maliciously commented on the outgoing
incumbent in a one-word simplified-spelling editorial: “THRU!”

Roosevelt was not the first President to be justifiably outraged by our ridiculous
orthography. Over a hundred years ago, when Andrew Jackson was twitted on his poor
spelling, he is supposed to have made this characteristic reply, “Well, sir, it is a damned
poor mind that cannot think of more than one way to spell a word!” And according to one
apocryphal version, it was Jackson’s odd spelling that gave birth to the expression “okay.”
Jackson thought, so goes the story, that “all correct” was spelled “orl korrekt,” and he used
O.K. as the abbreviation for these words when he approved state papers.

Many years ago, the British playwright George Bernard Shaw offered a dramatic
proposal for reducing England’s taxes. Just eliminate unnecessary letters from our unwieldy
spelling, he said, and you’ll save enough money in paper and printing to cut everyone’s tax
rate in half. Maybe it would work, but it’s never been put to the test—and the way things
look now, it never will be. Current practice more and more holds spelling exactly where it
is, bad though it may be. It is a scientific law of language that if enough people make a
“mistake,” the “mistake” becomes acceptable usage. That law applies to pronunciation, to
grammar, to word meanings, but not to spelling. Maybe it’s because of our misbegotten
faith in, and worship of, the printed word—maybe it’s because written language tends to be
static, while spoken language constantly changes. Whatever the cause, spelling today
successfully resists every logical effort at reform. “English spelling,” said Thorstein Veblen,
“satisfies all the requirements of the canons of reputability under the law of conspicuous
waste. It is archaic, cumbrous, and ineffective.” Perfectly true. Notwithstanding, it’s here to
stay.

Your most erudite friend doubtless misspells the name of the Hawaiian guitar. I asked
half a dozen members of the English department of a large college to spell the word—
without exception they responded with ukelele. Yet the only accepted form is ukulele.

Judging from my experience with my classes at Rio Hondo College, half the population of
the country must think the word is spelled alright. Seventy-five per cent of the members of
my classes can’t spell embarrassing or coolly. People will go on misspelling these four words,
but the authorized spellings will remain impervious to change.

Well, you know the one about Mohammed and the mountain. Though it’s true that we
have modernized spelling to a microscopic extent in the last eighty years (traveler, center;
theater, medieval, labor, and honor, for example, have pretty much replaced traveller, centre,
theatre, mediaeval, labour, and honour), still the resistance to change has not observably
weakened. If spelling won’t change, as it probably won’t, those of us who consider
ourselves poor spellers will have to. We’ll just have to get up and go to the mountain.

Is it hard to become a good speller? I have demonstrated over and over again in my classes that anyone of normal intelligence and average educational background can become a good speller in very little time.

What makes the task so easy?

First—investigations have proved that 95 per cent of the spelling errors that educated people make occur in just one hundred words. Not only do we all misspell the same words—but we misspell them in about the same way.

Second—correct spelling relies exclusively on memory, and the most effective way to train memory is by means of association or, to use the technical term, mnemonics.

If you fancy yourself an imperfect or even a terrible speller, the chances are very great that you’ve developed a complex solely because you misspell some or all of the hundred words with which this Intermission deals. When you have conquered this single list, and I shall immediately proceed to demonstrate how easy it is, by means of mnemonics, to do so, 95 per cent of your spelling difficulties will in all likelihood vanish.

Let us start with twenty-five words from the list. In the first column you will find the correct spelling of each, and in the second column the simple mnemonic that will forevermore fix that correct spelling in your memory.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CORRECT SPELLING</th>
<th>MNEMONIC</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. all right</td>
<td>Two words, no matter what it means. Keep in mind that it’s the opposite of <em>all wrong</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cooly</td>
<td>Of course you can spell <em>cool</em>—simply add the adverbial ending -ly.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. supersede</td>
<td>This is the only word in the language ending in <em>-sede</em> (the only one, mind you—there isn’t a single other one so spelled).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. succeed</td>
<td>The only three words in the entire language ending in <em>-ceed</em>. When you think of the three words in the order given here, the initial letters form the beginning of SPEED.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. proceed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. exceed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. cede, precede, recede, etc.</td>
<td>All other words with a similar-sounding final syllable end in <em>-cede</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. procedure</td>
<td>One of the double e’s of <em>proceed</em> moves to the end in the noun form, <em>procedure</em>.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. stationery</td>
<td>This is the word that means paper, and notice the -er in <em>paper</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this spelling, the words means standing, and notice the -a in
Whether or not you have much faith in your spelling ability, you will need very little time to conquer the preceding twenty-five demons. Spend a few minutes, now, on each of those words in the list that you’re doubtful of, and then test your success by means of the exercise below. Perhaps to your astonishment, you will find it easy to make a high score.

A test of your learning

Instructions: After studying the preceding list of words, fill in the missing letters correctly.

1. a__________right
2. coo__________y
3. super__________
4. suc__________
5. pro__________
Mere repetitious drill is of no value in learning to spell a word correctly. You've probably heard the one about the youngster who was kept after school because he was in the habit of using the ungrammatical expression “I have went.” Miss X was going to cure her pupil, even if it required drastic measures. So she ordered him to write “I have gone” one thousand times. “Just leave your work on my desk before you go home,” she said, “and I’ll find it when I come in tomorrow morning.” Well, there were twenty pages of neat script on her desk next morning, one thousand lines of “I have gone’s,” and on the last sheet was a note from the child. “Dear Teacher,” it read, “I have done the work and I have went home.” If this didn’t actually happen, it logically could have, for in any drill, if the mind is not actively engaged, no learning will result. If you drive a car, or sew, or do any familiar and repetitious manual work, you know how your hands can carry on an accustomed task while your mind is far away. And if you hope to learn to spell by filling pages with a word, stop wasting your time. All you’ll get for your trouble is writer’s cramp.

The only way to learn to spell those words that now plague you is to devise a mnemonic for each one.

If you are never quite sure whether it’s *indispensible* or *indispensable*, you can spell it out one hundred, one thousand, or one million times—and the next time you have occasion to write it in a sentence, you’ll still wonder whether to end it with -ible or -able. But if you say to yourself just once that able people are generally indispensable, that thought will come to you whenever you need to spell the word; in a few seconds you’ve conquered another spelling demon. By engineering your own mnemonic through a study of the architecture of a troublesome word, you will become so quickly and completely involved with the correct
spelling of that word that it will be impossible for you ever to be stumped again.

Let us start at once. Below you will find another twenty-five words from the list of one hundred demons, each offered to you in both the correct form and in the popular misspelling. Go through the test quickly, checking off what you consider a proper choice in each case. In that way you will discover which of the twenty-five you would be likely to get caught on. Then devise a personal mnemonic for each word you flunked, writing your ingenious result out in the margin of the page. And don’t be alarmed if some of your mnemonics turn out kind of silly—the sillier they are the more likely you are to recall them in an emergency. One of my pupils, who could not remember how many l’s to put into tranquillity (or is it tranquility?), shifted his mind into high gear and came up with this: “In the old days life was more tranquil than today, and people wrote with quills instead of fountain pens. Hence—tranquillity!” Another pupil, a girl who always chewed her nails over irresistible before she could decide whether to end it with -ible or -able, suddenly realized that a certain brand of lipstick was called irresistible, the point being of course that the only vowel in lipstick is i—hence, -ible! Silly, aren’t they? But they work. Go ahead to the test now; and see how clever—or silly—you can be.

**SPELLING TEST**

1. a. surprize   
   b. surprise
2. a. inoculate   
   b. innoculate
3. a. definitely   
   b. definately
4. a. priviledge   
   b. privilege
5. a. incidently   
   b. incidentally
6. a. predictible   
   b. predictable
7. a. dissipate   
   b. disippate
8. a. descriminate   
   b. discriminate
9. a. description   
   b. discription
10. a. baloon   
    b. balloon
11. a. occurrence   
    b. occurrence
12. a. truely   
    b. truly
13. a. arguement   
    b. argument
14. a. assistant   
    b. asisstant
15. a. grammer   
    b. grammar
16. a. parallel   
    b. paralell
17. a. drunkeness
   b. drunkenness

18. a. suddeness
    b. suddenness

19. a. embarassment
    b. embarrassed

20. a. weird
    b. wierd

21. a. pronounciation
    b. pronunciation

22. a. noticeable
    b. noticable

23. a. developement
    b. development

24. a. vicious
    b. viscious

25. a. insistent
    b. insistant
By now you’re well on the way toward developing a definite superiority complex about your spelling—which isn’t a half-bad thing, for I’ve learned, working with my students, that many people think they’re awful spellers, and have completely lost faith in their ability, solely because they get befuddled over no more than two dozen or so common words that they use over and over again and always misspell. Every other word they spell perfectly, but they still think they’re prize boobs in spelling until their self-confidence is restored. So if you’re beginning to gain more assurance, you’re on the right track. The conquest of the one hundred common words most frequently misspelled is not going to assure you that you will always come out top man in a spelling bee, but it’s certain to clean up your writing and bolster your ego.

So far you have worked with fifty of the one hundred spelling demons. Here, now, is the remainder of the list. Test yourself, or have someone who can keep a secret test you, and discover which ones are your Waterloo. Study each one you miss as if it were a problem in engineering. Observe how it’s put together and devise whatever association pattern will fix the correct form in your mind.

Happy spelling!

**SPELLING DEMONS**

These fifty words complete the list of one hundred words that most frequently stump the inexpert spellers:

1. embarrassing
2. judgment
3. indispensable
4. disappear
5. disappoint
6. corroborate
7. sacrilegious
8. tranquillity
9. exhilaration
10. newsstand
11. license
12. irresistible
13. persistent
14. dilemma
15. perseverance
16. until (but till)
17. tyrannize
18. vacillate
19. oscillate
20. accommodate
21. dilettante
22. changeable
23. accessible
24. forty
25. desirable
26. panicky
27. seize
28. leisure
29. receive
30. achieve
31. holiday
32. existence
33. pursue
34. pastime
35. possesses
36. professor
37. category
38. rhythmical
39. vacuum
40. benefited
41. committee
42. grievous
43. conscious
44. plebeian
45. tariff
46. sheriff
47. connoisseur
48. necessary
49. sergeant
50. misspelling
TEASER PREVIEW

What verb, ending in -ate, means:

to exhaust?
to scold severely?
to deny oneself?
to repeat the main points?
to be a victim of mental or intellectual stagnation?
to pretend?
to hint?
to make (something) easier to bear?
to show sympathy?
to waver indecisively?
SESSION 42

WORDS are symbols of ideas—and we have been learning, discussing, and working with words as they revolve around certain basic concepts.

Starting with an idea (personality types, doctors, occupations, science, lying, actions, speech, insults, compliments, etc.), we have explored the meanings and uses of ten basic words; then, working from each word, we have wandered off toward any ideas and additional words that a basic word might suggest, or toward any other words built on the same Latin or Greek roots.

By this natural and logical method, you have been able to make meaningful and lasting contact with fifty to a hundred or more words in each chapter. And you have discovered, I think, that while five isolated words may be difficult to learn in one day, fifty to a hundred or more related words are easy to learn in a few sessions.

In this session we learn words that tell what’s going on, what’s happening, what people do to each other or to themselves, or what others do to them.

IDEAS

1. complete exhaustion

   You have stayed up all night. And what were you doing? Playing poker, a very pleasant way of whiling away time? No. Engaging in some creative activity, like writing a short story, planning a political campaign, discussing fascinating questions with friends? No.

   The examples I have offered are exciting or stimulating—as psychologists have discovered, it is not work or effort that causes fatigue, but boredom, frustration, or a similar feeling.

   You have stayed up all night with a very sick husband, wife, child, or dear friend. And despite all your ministrations, the patient is sinking. You can see how this long vigil contains all the elements of frustration that contribute to mental, physical, and nervous fatigue.

   And so you are bushed—but completely bushed. Your exhaustion is mental, it is physiological, it is emotional.

   What verb expresses the effect of the night’s frustrations on you?

   to enervate

2. tongue-lashing

   You suddenly see the flashing red light as you glance in your rear-view mirror. It’s the middle of the night, yet the police flasher is clear as day—and then you hear the low growl
of the siren. So you pull over, knowing you were speeding along at 70 on the 55-mile-an-
hour-limit freeway—after all, there was not another car in sight on the deserted stretch of
road you were traveling.

The cop is pleasant, courteous, smiling; merely asks for your driver’s license and
registration; even says “Please.”

Feeling guilty and stupid, you become irritated. So what do you do?

You lash out at the officer with all the verbal vituperation welling up in you from your
self-anger. You scold him harshly for not spending his time looking for violent criminals
instead of harassing innocent motorists; you call into question his honesty, his ambition, his
fairness, even his ancestry. To no avail, of course—you stare at the traffic ticket morosely
as the police cruiser pulls away.

What verb describes how you reacted?

to castigate

3. altruistic

Phyllis is selfless and self-sacrificing. Her husband’s needs and desires come first—even
when they conflict with her own. Clothes for her two daughters are her main concern—
even if she has to wear a seven-year-old coat and outmoded dresses so that Paula and
Evelyn can look smart and trim. At the dinner table, she heaps everyone’s plate—while she
herself often goes without. Phyllis will deny herself, will scrimp and save—all to the end
that she may offer her husband and children the luxuries that her low self-esteem does not
permit her to give herself.

What verb expresses what Phyllis does?


to self-abnegate

4. repetition

You have delivered a long, complicated lecture to your class, and now, to make sure that
they will remember the important points, you restate the key ideas, the main thoughts. You
offer, in short, a kind of brief summary, step by step, omitting all extraneous details.

What verb best describes what you do?


to recapitulate

5. no joie de vivre

Perhaps you wake up some gloomy Monday morning (why is it that Monday is always
the worst day of the week?) and begin to think of the waste of the last five years. Intellectually, there has been no progress—you’ve read scarcely half a dozen books, haven’t
made one new, exciting friend, haven’t had a startling or unusual thought. Economically, things are no better—same old debts to meet, same old hundred dollars in the bank, same
old job, same old routine of the eight-to-five workdays, the tuna fish or chicken salad sandwich for lunch, the same dreary ride home. What a life! No change, nothing but routine, sameness, monotony—and for what? (By now you’d better get up—this type of thinking never leads anywhere, as you’ve long since learned.)

What verb describes how you think you live?

6. pretense

Your neighbor, Mrs. Brown, pops in without invitation to tell you of her latest troubles with (a) her therapist, (b) her hairdresser, (c) her husband, (d) her children, and/or (e) her gynecologist.

Since Florence Brown is dull to the point of ennui, and anyway you have a desk piled high with work you were planning to light into, you find it difficult to concentrate on what she is saying. However, you do not wish to offend her by sending her packing, or even by appearing to be uninterested, so you pretend rapt attention, nodding wisely at what you hope are the right places.

What verb describes this feigning of interest?

7. slight hint, no more

You are an author and are discussing with your editor the possible avenues of publicity and advertising for your new book. At one point in the conversation the editor makes several statements which might—or might not—be construed to mean that the company is going to promote the book heavily. For example, “If we put some real money behind this, we might sell a few copies,” or “I wonder if it would be a good idea to get you on a few talk shows …” No unequivocal commitments, no clear-cut promises, only the slight and oblique mention of possibilities.

What verb expresses what the editor is doing?

8. helpful

Aspirin doesn’t cure any diseases. Yet this popular and inexpensive drug is universally used to lighten and relieve various unpleasant symptoms of disease: aches and pains, fever, inflammations, etc.

What verb expresses the action of aspirin?

9. when the bell tolls
John Donne’s lines (made famous by Ernest Hemingway):

No man is an Iland, intire of it selfe; every man is a peece of the Continent, a part of the maine; if a Clod bee washed away by the Sea, Europe is the lesse, as well as if a Promontorie were, as well as if a Mannor of thy friends or of thine owne were; any mans death diminishes me, because I am involved in Mankinde; And therefore never send to know for whom the bell tolls; It tolls for thee.

are truer than you may think; any person who views another’s pain with complete detachment or indifference is shutting off important feelings.

When people have suffered a bereavement (as through death); when they have been wounded by life or by friends; then is the time they most need to feel that they are not alone, that you share their misery with them even if you cannot directly alleviate their sorrow. Your sympathy and compassion are, of course, alleviation enough.

What verb signifies this vicarious sharing of sorrow with someone who directly suffers?

10. when two men propose

Should you marry John or George? (You’re strongly and equally attracted to both.) John is handsome, virile, tender; George is stable, reliable, dependable, always there when you need him. George loves you deeply; John is more exciting. You decide on John, naturally.

But wait—marrying John would mean giving up George, and with George you always know where you stand; he’s like the Rock of Gibraltar (and sometimes almost as dull). So you change your mind—it’s George, on more mature reflection.

But how happy can you be with a husband who is not exciting? Maybe John would be best after all.

The pendulum swings back and forth—you cannot make up your mind and stick to it. (You fail to realize that your indecision proves that you don’t want to marry either one, or perhaps don’t want to give either one up, or possibly don’t even want to get married.) First it’s John, then it’s George, then back to John, then George again. Which is it, which is it?

What verb describes your pendulum-like indecision?

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. enervate
   
   EN′-ər-vayt′

2. castigate
   
   KAS′-tə-gayt′
<p>| | |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. self-abnegate</strong></td>
<td><strong>4. recapitulate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>EE′-kə-PICH′-ə-layt′</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>5. vegetate</strong></td>
<td><strong>6. simulate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>VEJ′-ə-tayt′</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>7. intimate</strong></td>
<td><strong>8. alleviate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Ə-LEE′-vee-ayt′</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>9. commiserate</strong></td>
<td><strong>10. vacillate</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>kə-MIZ′-ə-rayt</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>VAS′-ə-layt</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Can you work with the words?**

| 1. enervate | a. deny oneself |
| 2. castigate | b. stagnate |
| 3. self-abnegate | c. suggest; hint |
| 4. recapitulate | d. sympathize |
| 5. vegetate | e. waver |
| 6. simulate | f. exhaust |
| 7. intimate | g. lessen; lighten |
| 8. alleviate | h. summarize |
| 9. commiserate | i. pretend |
| 10. vacillate | j. censure; scold; slash at verbally |
Do you understand the words? (I)

Should you feel *enervated* after a good night’s sleep?
YES  NO

Do motorists who have been caught speeding sometimes start *castigating* the traffic officer?
YES  NO

Do people who are completely *self-abnegating* say “No!” to their needs and desires?
YES  NO

When you *recapitulate*, do you cover new material?
YES  NO

Do people possessed of *joie de vivre* usually feel that they are *vegetating*?
YES  NO

When you *simulate* alertness, do you purposely act somnolent?
YES  NO

When you *intimate*, do you make a direct statement?
YES  NO

Does aspirin often have an *alleviating* effect on pain?
YES  NO

Do we naturally *commiserate* with people who have suffered a bereavement?
YES  NO

Do decisive people often *vacillate*?
YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (II)

enervated—exhilarated
SAME    OPPOSITE

castigate—praise
SAME    OPPOSITE

self-abnegate—deny oneself
SAME    OPPOSITE

recapitulate—summarize
SAME    OPPOSITE

vegetate—stagnate
SAME    OPPOSITE

simulate—pretend
SAME    OPPOSITE

intimate—hint
SAME    OPPOSITE

alleviate—make worse
SAME    OPPOSITE

commiserate—sympathize
SAME    OPPOSITE

vacillate—decide
SAME    OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words?

pretend
  1. S__________________
scold
  2. C__________________
sacrifice one’s desires
  3. S__________________
waver
  4. V__________________
exhaust
  5. E__________________
sympathize
  6. C__________________
summarize
  7. R__________________
lighten
  8. A__________________
hint
  9. I__________________
stagnate
10. V__________________
(End of Session 42)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. more than fatigue

When you are *enervated*, you feel as if your nerves have been ripped out—or so the etymology of the word indicates.

*Enervate* is derived from e- (ex-), out, and Latin *nervus*, nerve. *Enervation* (en′-ər-VAY′-shən) is not just fatigue, but complete devitalization—physical, emotional, mental—as if every ounce of the life force has been sapped out, as if the last particle of energy has been drained away.

Despite its similar appearance to the word *energy*, *enervation* is almost a direct antonym. *Energy* is derived from the Greek prefix en-, in, plus the root ergon, work; erg is the term used in physics for a unit of work or energy. *Synergism* (sin′-ər-jiz-əm)—the prefix syn-, together or with, plus ergon—is the process by which two or more substances or drugs, by working together, produce a greater effect in combination than the sum total of their individual effects.

Alcohol, for example, is a depressant. So are barbiturates and other soporifics. Alcohol and barbiturates work synergistically (sin′-ər-JIS′-tik′-lee)—the effect of each is increased by the other if the two are taken together.

So if you’re drinking, don’t take a sleeping pill—or if you must take a pill for your insomnia, don’t drink—the combination, if not lethal, will do more to you than you may want done!

*Synergy* (sin′-ər-je), by the way, is an alternate form of *synergism*.

2. verbal punishment

*Castigate* is derived from a Latin verb meaning to punish; in present-day usage, the verb generally refers to verbal punishment, usually harsh and severe. It is somewhat synonymous with scold, criticize, rebuke, censure, reprimand, or berate, but much stronger than any of these—rail at, rant at, slash at, lash out at, or tongue-lash is a much closer synonym. When candidates for office castigate their opponents, they do not mince words.

Can you construct the noun form of castigate? 

3. saying “No!” to oneself

*Abnegate* is derived from Latin ab-, away (as in absent), plus nego, to deny—self-abnegation (ab′-nə-GAY′-shən), then, is self-denial. Nego itself is a contraction of Latin neg-, not, no, and aio, I say; to be self-abnegating is to say “No!” to what you want, as if some inner censor
were at work whispering, “No, you can’t have that, you can’t do that, you don’t deserve that, you’re not good enough for that....”

To **negate** (nə-GAYT′) is to deny the truth or existence of, as in “The atheist **negates** God”; or, by extension, to destroy by working against, as in, “His indulgence in expensive hobbies **negates** all his wife’s attempts to keep the family solvent.” Can you write the noun form of the verb **negate**? __________.

**Negative** and **negativity** obviously spring from the same source as **negate**.

**4. heads and headings**

Latin *caput, capitis* means *head*. The *captain* is the *head of* any group; the *capital* is the “head city” of a state or nation; and to **decapitate** (dee-KAP′-ə-tayt′) is to chop off someone’s *head*, a popular activity during the French Revolution after the guillotine was invented. Write the noun form of **decapitate**: __________.

Latin *capitulum* is a little head, or, by extension, the heading, or title, of a chapter. So when you **recapitulate**, you go through the chapter headings again (re-), etymologically speaking, or you summarize or review the main points.

Remembering how the noun and adjective forms are derived from **adulate** (Chapter 9), can you write the required forms of **recapitulate**?

- **NOUN**: __________.
- **ADJECTIVE**: __________.

When you **capitulate** (kə-PICH′-ə-layt′), etymologically you arrange in headings, or, as the meaning of the verb naturally evolved, you arrange conditions of surrender, as when an army **capitulates** to the enemy forces under prearranged conditions; or, by further natural extension, you stop resisting and give up, as in, “He realized there was no longer any point in resisting her advances, so he reluctantly **capitulated**.” Can you write the noun form of **capitulate**? __________.

**5. mere vegetables**

*Vegetable* is from Latin *vegeto*, to live and grow, which is what vegetables do—but that’s **all** they do, so to **vegetate**, is, by implication, to do no more than stay alive, stuck in a rut, leading an inactive, unstimulating, emotionally and intellectually stagnant existence. **Vegetation** (vej′-ə-TAY′-shən) is any dull, passive, stagnant existence; also any plant life, as the thick **vegetation** of a jungle.

**REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. e- (ex-)</strong></td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>nervus</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>en-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>ergon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>syn-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>-ic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>-ion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>ab-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>nego</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>caput, capitis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>de-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>capitulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>re-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>-ory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>vegeto</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you pronounce the words?

1. enervation en′-ər-VAY′-shən
2. synergism SIN′-ər-jiz-əm
3. synergy SIN′-ər-jee
4. synergistic sin′-ər-JIS′-tik
5. castigation kas′-tə-GAY′-shən
6. self-abnegation self-ab′-nə-GAY′-shən
7. negate nə-GAYT′
8. negation nə-GAY′-shən
9. decapitate dee-KAP′-ə-tayt′
10. decapitation dee-kap′-ə-TAY′-shən
11. recapitulation ree-kə-pich′-ə-LAY′-shən
12. recapitulatory ree-kə-PICH′-ə-lə-tawr′-ee
13. capitulate kə-PICH′-ə-layt′
14. capitulation kə-pich′-ə-LAY′-shən

Can you work with the words?

1. enervation a. tongue-lashing
2. synergism, synergy b. denial; destruction
3. castigation c. a lopping off of one’s head
4. self-abnegation d. summary; review of main points
5. negation e. self-denial
6. decapitation f. utter exhaustion; mental, emotional, and physical drain
7. recapitulation g. a working together for greater effect
8. capitulation h. surrender
Do you understand the words?

enervating—refreshing
SAME   OPPOSITE

synergistic—neutralizing
SAME   OPPOSITE

castigation—scolding
SAME   OPPOSITE

self-abnegation—egoism
SAME   OPPOSITE

negate—accept
SAME   OPPOSITE

decapitate—behead
SAME   OPPOSITE

recapitulatory—summarizing
SAME   OPPOSITE

capitulate—resist
SAME   OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words?

to give in
  1. C______________
working together for greater effect (*adj.*)
  2. S______________
total fatigue
  3. E______________
for the purpose of summarizing or review (*adj.*)
  4. R______________
self-denial
  5. S______________-A______________
deny; render ineffective; nullify
  6. N______________
process by which two or more substances produce a greater effect than the sum of the individual effects
  7. S______________
  or S______________
to cut off the head of
  8. D______________
strong censure
  9. C______________
to surrender
10. C______________
KEY:  1–capitulate, 2–synergistic, 3–enervation, 4–recapitulatory, 5–self-abnegation, 6–negate, 7–synergism or synergy, 8–decapitate, 9–castigation, 10–capitulate

(End of Session 43)
ORIGINS AND RELATED WORDS

1. not the real McCoy

*Simulate* is from Latin *simulo*, to copy; and *simulo* itself derives from the Latin adjectives *similis*, like or similar.

*Simulation* (sim′-yə-LAY′-shən), then, is copying the real thing, pretending to be the genuine article by taking on a similar appearance. The *simulation* of joy is quite a feat when you really feel depressed.

Genuine pearls grow inside oysters; *simulated* pearls are synthetic, but look like the ones from oysters. (Rub a pearl against your teeth to tell the difference—the natural pearl feels gritty.) So the frequent advertisement of an inexpensive necklace made of “genuine *simulated* pearls” can fool you if you don’t know the word—you’re being offered a genuine fake.

*Dissimulation* (də-sim′-yə-LAY′-shən) is something else! When you *dissimulate* (də-SIM′-yə-layt′), you hide your true feelings by making a pretense of opposite feelings. (Then again, maybe it’s not something completely else!)

Sycophants are great *dissimulators*—they may feel contempt, but show admiration; they may feel negative, but express absolutely positive agreement.

A close synonym of *dissimulate* is *dissemble* (də-SEM′-bəl), which also is to hide true feelings by pretending the opposite; or, additionally, to conceal facts, or one’s true intentions, by deception; or, still further additionally, to pretend ignorance of facts you’d rather not admit, when, indeed, you’re fully aware of them.

The noun is *dissemblance* (də-SEM′-bləns).

In *dissimulate* and *dissemble*, the negative prefix *dis-* acts largely to make both words pejorative.

2. hints and helps

The verb *intimate* is from Latin *intimus*, innermost, the same root from which the adjective *intimate* (IN′-tə-mət) and its noun *intimacy* (IN′-tə-mə-see) are derived; but the relationship is only in etymology, not in meaning. An *intimation* (in′-tə-MAY′-shən) contains a significance buried deep in the innermost core, only a hint showing. As you grow older, you begin to have *intimations* that you are mortal; when someone aims a .45 at you, or when a truck comes roaring down at you as you drive absent-mindedly against a red light through an intersection, you are suddenly very sure that you are mortal.

*Alleviate* is a combination of Latin *levis*, light (not heavy), the prefix *ad-* , to, and the verb suffix. (*Ad-* changes to *al-* before a root starting with *l-*)
If something alleviates your pain, it makes your pain lighter for you; if I alleviate your sadness, I make it lighter to bear; and if you need some alleviation of your problems, you need them made lighter and less burdensome. To alleviate is to relieve only temporarily, not to cure or do away with. (Relieve is also from levis, plus re-, again—to make light or easy again.) The adjective form of alleviate is alleviative (ə-LEE'-vee-ay'-tiv)—aspirin is an alleviative drug.

Anything light will rise—so from the prefix e- (ex-), out, plus levis, we can construct the verb elevate, etymologically, to raise out, or, actually, raise up, as to elevate one’s spirits, raise them up, make them lighter; or elevate someone to a higher position, which is what an elevator does.

Have you ever seen a performance of magic in which a person or an object apparently rises in the air as if floating? That’s levitation (lev′-ə-TAY′-shən)—rising through no visible means. (I’ve watched it a dozen times and never could figure it out!) The verb, to so rise, is levitate (LEV′-ə-tayt′).

And how about levity (LEV′-ə-tee)? That’s lightness too, but of a different sort—lightness in the sense of frivolity, flippancy, joking, or lack of seriousness, especially when solemnity, dignity, or formality is required or more appropriate, as in “tones of levity,” or as in, “Levity is out of place at a funeral, in a house of worship, at the swearing-in ceremonies of a President or Supreme Court Justice,” or as in, “Okay, enough levity—now let’s get down to business!”

3. sharing someone's misery

Latin miser, wretched, the prefix con- (which, as you know, becomes com- before a root beginning with m-), together or with, and the verb suffix -ate are the building blocks from which commiserate is constructed. “I commiserate with you,” then, means, “I am wretched together with you—I share your misery.” The noun form? ____________.

Miser, miserly, miserable, misery all come from the same root.

4. swing and sway

Vacillate—note the single c, double l—derives from Latin vacillo, to swing back and forth. The noun form? ____________.

People who swing back and forth in indecision, who are irresolute, who can, unfortunately, see both, or even three or four, sides of every question, and so have difficulty making up their minds, are vacillatory (VAS′-ə-lə-tawr′-ee). They are also, usually, ambivalent (am-BIV′-ə-lənt)—they have conflicting and simultaneous emotions about the same person or thing; or they want to go but they also want to stay; or they love something, but they hate it too. The noun is ambivalence (am-BIV′-ə-ləns)—fromambi both. (Remember ambivert and ambidextrous from Chapter 3?)

Ambivalence has best been defined (perhaps by Henny Youngman—if he didn’t say it first, he should have) as watching your mother-in-law drive over a cliff in your new Cadillac.
To *vacillate* is to swing mentally or emotionally. To sway back and forth physically is *oscillate*—again note the double *l*—(OS′-ə-layt′), from Latin *oscillum*, a swing. A pendulum *oscillates*, the arm of a metronome *oscillates*, and people who’ve had much too much to drink *oscillate* when they try to walk. The noun? ____________.

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFERENCE, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. simulo</td>
<td>to copy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. similis</td>
<td>like, similar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. dis-</td>
<td>pejorative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. ad- (al-)</td>
<td>to, toward</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. levis</td>
<td>light</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. -ate</td>
<td>verb suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. -ion</td>
<td>noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. e- (ex-)</td>
<td>out</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. intimus</td>
<td>innermost</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. miser</td>
<td>wretched</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. vacillo</td>
<td>to swing back and forth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. ambi-</td>
<td>both</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
13. oscillum a swing

USING THE WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. simulation sim′-yə-LAY′-shən
2. dissimulate də-SIM′-yə-layt′
3. dissimulation də-sim′-yə-LAY′-shən
4. dissemble də-SEM′-bəl
5. dissemblance də-SEM′-bləns
6. intimation in′-tə-MAY′-shən
7. alleviation ə-lee′-vee-AY′-shən
8. alleviative ə-LEE′-vee-ay′-tiv
9. levitate LEV′-ə-tayt′
10. levitation lev′-ə-TAY′-shən
11. levy LEV′-ə-tee
12. commiseration kə-miz′-ə-RAY′-shən
13. vacillation vas′-ə-LAY′-shən
14. vacillatory VAS′-ə-lə-tawr′-ee
15. ambivalent am-BIV′-ə-lənt
16. ambivalence am-BIV′-ə-ləns
17. oscillate OS′-ə-layt′
18. oscillation os′-ə-LAY′-shən

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. simulation a. hint
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>dissemble</td>
<td>b. flippancy or joking when seriousness is required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>intimation</td>
<td>c. a sharing of grief</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>alleviation</td>
<td>d. physical swaying; swinging action, as of a pendulum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>levitate</td>
<td>e. a swinging back and forth in indecision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>levy</td>
<td>f. pretense</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>commiseration</td>
<td>g. conflicted and contrary feelings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>vacillation</td>
<td>h. rise in the air (as by magic or illusion)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>ambivalence</td>
<td>i. pretend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>oscillation</td>
<td>j. a lightening; a making less severe</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Can you work with the words? (II)

1. dissimulate
   a. pretense of ignorance

2. dissemblance
   b. a rising and floating in air

3. alleviative
   c. having simultaneous and contrary feelings

4. levitation
   d. tending to swing back and forth in indecision

5. vacillatory
   e. to swing back and forth like a pendulum

6. ambivalent
   f. to hide real feelings by pretending opposite feelings

7. oscillate
   g. tending to ease (pain, burdens, suffering, etc.)
Do you understand the words?

simulated—genuine
SAME     OPPOSITE
dissimulate—pretend
SAME     OPPOSITE
dissemble—be truthful
SAME     OPPOSITE
intimation—hint
SAME     OPPOSITE
alleviation—reduction
SAME     OPPOSITE
levitate—sink
SAME     OPPOSITE
levity—flippancy
SAME     OPPOSITE
vacillation—decisiveness
SAME     OPPOSITE
ambivalent—confused
SAME     OPPOSITE
oscillate—sway
SAME     OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words?

to swing back and forth
  1. O______________

feeling both ways at the same time (adj.)
  2. A______________

to conceal real feelings
  3. D______________
  or D______________

pretense
  4. S______________

to pretend ignorance though knowing the facts
  5. D______________

joking; frivolity; flippancy
  6. L______________

indecisive
  7. V______________
  or V______________

to rise in the air, as by illusion
  8. L______________

tending to ease (pain, etc.) (adj.)
  9. A______________
  or A______________
a sharing of another’s grief
  10. C______________
CHAPTER REVIEW

A. Do you recognize the words?

1. Complete exhaustion:
   (a) synergism, (b) enervation, (c) negation

2. Co-operation in producing effects:
   (a) synergy, (b) castigation, (c) capitulation

3. Lop off the head of:
   (a) castigate, (b) capitulate, (c) decapitate

4. deny; render ineffective:
   (a) castigate, (b) negate, (c) recapitulate

5. stagnate:
   (a) intimate, (b) simulate, (c) vegetate

6. concealment of true feelings:
   (a) simulation, (b) dissimulation, (c) dissemblance

7. sympathy:
   (a) levity, (b) ambivalence, (c) commiseration

8. indecisiveness:
   (a) vacillation, (b) oscillation, (c) dissimulation

9. aware of contrary feelings:
   (a) alleviative, (b) dissimulating, (c) ambivalent
### B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. nervus</td>
<td>enervate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE enervate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. ergon</td>
<td>energy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE energy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. nego</td>
<td>self-abnegation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE self-abnegation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. caput, capitis</td>
<td>decapitate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE decapitate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. capitulum</td>
<td>recapitulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE recapitulate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. vegeto</td>
<td>vegetate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE vegetate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. simulo</td>
<td>dissimulate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE dissimulate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. similis</td>
<td>similarity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE similarity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. levis</td>
<td>levity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE levity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. intimus</td>
<td>intimation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE intimation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. miser</td>
<td>commiserate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE commiserate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12. vacillo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE  vacillate
13. *amb*-
EXAMPLE  ambivalent
14. *oscillum*
EXAMPLE  oscillate
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

We have previously met the Greek prefix syn-, together or with, in synonym (“names together”) and sympathy (“feeling with”), and again in this chapter in synergism (“working together”).

Syn- is a most useful prefix to know. Like Latin con-, (together or with) and ad- (to, toward), the final letter changes depending on the first letter of the root to which it is attached. Syn- becomes sym- before b, m, and p.

Can you construct some words using syn-, or sym-?

1. Etymologically, Jews are “led together” in a house of worship (agogos, leading). Can you construct the word for this temple or place of worship? __________________.

2. There is a process by which dissimilar organisms live together (bios, life) in close association, each in some way helping, and getting help from, the other (like the shark and the pilot fish). What word, ending in -sis, designates such a process? ______________.

   What would the adjective form be? ______________.

3. Using Greek phone, sound, write the word that etymologically refers to a musical composition in which the sounds of all instruments are in harmony together ______________.

   Using the suffix -ic, write the adjective form of this word: ______________.

4. Combine sym- with metron, measurement, to construct a word designating similarity of shape on both sides (i.e., “measurement together”): ______________.

   Write the adjective form of this word: ______________.

5. Syn- plus dromos, a running, are the building blocks of a medical word designating a group of symptoms that occur (i.e., run) together in certain diseases. Can you figure out the word? ______________.

6. The same dromos, a running, combines with Greek hippos, horse, to form a word referring to a place in ancient Greece in which horse and chariot races were run. The word? ______________.

7. Hippos, horse, plus Greek potamos, river, combine to form a word designating one of the three pachyderms we discussed in an earlier chapter. The word? ______________.

   (Answers in Chapter 18.)

PICKING YOUR FRIENDS’ BRAINS

You can build your vocabulary, I have said, by increasing your familiarity with new ideas and by becoming alert to the new words you meet in your reading of magazines and books.
There is still another productive method, one that will be particularly applicable in view of all the new words you are learning from your study of these pages. That method is *picking your friends’ brains.*

Intelligent people are interested in words because words are symbols of ideas, and the person with an alert mind is always interested in ideas.

You may be amazed, if you have never tried it, to find that you can stir up an animated discussion by asking, in a social group that you attend, “What does __________ mean?” (Use any word that particularly fascinates you.) Someone in the group is likely to know, and almost everyone will be willing to make a guess. From that point on, others in the group will ask questions about their own favorite words (most people do have favorites), or about words that they themselves have in some manner recently learned. As the discussion continues along these lines, you will be introduced to new words yourself, and if your friends have fairly good vocabularies you may strike a rich vein of pay dirt and come away with a large number of words to add to your vocabulary.

This method of picking your friends’ brains is particularly fruitful because you will be learning not from a page of print (as in this book or as in your other reading) but from real live persons—the same sources that children use to increase their vocabularies at such prodigious rates. No learning is quite as effective as the learning that comes from other people—no information in print can ever be as vivid as information that comes from another human being. And so the words you pick up from your friends will have an amazingly strong appeal, will make a lasting impression on your mind.

Needless to say, your own rich vocabulary, now that you have come this far in the book, will make it possible for you to contribute to your friends’ vocabulary as much as, if not more than, you take away—but since giving to others is one of the greatest sources of a feeling of self-worth, you can hardly complain about this extra dividend.

*(End of Session 44)*
Even in the most painstakingly edited of magazines, a silly little misspelling of a perfectly common word will occasionally appear. How the error eluded the collective and watchful eyes of the editor, the associate editor, the assistant editor, the typesetter, and the proofreader, no one will ever know—for practically every reader of the magazine spots it at once and writes an indignant letter, beginning: “Didn’t you ever go to school ...?”

Even if you went to school, you’re going to have plenty of trouble spotting the one misspelled word in each group below. And not one of these words will be a demon like sphygmomanometer (a device for measuring blood pressure) or piccalilli (a highly seasoned relish), which no one would ever dare spell without first checking with a dictionary. On the contrary, every word will be of the common or garden variety that you might use every day in your social or business correspondence.

Nevertheless, you’re letting yourself in for ten minutes of real trouble, for you will be working with fifty particularly difficult spelling words. So put on your thinking cap before you begin.

A half-dozen high school teachers who took this test were able to make an average score of only five proper choices. Can you do better? Six or seven right is very good, eight or nine right is excellent, and 100 per cent success marks you as an absolute expert in English spelling.

Check the only misspelled word in each group.

A: 1-surprise, 2-disappear, 3-innuculate, 4-description, 5-recommend
B: 1-privilege, 2-separate, 3-incidentally, 4-dissipate, 5-occurrence
C: 1-analize, 2-argument, 3-assistant, 4-comparative, 5-truly
D: 1-grammar, 2-drunkeness, 4-parallel, 4-sacrilegious, 5-conscience
E: 1-precede, 2-exceed, 3-accede, 4-procede, 5-concede
F: 1-pronunciation, 2-noticable, 3-desirable, 4-holiday, 5-anoint
G: 1-wierd, 2-seize, 3-achieve, 4-receive, 5-leisure
H: 1-superintendent, 2-persistent, 3-resistant, 4-insistent, 5-perseverence
I: 1-accessible, 2-permissible, 3-inimitable, 4-irresistible, 5-irritable
J: 1-pursue, 2-pastime, 3-kidnapped, 4-rhythmical, 5-exhillarate
HOW TO TALK ABOUT A VARIETY OF PERSONAL CHARACTERISTICS

(Sessions 45–46)

TEASER PREVIEW

What word, ending in -ous, describes someone who is:
fawning, servilely attentive, transparently self-ingratiating?
nagging, dissatisfied, complaining?
snobbish, haughtily contemptuous, arrogant?
noisily troublesome, unmanageable?
habitually short of cash?
attentive and courteous to women?
harmless?
fond of liquor?
pale, gaunt, haggard?
melancholy, sorrowful?
There are thousands of English words that end in the letters -ous—a Latin suffix meaning full of.

The central theme about which the words in this chapter revolve is the idea of "fullness"—and as you will shortly see, you can be full of compliance and servility; full of complaints; full of snobbery; full of noise; full of no money; full of horsemanship; full of harmlessness; full of liquor; full of deathly pallor; and full of sorrows.

For each of these ideas English has a word—and the person with a rich vocabularly knows the exact word to describe what someone is full of.

IDEAS

1. compliance

The Latin root sequor means to follow—and those who follow rather than lead are usually in a menial, subordinate, or inferior position. People who engage in certain fields of endeavor—waiters, clerks, and servants, for example—are forced, often contrary to their natural temperaments, to act excessively courteous, pleasant, obliging, even subservient and humble. They must follow the lead of their customers or employers, bending their own wills according to the desires of those they serve. They are, etymologically, full of following after, or—

obsequious

RELATED WORDS:

1. obsequies—In a funeral cortege, the mourners follow after the corpse. Hence, obsequies are the burial ceremonies, the funeral rites.

2. subsequent—A subsequent letter, paragraph, time, etc. is one that follows another.

3. sequel—A sequel may be a literary work, such as a novel, that follows another, continuing the same subject, dealing with the same people or village, etc. or it may be an occurrence that grows out of or follows another, as in, “Just wait until you hear the sequel to the story!”

4. sequence—In order, one item following another, as in, “The sequence of events of the next few days left him breathless.”

Any other word containing the root sequ- is likely to have some relationship to the idea of following.

2. complaints
The Latin root *queror* means *to complain*—and anyone full of complaints, constantly nagging, harping, fretful, petulant, whining, never satisfied, may accordingly be called—

*querulous*

3. **snobbery**

The Latin root *cilium* means *eyelid; super* means *above*; and above the eyelid, as anyone can plainly see, is the eyebrow. Now there are certain obnoxious people who go around raising their eyebrows in contempt, disdain, and sneering arrogance at ordinary mortals like you and me. Such contemptuous, sneering, overbearingly conceited people are called—

*supercilious*

4. **noise**

The Latin root *strepo* means *to make a noise*. Anyone who is unruly, boisterous, resistant to authority, unmanageable—and in a noisy, troublesome manner—is

*obstreperous*

5. **moneless**

The Latin root *pecus* means *cattle*—and at one time in human history a person’s wealth was measured not by stocks and bonds but by stocks of domestic animals, which was a lot more logical, since you get milk and leather and meat from cattle—true wealth—and all you get from the stock market is a headache.

Someone who had lots of *pecus*, then, was rich—someone without *pecus* was indigent, destitute, “broke.” And so today we call someone who is habitually without funds, who seems generally to be full of a complete lack of money—

*impecunious*

This word is not a synonym of *indigent, destitute, or poverty-stricken*; it does not necessarily imply living in reduced circumstances or want, but quite simply being short of cash—habitually.

RELATeD WORD:

1. *pecuniary*—pertaining to money, as in, a *pecuniary* consideration, *pecuniary* affairs, etc.

6. **horses**

The French word *cheval* means *horse*; and in medieval times only gentlemen and knights rode on horses—common people walked. Traditionally (but not, I understand, actually) knights were courteous to women, attentive to female desires, and self-sacrificing when
their own interests came in conflict with those of the fair sex. Hence, we call a modern man who has a knightly attitude to women—

**chivalrous**

**RELATED WORD:**

*Cheval*, horse, comes from Latin *caballus*, an inferior horse. *Callabus* is found in English words in the spelling *caval*.-

1. **cavalcade**—A procession of persons on horseback, as in a parade.

2. **cavalier**—As a noun, a *cavalier* was once a mounted soldier. As an adjective, *cavalier* describes actions and attitudes that are haughty, unmindful of others’ feelings, too offhand, such attributes often being associated with people in power (the military being one of the powers-that-be). Thus, “He answered in a *cavalier* manner” would signify that he was arrogant in his answer, as if the questioner were taking a little too much privilege with him. Or, “After the *cavalier* treatment I received, I never wished to return,” signifying that I was pretty much made to feel unimportant and inferior. Or, “After her *cavalier* refusal, I’ll never invite her to another party,” signifying that the refusal was, perhaps, curt, offhand, without any attempt at apology or courtesy.

3. **cavalry**—The mounted, or “horsed” part of an army.

4. **chivalry**—Noun form of *chivalrous*. Can you write the alternate noun form ending in **-ness**? __________

5. **chivalric**—Less commonly used adjective form, identical in meaning to *chivalrous*.

Another Latin root for *horse*, as you know, is *equus*, found in words we have already discussed:

1. **equestrian**—A horseman.

2. **equestrienne**—A horsewoman.

3. **equine**—Horselike.

7. **no harm done**

The latin root *noceo* means to *injure*; someone who need cause you no fear, so harmless is that person, so unable to interfere, so unlikely to get you into trouble, is called—

**innocuous**

**RELATED WORDS:**

1. **innocent**—Not guilty of crime or injury.

2. **noxious**—Harmful, poisonous; unwholesome.

8. **alcoholic**

The Latin root *bibo* means to *drink*; and one who is generally found with one foot up on the brass rail, who likes to tipple beyond the point of sobriety—who, in short, has an
overfondness for drinks with a pronounced alcoholic content, is called, usually humorously—

**bibulous**

**RELATED WORD:**

1. *imbibe*—To drink in, soak up, absorb. If we use this verb without specifying what is drunk, as in, “He likes to *imbibe,*” the implication, of course, is always liquor; but *imbibe* may also be used in patterns like “*imbibe* learning” or “In early infancy she *imbibed* a respect for her parents.”

2. *bib*—Upper part of an apron, or an apronlike napkin tied around a child’s neck. In either case, the *bib* prevents what is drunk (or eaten) from spilling over, or dribbling down, on the wearer’s clothing.

### 9. like death itself

The Latin root *cado* means *to fall*—one’s final fall is of course always in death, and so someone who looks like a corpse (figuratively speaking), who is pale, gaunt, thin, haggard, eyes deep-sunk, limbs wasted, in other words the extreme opposite of the picture of glowing health, is called—

**cadaverous**

**RELATED WORD:**

1. *cadaver*—A corpse, literally, especially one used for surgical dissection.

2. *decadent*—Etymologically, “falling down” (*de-* is a prefix one meaning of which is *down,* as in *descend, climb down; decline, turn down; etc.*) If something is in a *decadent* state, it is deteriorating, becoming corrupt or demoralized. *Decadence* is a state of decay. Generally *decadent* and *decadence* are used figuratively—they refer not to actual physical decay (as of a dead body), but to moral or spiritual decay.

### 10. pain and misery

The Latin root *doleo* means *to suffer* or *grieve*—one who is mournful and sad, whose melancholy comes from physical pain or mental distress, who seems to be suffering or grieving, is called—

**dolorous**

**RELATED WORD:**

1. *dolor*—A poetic synonym of *grief.*

2. *doleful*—A word referring somewhat humorously to exaggerated dismalness, sadness, or dreariness.

3. *condole*—Etymologically, to suffer or grieve with (Latin *con-, with, together*). *Condole* is a somewhat less commonly used synonym of *commiserate,* a verb we discussed in *Chapter*
The noun *condolence* is much more frequently heard than the verb, as in, “Let me offer you my *condolences,*” usually said to someone mourning the death of a friend or relative. You have heard of *condolence* cards, and no doubt have sent your share of them. When you *condole* with somebody who has sustained a loss, usually by death, you are saying, in effect, “I am suffering or grieving with you.”

### REVIEW OF ETYMOLOGY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT, SUFFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sequor</td>
<td>to follow</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. queror</td>
<td>to complain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. cillum</td>
<td>eyelid</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. super</td>
<td>above</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. strepo</td>
<td>to make a noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. pecus</td>
<td>cattle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. -ary</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. im- (in-)</td>
<td>negative prefix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. cheval</td>
<td>horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. callabus (caval-)</td>
<td>inferior horse</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. -ous</td>
<td>adjective suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ENGLISH WORD</td>
<td>____________</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. -ic  
adjective suffix
ENGLISH WORD __________

13. equus  
horse
ENGLISH WORD __________

14. -ine  
like, similar to, characteristic of
ENGLISH WORD __________

15. bibo  
to drink
ENGLISH WORD __________

16. im- (in-)  
in
ENGLISH WORD __________

17. redo  
to fall
ENGLISH WORD __________

18. de-  
down
ENGLISH WORD __________

19. -ent  
adjective suffix
ENGLISH WORD __________

20. -ence  
noun suffix
ENGLISH WORD __________

21. con-  
with, together
ENGLISH WORD __________

USING THE WORDS

A. THE BASIC WORDS

Can you pronounce the words?

1. obsequious  
ob-SEEK′-wee-əs
2. querulous  
KWAIR′-ə-ləs
3. supercilious  
sə-pər-SIL′-ee-əs
4. obstreperous  əb-STREP′-ər-əs
5. impecunious  im′-pə-KYOO′-nee-əs
6. chivalrous  SHIV′-əl-rəs
7. innocuous  ə-NOK′-yə-əs
8. bibulous  BIB′-yə-ləs
9. cadaverous  kə-DAV′-ər-əs
10. dolorous  DOL′-ər-əs or DŌ′-lər-əs

Can you work with the words? (I)

1. obsequious  a. snobbish
2. querulous  b. harmless
3. supercilious  c. gaunt
4. obstreperous  d. short of funds
5. impecunious  e. fawning; excessively, ingratiatingly, polite
6. chivalrous  f. sorrowful
7. innocuous  g. addicted to drink
8. bibulous  h. courteous to women
9. cadaverous  i. complaining
10. dolorous  j. unmanageable
Can you work with the words? (II)

Match each word in the first column with one from the second column that is opposite in meaning.

1. obsequious — a. content; uncomplaining; satisfied
2. querulous — b. affluent
3. supercilious — c. healthy
4. obstreperous — d. rude
5. impecunious — e. sober
6. chivalrous — f. dangerous
7. innocuous — g. humble
8. bibulous — h. misogynous
9. cadaverous — i. happy; cheerful
10. dolorous — j. quiet
Do you understand the words?

Do obsequious people usually command our respect?
- YES
- NO

Are querulous people satisfied?
- YES
- NO

Are supercilious people usually popular?
- YES
- NO

Is a person of affluence impecunious?
- YES
- NO

Do some women like chivalrous men?
- YES
- NO

Are innocuous people dangerous?
- YES
- NO

Is a bibulous character a teetotaler?
- YES
- NO

Is a cadaverous-looking individual the picture of health?
- YES
- NO

Is a dolorous attitude characteristic of jovial people?
- YES
- NO

Is an obstreperous child difficult to manage?
- YES
- NO
Can you recall the words?

sorrowful
1. D__________
servilely attentive; overly polite
2. O__________
haggard; gaunt; pale
3. C__________
complaining; whining
4. Q__________
addicted to alcohol; likely to drink past the point of sobriety
5. B__________
arrogant; haughty
6. S__________
harmless
7. I__________
oisily unmanageable
8. O__________
attentive and courteous to women
9. C__________
short of money; without funds
10. I__________
KEY: 1–dolorous, 2–obsequious, 3–cadaverous, 4–querulous, 5–bibulous, 6–supercilious, 7–innocuous, 8–obstreperous, 9–chivalrous, 10–impecunious

(End of Session 45)
### Can you pronounce the words? (I)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. obsequies</td>
<td>OB′-sə-kweez</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. subsequent</td>
<td>SUB′-sə-kwənt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sequel</td>
<td>SEE′-kwəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. sequence</td>
<td>SEE′-kwəns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. pecuniary</td>
<td>pə-KYOO′-nee-air′-ee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. noxious</td>
<td>NOK′-shəs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. imbibes</td>
<td>im-BĪB′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. dolor</td>
<td>DŌ′-ler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. doleful</td>
<td>DŌL′-fəl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. cavalcade</td>
<td>KAV′-əl-kayd′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. cavalier (adj.)</td>
<td>kav-ə-LEER′</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Can you pronounce the words? (II)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Word</th>
<th>Pronunciation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. cavalry</td>
<td>KAV′-əl-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. chivalry</td>
<td>SHIV′-əl-ree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. chivalric</td>
<td>shə-VAL′-rik</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. condole</td>
<td>kən-DŌL′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. condolence</td>
<td>kən-DŌ′-ləns</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. equestrian</td>
<td>ə-KWES′-tree-ən</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. equestrienne</td>
<td>ə-KWES′-tree-en′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. equine</td>
<td>EE′-kwən′</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. cadaver</td>
<td>kə-DAV′-ər or kə-DAY′-vər</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10. decadent DEK′-ə-dənt or də-KAY′-dənt
11. decadence DEK′-ə-dəns or də-KAY′-dəns

Can you work with the words?

1. obsequies a. proper order
2. subsequent b. drink; absorb; take in
3. sequel c. harmful, poisonous
4. sequence d. pain, sorrow (poetic)
5. pecuniary e. coming later or afterward
6. noxious f. procession of mounted riders
7. imbibe g. offhand, haughty
8. dolor h. a following event or literary work
9. doleful i. horsewoman
10. cavalcade j. pertaining to money
11. cavalier (adj.) k. mounted military division; soldiers on horseback
12. cavalry l. funeral rites
13. equestrian m. exaggeratedly sorrowful
14. equestrienne n. horselike
15. equine o. horseman
16. cadaver P. spiritual decline
17. decadent q. morally decaying
18. decadence r. corpse
19. chivalry s. expression of sympathy
20. condolence t. gallant courtesy to women
Do you understand the words? (I)

Are speeches usually made during obsequies?
YES  NO

Did Margaret Mitchell write a sequel to Gone with the Wind?
YES  NO

Are these numbers in sequence: 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11?
YES  NO

Do banks often handle the pecuniary details of an estate?
YES  NO

Is arsenic a noxious chemical?
YES  NO

Do children sometimes imbibe wisdom from their parents?
YES  NO

If a song is sung in tones of dolor, is it a happy song?
YES  NO

Is a doleful countenance a happy one?
YES  NO

Does a cavalcade contain horses?
YES  NO

Does a cavalier attitude show a spirit of humility?
YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (II)

Is a cavalry officer usually a good horseman?
YES  NO

Would an equestrian statue of General Grant show him with or on a horse?
YES  NO

Is an equestrienne a man?
YES  NO

Do humans possess many equine characteristics?
YES  NO

Is a cadaver alive?
YES  NO

Is an iconoclast likely to consider religion a decadent institution?
YES  NO

Is decadence a desirable quality?
YES  NO

Is chivalry dead?
YES  NO

Is it appropriate to condole with someone who has suffered a loss through death?
YES  NO

Are condolences appropriate at a wedding ceremony?
YES  NO
Do you understand the words? (III)

obsequies—rites
SAME     OPPOSITE

subsequent—preceding
SAME     OPPOSITE

pecuniary—financial
SAME     OPPOSITE

sequence—order
SAME     OPPOSITE

noxious—harmful
SAME     OPPOSITE

imbibe—drink
SAME     OPPOSITE

dolor—delight
SAME     OPPOSITE

doleful—merry
SAME     OPPOSITE

cavalier—courteous
SAME     OPPOSITE

cadaver—corpse
SAME     OPPOSITE

decadent—resurgent
SAME     OPPOSITE

chivalry—gallantry to women
SAME     OPPOSITE

condolences—congratulations
SAME     OPPOSITE
Can you recall the words?

harmful
1. N_____________

a literary work or an event that follows another
2. S_____________

drink in
3. I_____________

poetic word for sorrow
4. D_____________

burial ceremonies
5. O_____________

horseman
6. E_____________

horsewoman
7. E_____________

horselike
8. E_____________

following (adj.)
9. S_____________

relating to money (adj.)
10. P_____________

exaggeratedly sad
11. D_____________

proper order
12. S_____________

parade of mounted riders
13. C_____________

offhand; unmindful of another’s feelings
14. C_____________

mounted soldiers
15. C_____________

a corpse
16. C_____________

morally deteriorating (adj.)
17. D_____________
spiritual decay
18. D__________
expression of sympathy
19. C__________
gallantry to women
20. C__________
A. Do you recognize the words?

Excessively polite and fawning:
- querulous, obsequious, supercilious

Noisily troublesome:
- querulous, impecunious, obstreperous

Courteous and attentive to women:
- querulous, chivalrous, supercilious

Complaining, nagging:
- querulous, supercilious, innocuous

Haughtily disdainful:
- supercilious, bibulous, dolorous

Gaunt, corpse like:
- noxious, cadaverous, doleful

Highhanded:
- supercilious, cavalier, decadent

Moral decay:
- decadence, obsequies, sequence

Expression of sympathy:
- bibulousness, dolefulness, condolence

Courtesy to women:
- dolor, chivalry, decadence
### B. Can you recognize roots?

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sequor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>subsequent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. queror</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>querulous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. cillum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>supercilious</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. super</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>supervision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. strepo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>obstreperous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. pecus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>pecuniary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. cheval</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>chivalry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. caballus (caval-)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>cavalier</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. equus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>equine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. cado</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>decadence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
TEASER QUESTIONS FOR THE AMATEUR ETYMOLOGIST

1. In logic, a conclusion not based on the evidence is called a non sequitur; by extension, the term is applied to any statement that appears to have no connection or relevance to what was said before. Knowing the root sequor, how would you define this term etymologically? ____________.

2. Sequor, like many other Latin verbs, has another form somewhat differently spelled. (Remember verto, versus and loquor, locutus?) The other form of sequor is secutus. Can you define the following words in terms of the root?
   (a) second: __________________
   (b) consecutive: __________________
   (c) persecute: __________________
   (d) prosecute: __________________

3. Latin super, above or over, is used as a prefix in hundreds of English words. Can you figure out the word starting with super- that fits each etymological definition?
   (a) above others (in quality, position, etc.) ____________
   (b) above the surface; not in depth (adj.) ____________
   (c) (flowing) above what is necessary; more than needed (adj.) ____________
   (d) above (or beyond) the natural (adj.) ____________
   (e) to oversee; be in charge of (v.) ____________

4. Cado, to fall, is found in the following English words (sometimes the root is spelled -cid). Can you define each word in terms of its etymological parts?
   (a) cadence: ____________
   (b) occidental: ____________
   (c) deciduous: ____________
   (d) incident: ____________
   (e) accident: ____________
   (f) coincidence: ____________

5. The negative prefix in- plus doleo, to suffer, forms an adjective that etymologically
means not suffering (pain), but actually means idle; lazy; disliking effort or work. Can you figure out the English word? __________.
Can you write the noun form? __________.
6. What does the feminine name Dolores mean etymologically? __________.

(End of Session 46)
ANOTHER CHECK ON YOUR SPELLING

In each line you will find four words—one of them purposely, subtly, and perhaps unexpectedly misspelled. It’s up to you to check the single error. If you can come out on top at least fifteen times out of twenty, you’re probably a better speller than you realize.

1. (a) alright, (b) coolly, (c) supersede, (d) disappear
2. (a) inoculate, (b) definately, (c) irresistible, (d) recommend
3. (a) incidentally, (b) dissipate, (c) seperate, (d) balloon
4. (a) argument, (b) ecstasy, (c) occurrence, (d) analyze
5. (a) sacrilegious, (b) weird, (c) pronunciation, (d) repetition
6. (a) drunkeness, (b) embarrassment, (c) weird, (d) irritable
7. (a) noticeable, (b) superintendant, (c) absence, (d) development
8. (a) vicious, (b) conscience, (c) panicy, (d) amount
9. (a) accessible, (b) pursue, (c) exhilarate, (d) insistant
10. (a) naïveté, (b) necessary, (c) catagory, (d) professor
11. (a) rhythmical, (b) sergeant, (c) vaccuum, (d) assassin
12. (a) benefitted, (b) allotted, (c) corroborate, (d) despair
13. (a) diphtheria, (b) grandeur, (c) rediculous, (d) license
14. (a) tranquillity, (b) symmetry, (c) occassionally, (d) privilege
15. (a) tarriff, (b) tyranny, (c) battalion, (d) archipelago
16. (a) bicycle, (b) geneology, (c) liquefy, (d) bector
17. (a) defense, (b) batchelor, (c) stupefy, (d) parallel
18. (a) whisky, (b) likable, (c) bookkeeper, (d) accomodate
19. (a) comparitive, (b) mayonnaise, (c) indispensables, (d) dexterous
20. (a) dictionary, (b) cantaloupe, (c) existance, (d) ukulele
KEY: 1–a (all right), 2–b (definitely), 3–c (separate), 4–c (occurrence), 5–d (repetition), 6–a (drunkenness), 7–b (superintendent), 8–c (panicky), 9–d (insistent), 10–c (category), 11–c (vacuum), 12–a (benefited), 13–c (ridiculous), 14–c (occasionally), 15–a (tariff), 16–b (genealogy), 17–b (bachelor), 18–d (accommodate), 19–a (comparative), 20–c (existence)
HOW TO CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

Comprehensive Test III
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fluo</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE affluent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>pheme</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE euphemism</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>platys</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE platitude</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>felis</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE feline</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>piscis</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE piscine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nostos</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE nostalgia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kakos</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE cacophony</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>carnis</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE carnivorous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>voro</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE voracious</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>omnis</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE omnivorous</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>potens, potentis</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE impotent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ubique</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE ubiquity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13.</td>
<td><em>lupus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.</td>
<td><em>doleo</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15.</td>
<td><em>porcus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16.</td>
<td><em>thanatos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17.</td>
<td><em>canis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.</td>
<td><em>vulpus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19.</td>
<td><em>algos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20.</td>
<td><em>odyne</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21.</td>
<td><em>logos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22.</td>
<td><em>sciens, scientis</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23.</td>
<td><em>ursus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24.</td>
<td><em>phone</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25.</td>
<td><em>penuria</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**II—more etymology**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT, PREFIX</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
1. nervus
EXAMPLE enervate

2. ergon
EXAMPLE energy

3. ngo
EXAMPLE negation

4. caput, capitis
EXAMPLE decapitate

5. capitulum
EXAMPLE recapitulate

6. vegeto
EXAMPLE vegetate

7. simulo
EXAMPLE simulate

8. similis
EXAMPLE similarity

9. levis
EXAMPLE alleviate

10. intimus
EXAMPLE intimate (v.)

11. miser
EXAMPLE commiserate

12. vacillo
EXAMPLE vacillate

13. ambi-
EXAMPLE ambivalent

14. oscillum
EXAMPLE oscillate

15. sequor, secutus
EXAMPLE  obsequious

16. *queror* ___________________
EXAMPLE  querulous

17. *cilium* ___________________
EXAMPLE  supercilious

18. *super-* ___________________
EXAMPLE  superior

19. *strepo* ___________________
EXAMPLE  obstreperous

20. *pecus* ___________________
EXAMPLE  impecunious

21. *equus* ___________________
EXAMPLE  equine

22. *caballus* (*caval-*) ___________________
EXAMPLE  cavalier

23. *loquor, locutus* ___________________
EXAMPLE  circumlocution

24. *cado* ___________________
EXAMPLE  decadence

25. *vanesco* ___________________
EXAMPLE  evanescent

III—same or opposite?

penury—affluence  
SAME  OPPOSITE

vicarious—secondhand  
SAME  OPPOSITE

ephemeral—evanescent  
SAME  OPPOSITE

badinage—persiflage  
SAME  OPPOSITE
cacophony—euphony
SAME  OPPOSITE
clandestine—surreptitious
SAME  OPPOSITE
parsimonious—extravagant
SAME  OPPOSITE
indigent—opulent
SAME  OPPOSITE
destitute—impecunious
SAME  OPPOSITE
euphemistic—indirect
SAME  OPPOSITE
cliché—bromide
SAME  OPPOSITE
platitudinous—original
SAME  OPPOSITE
voracious—gluttonous
SAME  OPPOSITE
omniscient—ignorant
SAME  OPPOSITE
omnipresent—ubiquitous
SAME  OPPOSITE
carnal—libidinous
SAME  OPPOSITE
carnage—slaughter
SAME  OPPOSITE
enervated—exhilarated
SAME  OPPOSITE
castigate—condone
SAME  OPPOSITE
simulate—pretend
SAME  OPPOSITE

**IV—matching**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WORDS</th>
<th>DEFINITIONS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. alleviating</td>
<td>a. excessively polite or servile</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. cavalier (adj.)</td>
<td>b. gaunt, corpselike</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
3. vacillating
c. noisy

4. obsequious
d. poisonous

5. querulous
e. highhanded

6. obstreperous
f. sad

7. innocuous
g. nagging; complaining

8. cadaverous
h. harmless

9. dolorous
i. soothing

10. noxious
j. constantly changing one’s mind

V—more matching

1. condolence
   a. a rising into the air

2. decadent
   b. harsh sound

3. levity
   c. powerlessness

4. levitation
   d. a return to life in a new form

5. surreptitious
   e. devouring all; eating everything

6. cacophony
   f. expression of sympathy

7. reincarnation
   g. cowlike; phlegmatic; stolid

8. omnivorous
   h. morally deteriorating

9. impotence
   i. joking

10. bovine
    j. stealthy; secret

Vi—recall a word

lionlike
1. L__________
doglike
2. C__________
catlike
3. F__________
piglike
4. P__________
foxlike
bearlike
horselike
all-powerful
in the flesh
to stagnate
secret
meat-eating (adj.)
lasting a very short time
stingy; tight-fisted
feeling contradictory ways at the same time (adj.)
speech of praise
a feeling of well-being, both physical and emotional
statement intended to allay pain or anxiety
mercy death
science of speech sounds
all-powerful
to give in; to stop resisting
a working together for greater effect
to behead
relating to, pertaining to, or involving money (adj.)

25. P___________
harmless

26. I___________
tending to drink a lot (adj.)

27. B___________
to express sympathy; to share suffering, pain, or grief (with)

28. C___________

or C___________

snobbish; contemptuous; haughty; arrogant

29. S___________
mounted soldiers

30. C___________
KEY: A correct answer counts one point. Score your points for each part of the test, then add for a total.

I

Your score: ___________

II
1–nerve, 2–work, 3–to deny, 4–head, 5–little head, chapter heading, 6–to live and grow, 7–to copy, 8–like, similar, 9–light, 10–innermost, 11–wretched, 12–to swing back and forth, 13–both, 14–a swing, 15–to follow, 16–to complain, 17–eyelid, 18–above, 19–to make a noise, 20–cattle, 21–horse, 22–(inferior) horse, 23–to speak, 24–to fall, 25–to vanish

Your score: ___________

III

Your score: ___________

IV
1–i, 2–e, 3–j, 4–a, 5–g, 6–c, 7–h, 8–b, 9–f, 10–d

Your score: ___________

V
1–f, 2–h, 3–i, 4–a, 5–j, 6–b, 7–d, 8–e, 9–c, 10–g

Your score: ___________

VI

Your score: ___________

Your total score: ___________
Significance of Your Total Score:

100–120: Masterly
80–99: Good
65–79: Average
50–64: Barely acceptable
35–49: Poor
0–34: Terrible!

Record your score in the appropriate space below as well as your scores from Chapters 8 and 13. You will then have a comparison chart of all three achievement tests.

SCORES

TEST I (Chapter 8): ____________ out of 120.
TEST II (Chapter 13): ____________ out of 120.
TEST III (Chapter 17): ____________ out of 120.

(End of Session 47)
1. *Anthropocentric* (an′-thrə-pə-SEN′-trik), an adjective built on *anthropos*, mankind; Greek *kentron*, center, and the adjective suffix *-ic*, describes thinking, assumptions, reasoning, etc. that see mankind as the central fact, or ultimate aim, of the universe. The noun forms are either *anthropocentrism* (an′-thrə-pə-SEN′-triz-əm) or *anthropocentricity* (an′-thrə-pə-SEN′-TRIS′-ə-tee).

2. *Andromania* (an′-drə-MAY′-nee-ə), a combination of *andros*, man (male), plus *mania*, madness, signifies an obsession with males. Person: *andromaniac*, one who is mad about men; adjective: *andromaniacal* (an′-drə-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl).

3. *Gynandrous* (jī-NAN′-drəs), combining *gyne*, woman, with *andros*, man (male), describes:
   a. plants in which the male and female organs are united in the same column; or
   b. people who physically have both male and female sexual organs, often one or both in rudimentary form; or
   c. (*a more recent meaning*) people who exhibit, or are willing to own up to, the male and female emotional characteristics that everyone possesses.

   The word may have the roots in reverse, becoming *androgynous* (an-DROJ′-ə-nəs), with all three meanings identical to those of *gynandrous*.

   *Hermaphroditic* (hur-maf′-rə-DIT′-ik), a combination of *Hermes*, the Greek god who served as messenger or herald (in Roman mythology, this god was known as *Mercury*, and is conventionally pictured with wings on his heels), and *Aphrodite*, the Greek goddess of love and beauty (in Roman mythology, *Venus*), has either of the first two meanings of *gynandrous*.

   The noun form of *gynandrous* is *gynandry* (jī-NAN′-dree); of *androgynous*, *androgyny* (an-DROJ′-ə-nee); of *hermaphroditic*, *hermaphroditism* (hur-MAF′-rə-di′-tiz-əm).

   The individual plant is an *andrognye* (AN′-drə-jin); plant or person, a *hermaphrodite* (hur-MAF′-rə-di′t).
4. Monomania (mon-ə-MAY′-nee-ə), combining monos, one, and mania, madness, is an obsession with one thing, or obsessiveness in one area. Person: monomaniac; adjective: monomaniacal (mon′-ə-mə-NĪ′-ə-kəl).


Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. anthropos</td>
<td>anthropocentric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. kentron</td>
<td>anthropocentrism</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. andros</td>
<td>andromania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. mania</td>
<td>andromaniac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. gyne</td>
<td>gynandrous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Hermes</td>
<td>hermaphrodite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. Aphrodite</td>
<td>hermaphroditic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. monos</td>
<td>monomania</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. misein</td>
<td>misandry</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 4:

1. **Pedodontia** (pee-də-DON′-shə) is the specialty of child dentistry—*paidos*, child, plus *odontos*, tooth. Specialist: *pedodontist*. Adjective: *pedodontic*.

2. **Cardialgia** (kahr′-dee-AL′-jə), heart pain—*kardia*, heart, plus *algos*, pain.

3. **Odontalgia** (ō′-don-TAL′-jə), toothache.

4. **Nostalgia** (nos-TAL′-jə). Adjective: *nostalgic*.

**Check your learning**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. <em>padios</em> (<em>ped-</em>)</td>
<td>pedodontia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. <em>kardia</em></td>
<td>cardialgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. <em>algos</em></td>
<td>odontalgia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. <em>odontos</em></td>
<td>pedodontist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. <em>nostos</em></td>
<td>nostalgia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CHAPTER 5:

1. Eighty to eighty-nine years old. From Latin *octoginta*, eighty. People of other ages are as follows:
   (a) 50–59: *quinquagenarian* (kwin′-kwə-jə-NAIR′-ee-ən)
   (b) 60–69: *sexagenarian* (seks′-ə-jə-NAIR′-ee-ən)
   (c) 70–79: *septuagenarian* (sep′-chə-ə-jə-NAIR′-ee-ən)
   (d) 90–99: *nonagenarian* (non′-ə-jə-NAIR′-ee-ən)
   (e) 100 and over: *centenarian* (sen′-te-NAIR′-ee-ən)


3. Cacopygian (kak′-ə-PIJ′-ee-ən).

4. Telescope (tele- plus skopein, to view) or telebinoculars; telephone; television.

Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. octoginta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>octogenarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. quinquaginta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>quinquagenarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. sexaginta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>sexagenarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. septuaginta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>septuagenarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. nonaginta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>nonagenarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. centum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>centenarian</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. kakos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>cacophony</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8. phone
EXAMPLE cacophonous

9. pyge
EXAMPLE cacopygian

10. tele-
EXAMPLE television

11. skopein
EXAMPLE telescope
CHAPTER 6:

1. Sophomore; from sophos plus moros, foolish, the word etymologically designates one who is half wise and half foolish. The adjective sophomoric (sof-ə-MAWR′-ik) describes people, attitudes, statements, writings, etc. that are highly opinionated, self-assured, and coming off as if wise, but which in reality are immature, inexperienced, foolish, etc.

2. Sophisticated (sə-FIS′-tə-kay′-təd). The verb is sophisticate, the noun sophistication. One who is worldly-wise is a sophisticate (sə-FIS′-tə-kət).

Sophisticated has in recent years taken on the added meaning of highly developed, mature, or complicated; appealing to a mature intellect; or aware and knowledgeable. Examples: sophisticated machinery, electronic equipment; a sophisticated approach; a sophisticated audience, group, staff, faculty, etc.

3. One who is obsessed with books, especially with collecting books.

4. (a) speaking one language, (b) speaking two languages, (c) speaking three languages. Multilingual (multus, many, plus lingua)—speaking many languages.

A linguist is one who is fluent in many languages, or else an expert in linguistics (or both). Multus, as indicated, means many, as in multitude, multiply, multiple, multicolored, multifarious, multilateral, etc., etc.

5. (a) France, (b) Russia, (c) Spain, (d) Germany, (e) Japan, (f) China.

6. (a) androphile, (b) gynephile (or philogynist), (c) pedophile, (d) zoophile, (e) botanophile.

But pedophilia (pee′-də-FIL′-ee-ə) is another story. A pedophiliac sexually molests young children—such love little kids can do without!

Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sophos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>sophomore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. moros</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>sophomoric</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. biblion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>bibliomaniac</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. mania</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Example</td>
<td>Word</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bibliomania</td>
<td>5. <em>lingua</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>linguist</td>
<td>6. <em>monos</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>monolingual</td>
<td>7. <em>bi-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bilingual</td>
<td>8. <em>tri-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trilingual</td>
<td>9. <em>multus</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>multilingual</td>
<td>10. <em>Franco-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Francophile</td>
<td>11. <em>Russo-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russophile</td>
<td>12. <em>Hispano-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hispanophile</td>
<td>13. <em>Germano-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germanophile</td>
<td>14. <em>Nippono-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nipponophile</td>
<td>15. <em>Sino-</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sinophile</td>
<td>16. <em>andros</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>androphile</td>
<td>17. <em>gyne</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>gynephile</td>
<td>18. <em>philein</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>philogynist</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
19. **paidos** (*ped*)
   **EXAMPLE**  pedophile

20. **zoion**
   **EXAMPLE**  zoophile

21. **botane**
   **EXAMPLE**  botanophile
CHAPTER 7:

1. A notable is someone well-known.

2. To notify is, etymologically, to make known—notus + -fy, a derivation of facio, to make.

Notice, as a noun, is what makes something known; to notice, as a verb, is to observe (something or someone) so that it, he, or she becomes known to the observer.

-Fy, as a verb suffix, means to make. So simplify is to make simple, clarify, to make clear; liquefy, to make liquid; putrefy, to make (or become) rotten or putrid; stupefy, to make stupid, or dumb, with astonishment (note the -e preceding the suffix in liquefy, putrefy, stupefy); fortify, to make strong; rectify, to make right or correct; etc., etc.

3. Chronograph (KRON-ə-graf′) is an instrument that measures and records short intervals of time.

4. To generate is to give birth to, figuratively, or to create or produce, as a turbine generates power, a person’s presence generates fear, etc. The noun is generation, which, in another context, also designates the people born and living about the same time (the older, previous, or next generation, the Depression generation, etc.), or a period, conventionally set at about thirty years, between such groups of people.

To regenerate is to give birth to again, or to be born again. Some creatures can regenerate new limbs or parts if these are lost or cut off—or the limbs or parts regenerate.

Re- means, of course, again; or, in some words, as recede, regress, etc., back.

5. Omnipotent (om-NIP′-ə-tent)—all-powerful; omnis plus potens, potentis, powerful.

Omnipresent (om′-nə-PREZ′-ənt)—present all over, or everywhere.

Nouns: omnipotence, omnipresence.

6. Anaphrodisiac (ən-əf′-rə-DIZ′-ee-ak′)—both a noun and an adjective. Saltpeter is supposedly an anaphrodisiac; so, some people say, is a cold shower, which is highly doubtful. The best temporary anaphrodisiac is probably sexual intercourse. Some women who were teen-agers when Elvis Presley was at the height of his popularity have told me that the young man’s gyrating hips were aphrodisiacal—I will take their word for it, as Elvis has never turned me on. On the other hand, if you want to talk about Diane Keaton or Raquel Welch … or especially Marilyn Monroe…

Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. notus  
EXAMPLE notify

2. chronos  
EXAMPLE chronograph

3. graphein  
EXAMPLE chronographic

4. genesis  
EXAMPLE generate

5. re-  
EXAMPLE regenerate

6. omnis  
EXAMPLE omnipotent

7. potens, potentis  
EXAMPLE omnipotence

8. an-  
EXAMPLE anaphrodisiac
CHAPTER 9:


2. Bilateral (bī-LAT′-ər-əl), as in a bilateral decision, i.e., one made by the two sides or two people involved. On the other hand, a unilateral (yūnə-LAT′-ər-əl) decision is made by one person, without consultation with others.

3. Transcribe. Noun: transcription. A stenographer transcribes shorthand notes into English words, or a musical transcriber arranges or adapts a musical composition for an instrument, group, etc. other than the one for which the work was originally written.

4. Malaria was once thought to have been caused by the “bad air” of swamps; actually, it was (and is) transmitted to humans by infected anopheles mosquitoes breeding and living in swamps and other places where there is stagnant water.

5. Confection. The word is hardly used much today with this meaning, except perhaps by members of an older generation who remember confectioner’s shops and confectionery stores. Now such places are called ice cream stores (or ice cream parlors) and are run, at least on the west coast, by Baskin-Robbins or Farrell’s; or they are called candy shops; or, when I was growing up, candy stores, where the kids all hung out, and candies could be bought for a penny apiece, with Hershey bars selling for a nickel (that’s why they are called “the good old days”).

Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. magnus</td>
<td>magnanimous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>magnanimous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. animus</td>
<td>magnanimity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>magnanimity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. bi-</td>
<td>bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>bilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. unus</td>
<td>unilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>unilateral</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. latus, lateris</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE  unilateral

6. trans-

EXAMPLE  transcribe

7. scribo, scriptus

EXAMPLE  transcription

8. malus

EXAMPLE  malaria

9. con-

EXAMPLE  confection

10. facio (fec-)

EXAMPLE  confectionery
CHAPTER 10:

1. **Modus operandi.** Method (or mode) of working (or operating). Pronounced MŌ′-dēs Əp′-ə-RAN′-dē, the word is not, of course, restricted to the special methods used by a criminal, but may refer to the method or style of operating characteristic of any other professional. **Modus vivendi** (MŌ′dēs və-VEN′-dē), etymologically “method of living,” is the style of life characteristic of a person or group.

2. **Circumscription.** To **circumscribe** also means, figuratively, to write (a line) around (one’s freedom of action), so that one is restricted, limited, hemmed in, as in, “a life circumscribed by poverty, by parental injunctions, or by an overactive conscience, etc.,” or “actions circumscribed by legal restraints.” The noun **circumscription** has the figurative meaning also.

3. **Somniloquent** (səm-NIL′-ə-kwənt). Noun: **somniloquence** (səm-NIL′-ə-kwəns) or **somniloquy** (səm-NIL′-ə-kwee), the latter noun also designating the words spoken by the sleeper. One who habitually talks while asleep is a **somniloquist** (səm-NIL′-ə-kwist).

4. An **aurist** is an ear specialist, more commonly called an **otologist** (ō-TOL′-ə-jist), from Greek **otos**, ear. Noun: **otology**. Adjective: **otological** (ō-tə-LOJ′-ə-kəl).

It is difficult at this point to resist telling a well-known story about medical specialists. In fact it’s impossible to resist, so here it is:

A dentist, doing his first extraction on a patient, was understandably nervous. When he got the molar out, his hand shook, he lost his grip on the instrument, and the tooth dropped down into the patient’s throat.

“Sorry,” said the doctor. “You’re outside my specialty now. You should see a laryngologist! [lair′-ing-GOL′-ə-jist—a larynx or throat specialist].”

By the time the unfortunate victim got to the laryngologist, the tooth had worked its way much further down.

The laryngologist examined the man.

“Sorry,” said the doctor, “You’re outside my specialty now. You should see a gastrologist! [gas-TROL′-ə-jist—a stomach specialist].”

The gastrologist X-rayed the patient. “Sorry,” said the doctor, “the tooth has traveled into your lower intestines. You should see an enterologist! [en′-tə-ROL′-ə-jist—an intestinal specialist].”

The enterologist took some X rays. “Sorry, the tooth isn’t there. It must have gone down farther. You should see a proctologist! [prok-TOL′-ə-jist—a specialist in diseases of the rectum; from Greek **proktos**, anus].”

Our patient is now on the proctologist’s examining table, in the proper elbow-knee position. The doctor has inserted a proctoscope and is looking through it.
“Good heavens, man! You’ve got a tooth up there! You should see a dentist!”

5. Aural (AWR-əl) refers to the ears or to the sense or phenomenon of hearing. Monaural reproduction, as of music over a radio or by a phonograph record, for example, has only one source of sound, and technically should be called monophonic (mon′-ə-FON′-ik)—monos, one, plus phone, sound. Binaural may mean having two ears or involving the use of both ears, or, recently, descriptive of sound from two sources, giving a stereophonic (steer′-ee-ə-FON′-ik) effect—stereos, deep, solid, plus phone.


7. Somnific (som-NIF′-ik): a somnific lecture, movie, effect, etc.

8. Circumambulate (sur′-kəm-AM′-byə-layt′). To circumnavigate is to sail around—circum, around, plus navis, ship.

Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. modus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>modus operandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. operandi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>modus operandi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. vivo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>modus vivendi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. circum-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>circumscribe</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. scribo, scriptus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>circumscript</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. somnus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>somniloquent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. loquor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>somniloquence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. aurus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>aurist</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. otos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE</td>
<td>otology</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
10. proktos
EXAMPLE proctologist

11. stereos
EXAMPLE stereophonic

12. phone
EXAMPLE stereophonic

13. monos
EXAMPLE monaural

14. bi-
EXAMPLE binaural

15. nox, noctis
EXAMPLE noctambulist

16. ambulo
EXAMPLE noctambulism

17. facio (fic-)
EXAMPLE somnific
CHAPTER 11:

1. Matronymic (mat′-rə-NIM′-ik). Or, if you prefer to use the Greek root for mother (meter, metr-), metronymic. The Greek word metra, uterus, derives from meter, naturally enough, so metritis is inflammation of the uterus; metralgia is uterine pain; endometriosis (en′-dō-mee′-tree-Ō′-sis) is any abnormal condition of the uterine lining—endo, inside; metra, uterus; -osis, abnormal condition.

2. (a) An incendiary statement, remark, speech, etc. figuratively enflames an audience, sets them afire, gets them excited, galvanizes them into action, etc.
   (b) Incense (IN′-sens) is a substance that sends off a pleasant odor when burned—often, but not necessarily, to mask unpleasant or telltale smells, as of marijuana smoke, etc.
   (c) To incense (in-SENS′) is to anger greatly, i.e., to “burn up.” “I’m all burned up” is etymologically an accurate translation of “I’m incensed.”

3. (a) Ardent (AHR′-dənt)—burning with zeal, ambition, love, etc., as an ardent suitor, worker, etc.
   (b) Ardor (AHR′-dər)—the noun form of ardent—burning passion, zeal, enthusiasm, etc.
      Alternate noun: ardeny (AHR′-dən-see).

5. Megalopolis (meg′-ə-LOP′-ə-lis).
7. Bibliokleptomaniac (bib′-lee-ō-klep′-tə-MAY′-nee-ak): one who has an obsession for stealing books. Not too many years ago, an author titled his book, Steal This Book!, perhaps hoping to appeal to bibliokleptomaniacs; if the appeal was successful enough, his royalty statements must have been minuscule indeed!
       Gynekleptomaniac.
       Pedokleptomaniac.
       Androkleptomaniac.
       Demokleptomaniac.
       If you prefer to use shorter words, compulsive kidnapper or obsessive abductor will do as well for these words.
8. Acromaniac.
   Agoramaniac.
   Claustronomaniac.
9. Kleptophobia; pyrophobia; gynephobia; androphobia; demophobia.
Triskaidekaphobia (tris′-ki-dek′-ə-FŌ′-bee-ə) is the morbid dread of the number 13, from Greek triskai, three, deka, ten, and phobia.

10. **Gnosiology** (nō′-see-OL′-ə-je), the science or study of knowledge.

11. Amadeus is love (Latin amor) God (Latin deus). Theophilus is love (Greek philos) God (Greek theos). Gottlieb is love (German Lieb) God (German Gott).

Perhaps this explains why he started composing at the age of four and wrote forty-one symphonies.

12. **Cellophane**—cellulose made to be transparent, i.e., to show what’s wrapped in it.

13. Hypoglycemia (hī-pō-glī-SEE′-mee-ə)—low blood sugar, a common ailment today, though I believe the AMA has called it a “non-disease” (Greek hypos, under; glykys, sweet; haima, blood).

Haima, blood, is found in many English words, the root spelled either hem- or -em. Here are a few, with their etymological interpretations:

(a) **Hemorrhage**—excessive blood flow.

(b) **Anemia**—“no blood”—actually a pathological reduction of red blood corpuscles.

(c) **Hematology**—science of blood (and its diseases).

(d) **Hemophilia**—“love of blood”—actually a hereditary condition, occurring in males, in which the blood clots too slowly.

(e) **Hemoglobin**—“blood gobules”—actually the red coloring matter of the red blood corpuscles.

Hyperglycemia is the opposite of hypoglycemia.

14. (a) **Pantheon** (PAN′-thee-on′)—a temple built in Rome in 27 B.C. for “all the gods.”

(b) **Pandemonium** (pan′-də-MŌ′-nee-əm)—a word supposedly coined by poet John Milton in *Paradise Lost* to signify the dwelling place of all the demons; now any wild and noisy disorder.

(c) **Panorama** (pan′-ə-RAH′-mə)—a view (or a picture of such a view) all around—pan, all, plus horama, view. The adjective: **panoramic** (pan′-ə-RAH′-mik).

15. **Monarchy**—rule by one person.

---

**Check your learning**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. mater, matris</td>
<td>matronymic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. onyma</td>
<td>metronymic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. meter</td>
<td>metronymic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. metra</td>
<td>matronymic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
5. *endo-*

EXAMPLE  endometriosis

6. *incendo, incensus*

EXAMPLE  incendiary

7. *ardo*

EXAMPLE  ardent

8. *megalono-*

EXAMPLE  megalopolis

9. *polis*

EXAMPLE  police

10. *demos*

EXAMPLE  demokleptomaniac

11. *akros*

EXAMPLE  acromaniac

12. *agora*

EXAMPLE  agoramaniac

13. *clastrum*

EXAMPLE  claustromaniac

14. *triskai*

EXAMPLE  triskaidekaphobia

15. *deka*

EXAMPLE  triskaidekaphobia

16. *gnosis*

EXAMPLE  gnosiology

17. *amor*

EXAMPLE  Amadeus

18. *deus*

EXAMPLE  deity
19. theos
   EXAMPLE  Theophilus

20. philos
   EXAMPLE  hemophilia

21. phanein
   EXAMPLE  cellophane

22. hypos
   EXAMPLE  hypoglycemia

23. glykys
   EXAMPLE  hypoglycemia

24. haima
   EXAMPLE  hemorrhage

25. an-
   EXAMPLE  anemia

26. hyper-
   EXAMPLE  hyperglycemia

27. pan
   EXAMPLE  Pantheon

28. horama
   EXAMPLE  panorama

29. archein
   EXAMPLE  monarch

30. monos
   EXAMPLE  monarchy
CHAPTER 12:

2. Vivarium (vi-VAIR′-ee-əm)—enclosed area in which plants and (small) animals live in conditions resembling their natural habitat. The suffix -ium usually signifies place where—solarium, a place for the sun to enter, or where one can sunbathe; aquarium, a place for water (Latin aqua, water), or fish tank; podium, a place for the feet (Greek podos, foot), or speaker’s platform; auditorium, a place for hearing (or listening to) concerts, plays, etc. (Latin audio, to hear).
3. Vita (VĪ′-tə), etymologically, life, is one’s professional or career résumé.
4. (a) Unicorn (Latin cornu, horn).
   (b) Uniform.
   (c) Unify (-fy, from facio, to make).
   (d) Unity.
   (e) Unicycle (Greek kyklos, circle, wheel).
5. Anniversary—a year has turned.
6. (a) Universe—everything turning as one.
   (b) University—highest institute of education—universal subjects taught, learned, etc., i.e., the curriculum covers the universe, is in no way restricted, etc.
7. (a) Interstate.
   (b) International.
   (c) Intermediate.
   (d) Interrupt (Latin rumpo, ruptus, to break).
   (e) Interpersonal.
8. (a) Intrastate.
   (b) Intranational.
   (c) Intrapersonal or intrapsychic.
   (d) Intramuscular.

Check your learning

PREFIX, ROOT

MEANING
1. *vivo*

**EXAMPLE**  survive

2. *podos*

**EXAMPLE**  podium

3. *vita*

**EXAMPLE**  *vita*

4. *cornu*

**EXAMPLE**  unicorn

5. *kyklos*

**EXAMPLE**  unicycle

6. *annus*

**EXAMPLE**  anniversary

7. *verto, versus*

**EXAMPLE**  universe

8. *inus*

**EXAMPLE**  university

9. *inter-

**EXAMPLE**  interstate

10. *intra-

**EXAMPLE**  intrapsychic
CHAPTER 14:

1. “View of Death.”
2. Thanatology.
3. (a) Prophesy (PROF-sī′).
   (b) Prophecy (PROF-see).
   (c) Prophet (PROF-ēt).
4. (a) Predict.
   (b) Prediction.
5. Nostopathy—“disease” (tensions, insecurities, conflicts) on returning home after leaving the service. Some veterans could not face the freedom and responsibilities of being on their own. The Army, Navy, or Air Force had fed and clothed them and made decisions for them; now they had to readjust to civilian life.
6. (a) Vulpicide.
   (b) Lupicide.
   (c) Felicide.
   (d) Ursicide.
7. (a) Piscivorous (p-ə-SIV-ər-əs).
   (b) Insectivorous (in-’sek-TIV-ər-əs).
8. Canaries, what else?
9. Potentiate (p-ə-TEN-’she-ayt’).

Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. thanatos</td>
<td>thanatology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. logos</td>
<td>thanatology</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. opsis</td>
<td>Thanatopsis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. pheme</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXAMPLE prophecy
5. pro-

EXAMPLE prophet
6. pre-

EXAMPLE predict
7. dico, dictus

EXAMPLE predict
8. nostos

EXAMPLE nostopathy
9. pathos

EXAMPLE nostopathy
10. vulpus

EXAMPLE vulpicide
11. lupus

EXAMPLE lupicide
12. felis

EXAMPLE felicide
13. ursus

EXAMPLE ursicide
14. piscis

EXAMPLE piscivorous
15. voro

EXAMPLE insectivorous
16. caedo (-cide)

EXAMPLE insecticide
17. canis

EXAMPLE canary
18. potens, potentis

EXAMPLE potentiate
CHAPTER 15:

1. Synagogue.
   People (for example lovers, spouses, parent and child, etc.) also may live in a symbiotic relationship, each depending on the other for important services, emotional needs, etc.; each also providing these for the other.
   3. Symphony; symphonic.
4. Symmetry (SIM′-Ə-tree); symmetrical (sƏ-MET′-rƏ-kəl) or symmetric (sƏ-MET′-rik).
5. Syndrome (SIN′-drōm).
6. Hippodrome (HIP′-ə-drōm′); the word today is often used as the name of a movie theater or other place of entertainment.

Check your learning

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. syn-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE synagoge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. agogos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE synagoge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. bios</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE symbiosis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. phone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE symphonic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. metron</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE symmetry</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. dromos</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXAMPLE syndrome</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
7. _hippos_  
    EXAMPLE  _hippodrome_

8. _potamos_  
    EXAMPLE  _hippopotamus_
CHAPTER 16:

1. *Non sequitur* (non SEK′-wə-tər)—“it does not follow.”

2. (a) *Second*—following after the first.
   (b) *Consecutive*—following in proper order
   (c) *Persecute*—to follow (i.e., pursue) through and through; hence to annoy, harass continually for no good reason.
   (d) *Prosecute*—to follow before; hence to pursue (something) diligently or vigorously in order to complete it successfully (*prosecute* a campaign); or to start, or engage in, legal proceedings against, especially in an official capacity.

3. (a) *Superior*.
   (b) *Superficial*.
   (c) *Superfluous* (sə-PUR′-flō-əs). Noun: superfluity (sə′-pər-FLOO′-ə-tee).
   (d) *Supernatural*.
   (e) *Supervise*.

4. (a) *Cadence* (KAY′-dăn′s)—fall and rise of the voice in speaking; hence inflection, rhythm beat, etc. of sound or music. Adjective: *cadent* (KAY′-dənt).
   (b) *Occidental* (ok′-sə-DEN′-təl)—etymologically, falling. Hence relating to western countries, since the sun falls in the west; also, a native of such a country. Noun: *Occident* (OK′-sə-dənt). The sun rises in the east, so Latin *orior*, to rise, is the origin of the *Orient*, *oriental*, etc., and also of the verb *orient* (AW′-ree-ent′). *To orient* is to adjust to a place or situation; etymologically, to turn, or face, east. Noun: orientation. “I’m finally *oriented*” does not mean that I’m easternized or facing east, but that I have become familiar with, and comfortable in, a place, job, situation, etc. So to *disorient* (dis-AW′-ree-ent′) is to remove (someone’s) orientation, or to confuse or bewilder, especially in reference to locality, direction, etc. Noun: disorientation.
   (c) *Deciduous* (də-SIJ′-ə-səs)—falling down (Latin prefix *de-*). This adjective refers to trees whose leaves fall (down) every autumn.
   (d) *Incident*—that which falls upon, befalls, or happens.
   (e) *Accident*—that which falls to (*ac-* is a respelling of *ad-* to, toward) someone or something (by chance).
   (f) *Coincidence*—co- is a respelling of *con-* together. A coincidence occurs when two things befall, or happen, together, or at the same time, and by chance.

6. **Dolores**—from Spanish *María de los Dolores*, Mary of the Sorrows; hence, I guess, someone who is generally sorrowful, though the few Doloreses I have known do not live up to their etymology.

**Check your learning**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PREFIX, ROOT</th>
<th>MEANING</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. sequor, secutus</td>
<td>non sequitur, second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. per-</td>
<td>persecute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. pro-</td>
<td>prosecute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. super-</td>
<td>superior</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. fluo</td>
<td>superfluous</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. cado</td>
<td>cadence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7. orior</td>
<td>Orient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8. dis-</td>
<td>disorient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. ad- (ac-)</td>
<td>accident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10. doleo</td>
<td>indolent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11. in-</td>
<td>indolence</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
KEY: 1–to follow, 2–through, 3–beforehand, 4–above, 5–to flow, 6–to fall, 7–to rise, 8–negative prefix, 9–to, toward, 10–to suffer, to grieve, 11–negative prefix
HOW TO KEEP BUILDING YOUR VOCABULARY

At commencement exercises, whether in elementary school, high school, or college, at least one of the speakers will inevitably point out to the graduates that this is not the end—not by a long shot. It is only the beginning; that’s why it is called “commencement,” etc., etc.

Of course the speaker is right—no educative process is ever the end; it is always the beginning of more education, more learning, more living.

And that is the case here. What has happened to you as a result of your reaction to the material and suggestions in this book is only the beginning of your development. To stop increasing your vocabulary is to stop your intellectual growth. You will wish, I am sure, to continue growing intellectually as long as you remain alive. And with the momentum that your weeks of hard work have provided, continuing will not be at all difficult.

Let me offer, as a summary of all I have said throughout the book, a recapitulation of the steps you must take so that your vocabulary will keep growing and growing.

**STEP ONE.** You must become actively receptive to new words.

Words won’t come chasing after you—you must train yourself to be on a constant lookout, in your reading and listening, for any words that other people know and you don’t.

**STEP TWO.** You must read more.

As an adult, you will find most of the sources of your supply of new words in books and magazines. Is your reading today largely restricted to a quick perusal of the daily newspaper? Then you will have to change your habits. If your aim is to have a superior vocabulary, you will have to make the time to read at least one book and several magazines every week. Not just this week and next week—but every week for the rest of your life. I have never met a single person who possessed a rich vocabulary who was not also an omnivorous reader.

**STEP THREE.** You must learn to add to your own vocabulary the new words you meet in your reading.

When you see an unfamiliar word in a book or magazine, do not skip over it impatiently. Instead, pause for a moment and say it over to yourself—get used to its sound and appearance. Then puzzle out its possible meaning in the context of the sentence. Whether you come to the right conclusion or not, whether indeed you are able to come to any intelligent conclusion at all, is of no importance. What is important is that you are, by this process, becoming superconscious of the word. As a result, you will suddenly notice that this


very word pops up unexpectedly again and again in all your reading—for you now have a mind-set for it. And of course after you’ve seen it a few times, you will know fairly accurately not only what it means but the many ways in which it can be used.

STEP FOUR. You must open your mind to new ideas.

Every word you know is the translation of an idea.

Think for a few minutes of the areas of human knowledge that may possibly be unknown to you—psychology, semantics, science, art, music, or whatever. Then attack one of these areas methodically—by reading books in the field. In every field, from the simplest to the most abstruse, there are several books written for the average, untrained lay reader that will give you both a good grasp of the subject and at the same time add immeasurably to your vocabulary. College students have large vocabularies because they are required to expose themselves constantly to new areas of learning. You must do the same.

STEP FIVE. You must set a goal.

If you do nothing about your vocabulary, you will learn, at most, twenty-five to fifty new words in the next twelve months. By conscious effort you can learn several thousand. Set yourself a goal of finding several new words every day. This may sound ambitious—but you will discover as soon as you start actively looking for new words in your reading, and actively doing reading of a more challenging type, that new words are all around you—that is, if you’re ready for them. And understand this: vocabulary building snowballs. The results of each new day’s search will be greater and greater—once you provide the necessary initial push, once you gain momentum, once you become addicted to looking for, finding, and taking possession of new words.

And this is one addiction well worth cultivating!
APPENDIX

SOME ESOTERIC PHOBIAS

(You will recognize many of the Greek roots on which these words are constructed)

air: aerophobia
animals: zoophobia
beauty: callophobia
birth: genophobia
blood: hematophobia
breasts: mastophobia
burglars: scelerophobia
burial alive: taphephobia
cats: ailurophobia
change: neophobia
childbirth: maieusiophobia
children: pedophobia
colors: chromophobia
crowds: ochlophobia
darkness: nyctophobia
death: thanatophobia
depths: bathophobia
disease: pathophobia
doctors: iatrophobia
dogs: cynophobia
dying: thanatophobia
emptiness: kenophobia
everything: pantophobia
eyes: ophthalmophobia
fear: phobophobia
feces: coprophobia
feet: podophobia
female genitals: eurotophobia
fish: ichthyophobia
fog: homichlophobia
food: cibophobia
foreigners: xenophobia
freaks: teratophobia
frogs: batrachophobia
ghosts: phasmophobia
hands: chirophobia
hair: trichophobia
healers or healing: iatrophobia
heat: thermophobia
hell: stygiophobia
horses: hippophobia
insects: entomophobia
knives: aichmophobia
knowledge: gnosiphobia
large things: megalophobia
light: photophobia
lightning: astrophobia
males: androphobia
many things: polyphobia
marriage: gamophobia
medicine: pharmacophobia
mice: musophobia
mirrors: spectrophobia
mobs: ochlophobia
motherhood: metrophobia
motion: kinesophobia
nakedness: gymnophobia
needles: belonophobia
newness: neophobia
night: nyctophobia
oceans: thalassophobia
odors: osmophobia
old age: geraphobia
old men: gerontophobia
pain: algophobia; odynophobia
people: demophobia
plants: botanophobia
pleasure: hedonophobia
poison: toxicophobia
poverty: peniophobia
prostitutes: pornophobia
punishment: poinophobia
rain: ombrophobia
red: erythrophobia
rivers: potamophobia
robbers: harpaxophobia
sameness: homophobia
sex: genophobia
sexual intercourse: coitophobia
sinning: peccatophobia
skin: dermatophobia
sleep: hypnophobia
small things: microphobia
smothering: pnigerophobia
snakes: ophidiophobia
snow: chionophobia
solitude: autophobia; monophobia
sounds: acousticophobia
speaking: lalophobia
speaking aloud: phonophobia
speech: logophobia
spiders: arachneophobia
stairs: climacophobia
stars: siderophobia
stealing: kleptophobia
stillness: eremiophobia
strangers: xenophobia
strength: sthenophobia
study: logophobia
sunlight: heliophobia
tapeworms: taeniophobia
taste: geumophobia
teach: odontophobia
thieves: kleptophobia
thinking: phronemophobia
thirteen (the number): triskaidekaphobia
thirst: dipsophobia
thunder: brontophobia
time: chronophobia
togetherness: synophobia
travel: hodophobia
ugliness: cacophobia
voices: photophobia
vomiting: emetophobia
walking: basiphobia
watching: scoptophobia
water: hydrophobia
weakness: asthenophobia
wealth: plutophobia
wind: anemophobia
women: gynephobia
words: logophobia
work: ergophobia
writing: graphophobia
Books by Norman Lewis

30 Days to a More Powerful Vocabulary
(written with Wilfred Funk)

Word Power Made Easy